

---

MAIN CATALOG

# Safety Products

## ABB Jokab Safety





---

# Safety products catalog

## ABB Jokab Safety



INTRODUCTION

SAFETY CONTROLLERS

OPTICAL SAFETY  
DEVICES

SENSORS AND LOCKS

CONTROL DEVICES

EMERGENCY STOPS  
AND PILOT DEVICES

PRESSURE SENSITIVE  
DEVICES

CONTACTORS AND  
MOTOR STARTERS

FENCING SYSTEMS

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9





# Introduction

1-2

**Introduction**

1-6

**Standards and regulations**

# Introduction

## Company overview

ABB Jokab Safety has been helping machine builders to create production-friendly and safe work environments for operators since 1988.



### **We develop products and solutions for machine safety**

We make it simple to build safety systems. Developing products and solutions for machine safety has been our business idea since the company Jokab Safety, now a part of ABB, was founded in Sweden in 1988.

Many industries around the world have discovered how much easier it has become to build protection and safety systems with our components and guidance. Our extensive program of products, safety solutions and our long experience in machine safety makes us a safe partner.

Together we create a safe world!

---

## Introduction

### Company overview

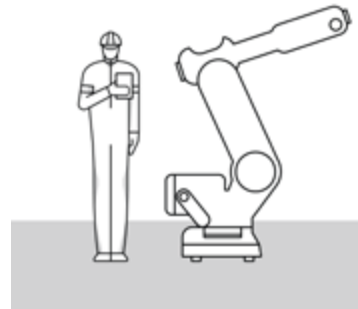
#### Products and systems

We deliver machine safety solutions for single machines or entire production lines. Our long experience of helping customers making solutions for demanding environments has made us experts in combining production demands with safety demands for production-friendly solutions.

We market a wide range of safety products, which makes it easy to build safety systems. We develop these intelligent products continuously, in cooperation with our customers.

#### Our experience of safety requirements and standards

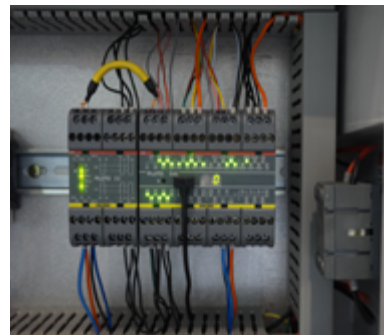
Directives and standards are very important to machine builders and safety component manufacturers. We represent Sweden in several international committees that develop standards, for e.g. industrial robots, safety distances and control system safety features. We work daily with the practical application of safety requirements in combination with production requirements. We are happy to share our knowledge of standards with our customers. You can use our experience for training and advice.



#### Markets and industries

Solutions from ABB Jokab Safety can be found in all types of industries across the globe. But we pride ourselves in having products and solutions that are especially well suited for e.g.:

- Robotics
- Food and beverage
- General machinery (OEM)



# Our range of safety products

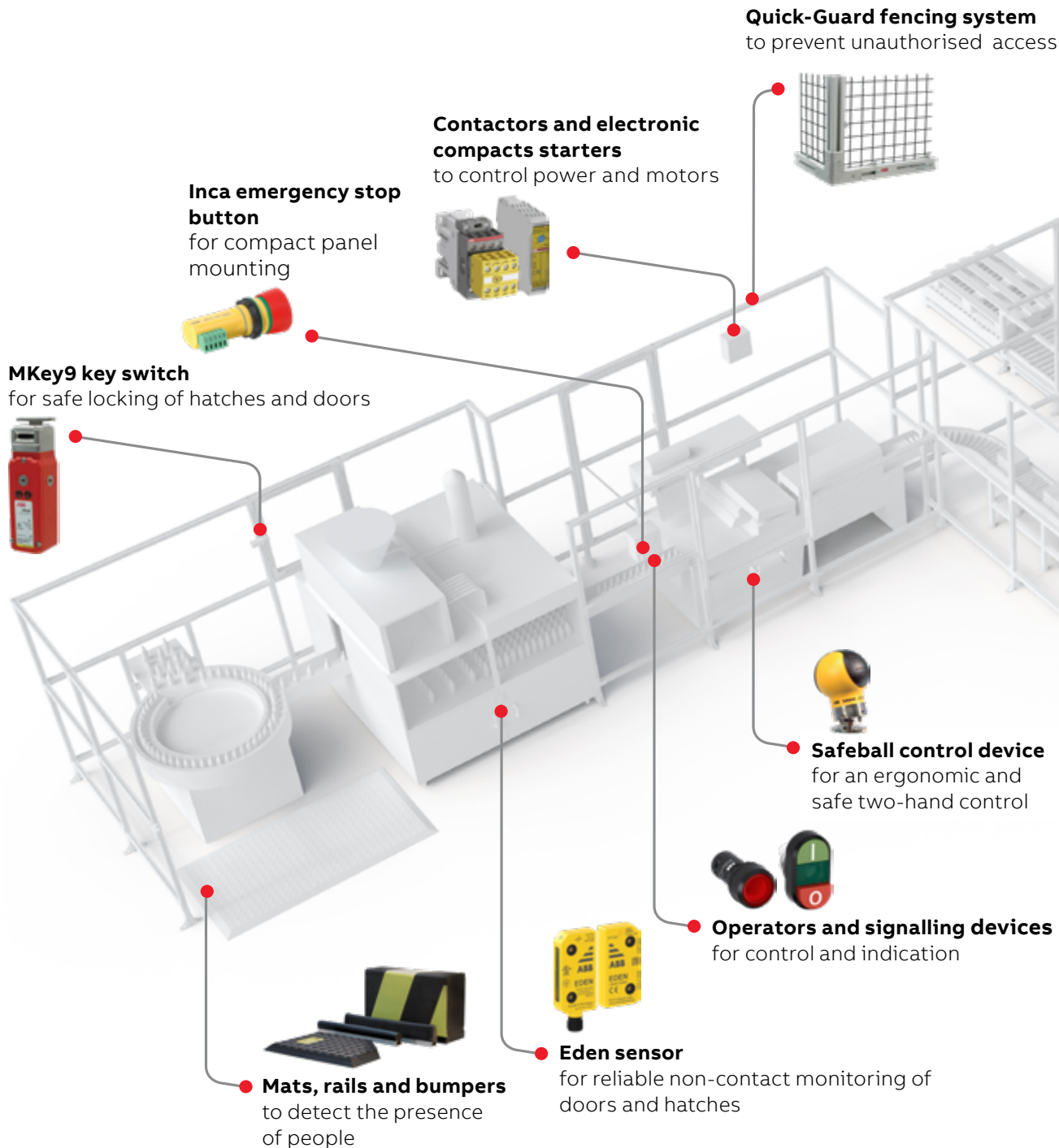
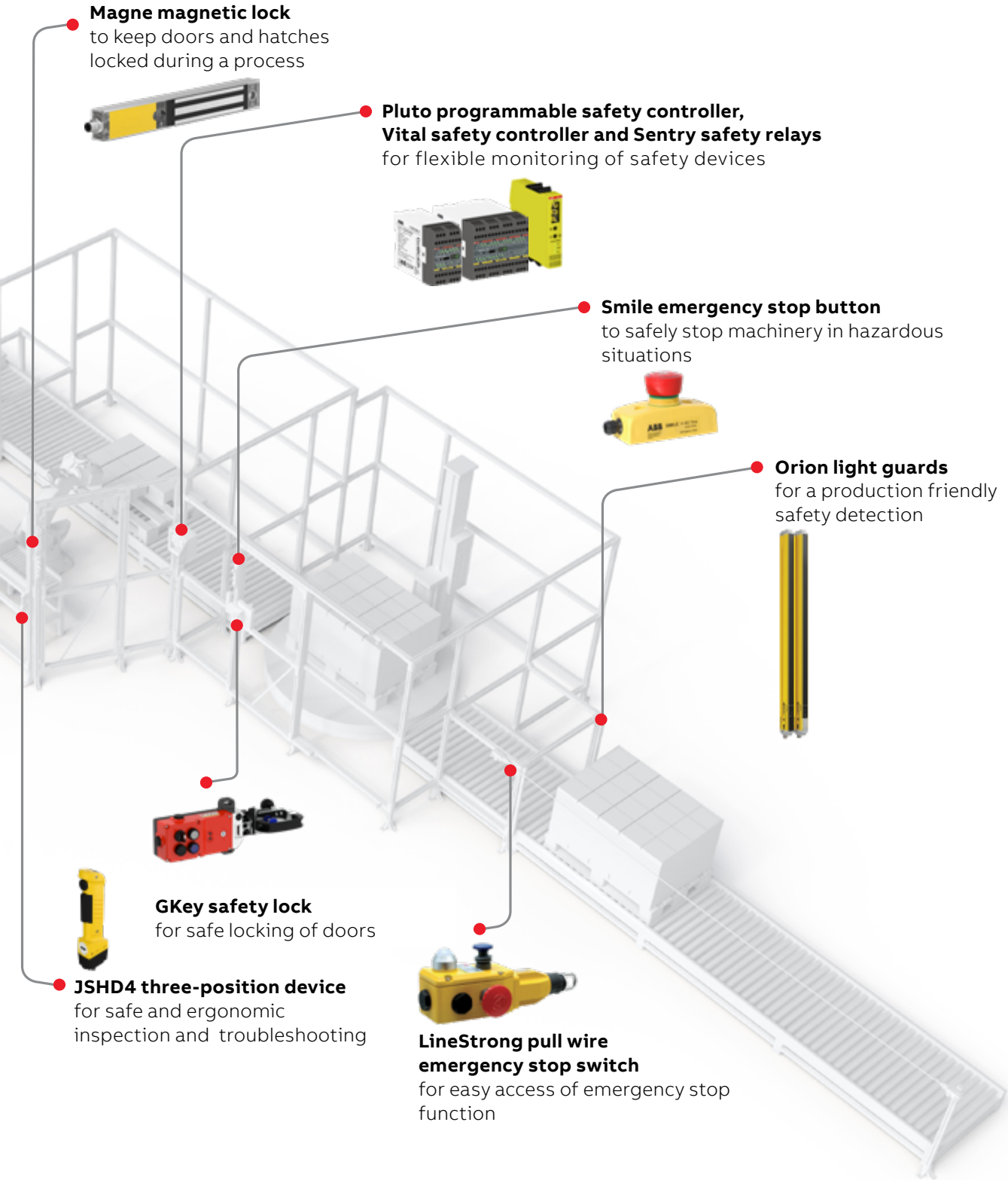


ABB is the only supplier that can deliver complete safety solutions (including output devices such as contactors and frequency converters) together with automation solutions such as robotics, motors, drives and PLCs.





## European Directives and Standards

**Directives and standards are of great importance for manufacturers of machines and safety components. In the European Union, the EU Directives gives requirements for the minimum level of health and safety, and these are mandatory for manufacturers to fulfill. In every member country the Directives are implemented in national legislation.**

Machines which have been placed on the market since 2010, must comply with the new Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC. Before that, the old Machinery Directive 98/37/EC was valid.

Although the requirements in the Directives are specific for Europe, they also apply to machines that are imported to Europe. And the Directives are supported by standards, of which many also are valid internationally.

The objectives of the Machinery Directive, 2006/42/EC, are to maintain, increase and equalise the safety level of machines within the members of the European Community. Based on this, the free movement of machines/products between the countries in this market can be achieved. The Machinery Directive is developed according to "The New Approach" which is based on the following principles:

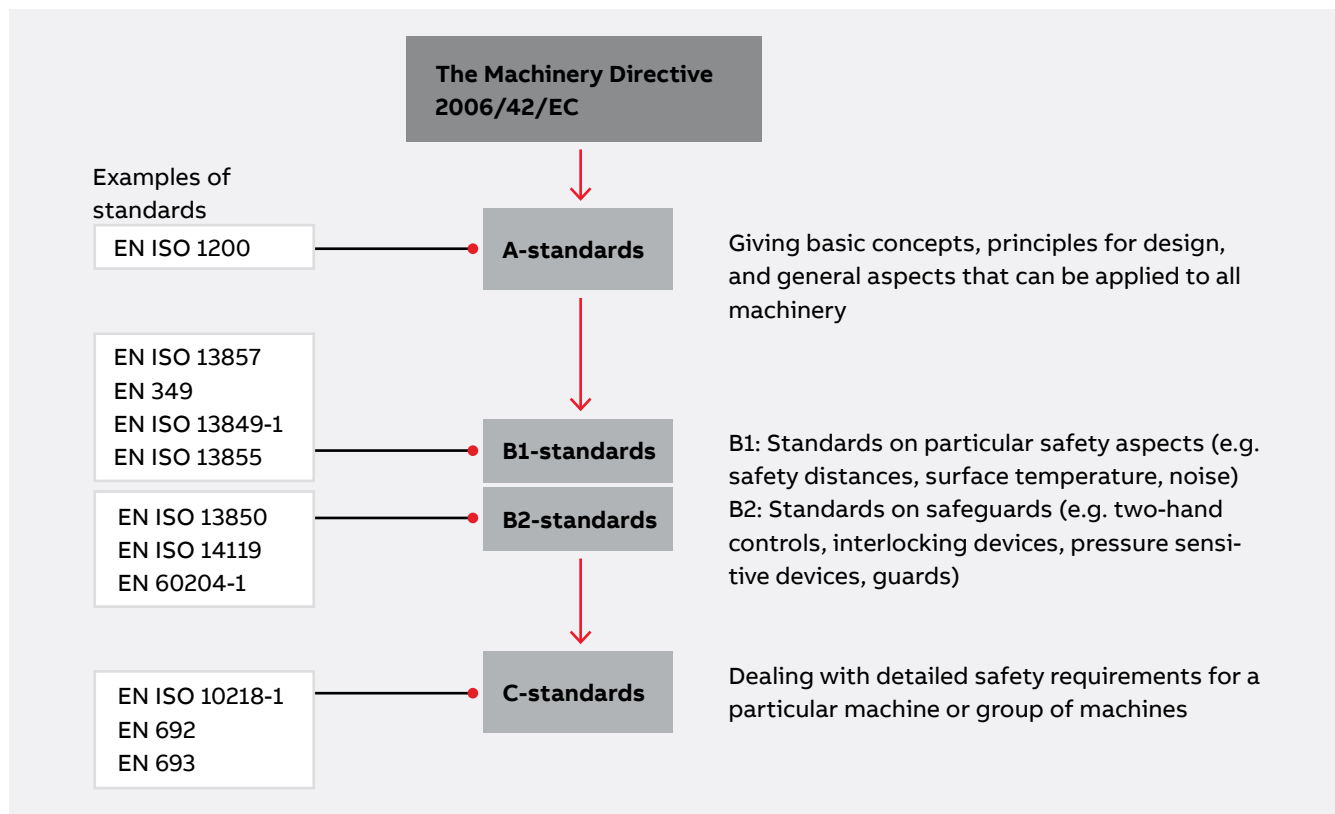
- The directives give the basic health and safety requirements, which are mandatory.
- Detailed solutions and technical specifications are found in harmonised standards.
- Standards are voluntary to apply, but products designed according to the harmonised standards will fulfill the basic safety requirements in the Machinery Directive.

### Harmonised standards

Harmonised standards give support on how to fulfill the requirements of the Machinery Directive. The relationship between the Machinery Directive and the harmonised standards is illustrated by the diagram below.

Within ISO (The International Organization for Standardization) work is also going on in order to harmonise the safety standards globally in parallel with the European standardisation work.

ABB Jokab Safety takes an active part in the working groups both for the ISO and EN standards.



## Machinery Directive

### The Machinery Directive, for machines and safety components

#### From 2006/42/EC

1 § This Directive applies to the following products:

- a) machinery;
- b) interchangeable equipment;
- c) safety components;
- d) lifting accessories;
- e) chains, ropes and webbing;
- f) removable mechanical transmission devices;
- g) partly completed machinery.

The Machinery Directive gives a detailed definition of a machine, which can be simplified as something that has linked parts that are moving, where the energy source is not human effort. Two or more machines that are put together into a production line is also regarded as one machine.

#### CE-marking and Declaration of conformity

Machines manufactured or placed on the market from december 29, 2009, shall be CE-marked and fulfil the requirements according to the European Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC. This is also valid for old machines (manufactured before 1 January 1995) if they are manufactured in a country outside the EEA and imported to be used in a country in the EEA (European Economic Area).

For machines manufactured and/or released to the market between january 1, 1995, and december 28, 2009, the old Machinery Directive (98/37/EC) is valid.

#### NOTE!

Machines have to be accompanied by a Declaration of Conformity (according to 2006/42/EC, Annex II 1.A) that states which directive and standards the machine fulfills. It also shows if the product has gone through EC Type Examination.

Safety components have to be accompanied with a Declaration of Conformity.

### Requirements for the use of machinery

For a machine to be safe it is not enough that the manufacturer has been fulfilling all valid/necessary requirements. The user of the machine also has requirements to fulfill. For the use of machinery there is a Directive 2009/104/EC.

It requires that the work equipment that is provided to workers must comply with relevant Community directives.

This means that when repair/changes are made on the machine it shall still fulfill the requirements of the Machinery Directive. This doesn't have to mean that a new CE-marking is required (unless the changes are extensive).

#### NOTE!

This means that the buyer of a machine also has to make sure that a new machine fulfills the requirements in the directives. If the machine does not fulfill the requirements the buyer is not allowed to use it.

#### “Old” machines

For machines delivered or manufactured in the EEA before 1 January 1995 the following is valid.

#### From 2009/104/EC

- b) work equipment which, if already provided to workers in the undertaking or establishment by 31 December 1992, complies with the minimum requirements laid down in Annex I no later than 4 years after that date;
- c) without prejudice to point (a)(i), and by way of derogation from point (a)(ii) and point (b), specific work equipment subject to the requirements of point 3 of Annex I, which, if already provided to workers in the undertaking or establishment by 5 December 1998, complies with the minimum requirements laid down in Annex I, no later than 4 years after that date.

Annex I contains minimum requirements for health and safety. There can also be additional national specific requirements for certain machines.

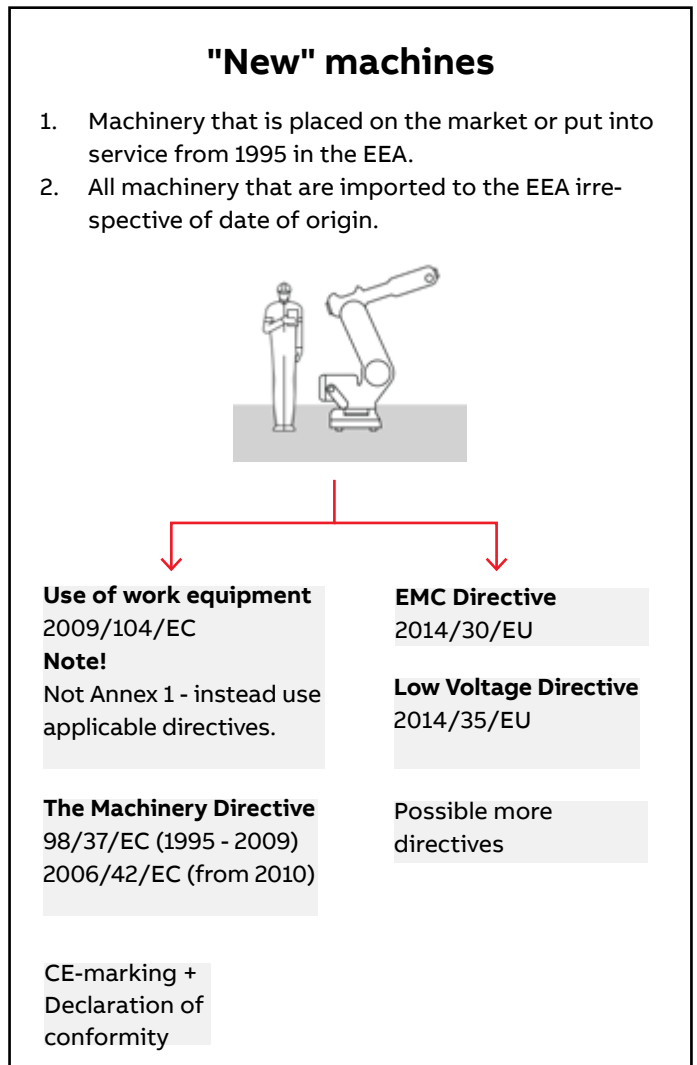
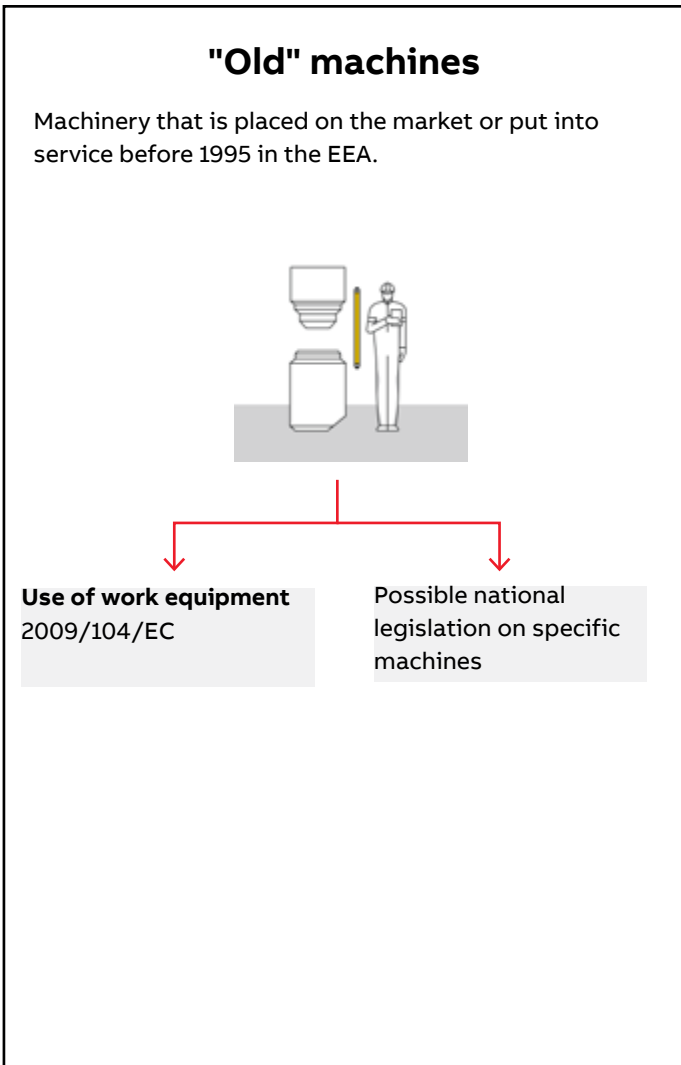
#### NOTE!

The point in time when the Machinery Directive was implemented in each Member Country varies. Therefore it is necessary to check with the national authorities in ones own country, to find out what is considered as “old” and respectively “new” machines.



## Risk assessment

an important tool both when constructing a new machine and when assessing risks on older machines



### Risk assessment

A well thought-out risk assessment supports manufacturers/users of machines to develop production friendly safety solutions. One result of this is that the safety components will not be a hindrance. This minimizes the risk of the safety system being defeated.

### New machines

The following requirement is given by the Machinery Directive

#### From 2006/42/EC

The manufacturer of machinery or his authorised representative must ensure that a risk assessment is carried out in order to determine the health and safety requirements which apply to the machinery. The machinery must then be designed and constructed taking into account the results of the risk assessment.

The standard EN ISO 12100 gives guidance on the information required to allow risk assessment to be carried out. The standard does not point out a specific method to be used. It is the responsibility of the manufacturer to select a suitable method.

### Machines in use

A risk assessment must have been carried out on all machines that are in use; CE-marked as well as not CE-marked. A risk assessment must also be performed when making changes on a machine, to determine if the safety measures need to be adapted.

### Documentation of risk assessment

The risk assessment shall be documented. The risk assessment should take into consideration the severity of the potential injuries as well as the probability that they occur.

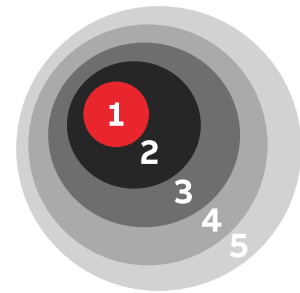
### Protection or warning?

How is it possible to choose safety measures that are production friendly and in every way well balanced? The Machinery Directive gives an order of priority for the choice of appropriate methods to remove the risks. Here it is further developed in a five step method.

### Prioritize safety measures according to the 5-step-method

1. Eliminate or reduce risks by design and construction
2. Move the work tasks outside the risk area
3. Use guards/safety devices
4. Develop safe working routines/information/education
5. Use warnings as pictograms, light, sound etc.

The further away from the center of the circle, the greater responsibility for the safety is placed onto the user of the machine. If full protection is not effectively achieved in one step, one has to go to the next step and find complementary



measures.

What is possible is dependant on the need for accessibility, the severity of the risk, appropriate safety measures etc.

### Example on prioritizing according to the 5-step-method

| Priority   | Example of hazard and safety measure taken |  |
|--|--|--|
| <b>1. Make machine safe by design and construction</b> | Hazard:                                    | Cuts and wounds from sharp edges and corners on machinery  |
|  | Safety measure:                            | Round off sharp edges and corners.   |
| <b>2. Move the work tasks outside the risk area</b>    | Hazard:                                    | Crushing of fingers from machine movements during inspection of the production inside the risk area  |
|  | Safety measure:                            | Installation of a camera.  |
| <b>3. Use guard/safety devices</b>                     | Hazard:                                    | Crushing injuries because of unintended start during loading of work pieces in a mechanical press  |
|  | Safety measure:                            | Install a light curtain to detect operator and provide safe stop of the machinery.   |
| <b>4. Safe working routines/information</b>            | Hazard:                                    | Crushing injuries because the machine can tip during installation and normal use.  |
|  | Safety measure:                            | Make instructions on how the machine is to be installed to avoid the risks. This can include requirements on the type of fastening, ground, screw retention etc. |
| <b>5. Warning</b>                                      | Hazard:                                    | Burns because of hot surfaces in reach   |
|  | Safety measure:                            | Warning signs  |

### Combine the 5-step-method with production friendly thinking. This can give you e.g.

- fast and easy restart of machines after a safety stop
- enough space to safely program a robot
- places outside the risk area to observe the production
- electrically interlocked doors, instead of guards attached with screws, to be able to take the necessary measures for removing production disturbances
- a safety system that is practical for all types of work tasks, even when removing production disturbances

The likelihood that the safety solution will be well made, well received and suitable for the application increases if each risk is handled according to the 5-step-method.

## Examples of regularly used EN/ISO standards

|                |  |   |
|----------------|--|---|
| EN ISO 12100   | Safety of machinery - General principles for design - Risk assessment and risk reduction                                     | The primary purpose of this standard is to provide designers with an overall framework and guidance for decisions during the development of machinery to enable them to design machines that are safe for their intended use.   |
| EN ISO 13857   | Safety of machinery - Safety distances to prevent hazard zones being reached by upper and lower limbs                        | This standard establishes values for safety distances to prevent danger zones being reached by the upper and lower limbs. The distances apply when adequate safety can be achieved by distances alone.  |
| EN ISO 13854   | Safety of machinery – Minimum gaps to avoid crushing of parts of the human body  | The object of this standard is to enable the user (e.g. standard makers, designers of machinery) to avoid hazards from crushing zones. It specifies minimum gaps relative to parts of the human body and is applicable when adequate safety can be achieved by this method.   |
| EN ISO 13850   | Safety of machinery – Emergency stop – Principles for design   | This standard specifies design principles for emergency stop equipment for machinery. No account is taken of the nature of the energy source.   |
| ISO 13851      | Safety of machinery – Two-hand control devices – Principles for design and selection   | This standard specifies the safety requirements of a two-hand control device and its logic unit. The standard describes the main characteristics of two-hand control devices for the achievement of safety and sets out combinations of functional characteristics for three types.   |
| EN ISO 14120   | Safety of machinery – Guards – General requirements for the design and construction of fixed and movable guards              | This standard specifies general requirements for the design and construction of guards provided primarily to protect persons from mechanical hazards.   |
| EN ISO 13849-1 | Safety of machinery – Safety-related parts of control systems – Part 1: General principles for design                        | This standard provides safety requirements and guidance on the principles for the design of safety-related parts of control systems. For these parts it specifies categories and describes the characteristics of their safety functions. This includes programmable systems for all machinery and for related protective devices. It applies to all safety-related parts of control systems, regardless of the type of energy used, e.g. electrical, hydraulic, pneumatic, mechanical. It does not specify which safety functions and which categories shall be used in a particular case. |
| EN ISO 13849-2 | Safety of machinery - Safety-related parts of control systems - Part 2: Validation   | This standard specifies the procedures and conditions to be followed for the validation by analysis and testing of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the safety functions provided, and</li> <li>• the category achieved of the safety-related parts of the control system in compliance with EN 954-1 (ISO 13849-1), using the design rationale provided by the designer.</li> </ul>   |
| EN 62061       | Safety of machinery - Functional safety of safety-related electrical, electronic and programmable electronic control systems | The standard defines the safety requirements and guiding principles for the design of safety-related electrical/electronic/programmable parts of a control system.  |
| EN ISO 13855   | Safety of machinery - Positioning of safeguards with respect to the approach speeds of parts of the human body               | This standard provides parameters based on values for hand/arm and approach speeds and the methodology to determine the minimum distances from specific sensing or actuating devices of protective equipment to a danger zone.  |
| EN ISO 14119   | Safety of machinery - Interlocking devices associated with guards - Principles for design and selection                      | This standard specifies principles for the design and selection — independent of the nature of the energy source — of interlocking devices associated with guards. The standard provides measures to minimize defeat of interlocking devices in a reasonably foreseeable manner.  |
| EN 60204-1     | Safety of machinery - Electrical equipment of machines - Part 1: General requirements  | This part of IEC 60204 provides requirements and recommendations relating to the electrical equipment of machines so as to promote: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– safety of persons and property;</li> <li>– consistency of control response;</li> <li>– ease of maintenance.</li> </ul>   |

## Standards for safety in control systems

**Building a protection system that works in practice and provides sufficient safety requires expertise in several areas. The design of the safety functions in the protection system in order to ensure they provide sufficient reliability is a key ingredient. As help for this there is, for example, the EN ISO 13849-1 standard. The purpose of this text is to provide an introduction to the standard and its application in conjunction with our products. Please note that outside of the European Union there are often other standards that are used in place of EN ISO 13849.**

### Introducing the standard

The generation change for standards on safety in control systems introduced new concepts and calculations for machine builders and machine users. The EN 954-1 standard has been phased out and is replaced by EN ISO 13849-1 (PL, Performance Level) and EN 62061 (SIL, Safety Integrity Level).

### PL or SIL? What should I use?

The standard you should use depends on the choice of technology, experience and customer requirements.

### Choice of technology

- PL (Performance Level) is a technology-neutral concept that can be used for electrical, mechanical, pneumatic and hydraulic safety solutions.
- SIL (Safety Integrity Level) can, however, only be used for electrical, electronic or programmable safety solutions.

### Experience

EN ISO 13849-1 uses categories from EN 954-1 for defining the system structure, and therefore the step to the new calculations is not so big if you have previous experience of the categories. EN 62061 defines the structures slightly differently.

### Customer requirements

If you or your end customer comes from an industry that is accustomed to using SIL (e.g. the process industry), requirements can also include safety functions for machine safety being SIL rated.

We notice that most of our customers prefer PL as it is technology-neutral and that they can use their previous knowledge in the categories. In this text we show some examples of how to build safety solutions in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1 and calculate the reliability of the safety functions to be used for a particular machine. The examples in this text are simplified in order to provide an understanding of the principles. The values used in the examples can change.

### What is PL (Performance Level)?

PL is a measure of the reliability of a safety function. PL is divided into five levels (a-e). PL e gives the best reliability and is equivalent to that required at the highest level of risk.

### To calculate which PL level the system achieves you need to know the following:

- The system's structure (categories B, 1-4)
- The Mean Time To dangerous Failure of the component (MTTF<sub>d</sub>)
- The system's Diagnostic Coverage (DC)

### You will also need to:

- protect the system against simultaneous failure of both channels (CCF)
- protect the system from systematic errors built into the design
- follow certain rules to ensure software can be developed and validated in the right way

The five PL-levels (a-e) correspond to certain ranges of PFH<sub>b</sub>-values (probability of dangerous failure per hour). These indicate how likely it is that a dangerous failure could occur over a period of one hour. In the calculation, it is beneficial to use PFH<sub>b</sub>-values directly as the PL is a simplification that does not provide equally accurate results.

### What is the easiest way of complying with the standard?

#### 1. Use pre-calculated components.

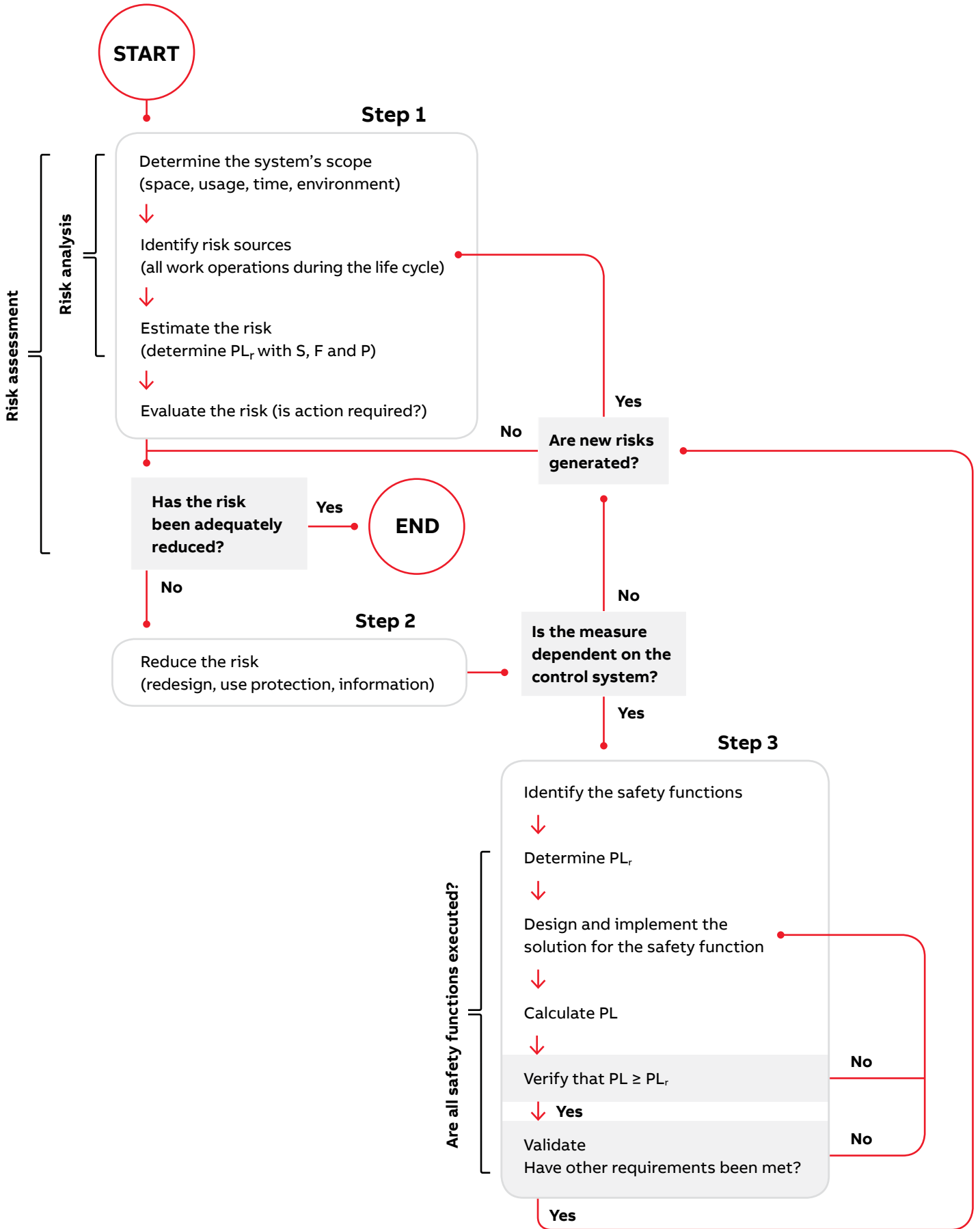
As far as it is possible, use components with pre-calculated PL and PFH<sub>b</sub>-values. You then minimise the number of calculations to be performed. All ABB Jokab Safety products have pre-calculated PFH<sub>b</sub>-values.

#### 2. Use a calculation tool.

With the calculation softwares FSDT or SISTEMA you avoid making calculations by hand. You also get help to structure your safety solutions and provide the necessary documentation.

#### 3. Use Pluto or Vital

Use the Pluto programmable safety controller or Vital safety controller. Not only is it easier to make calculations and changes in the future, but above all it is easier to ensure a higher level of safety.





### Risk estimation

To calculate the performance level required ( $PL_r$ ).

#### S Severity of injury

**S1** slight (normally reversible injury)

**S2** serious (normally irreversible injury or death)

#### F Frequency and/or exposure to hazard

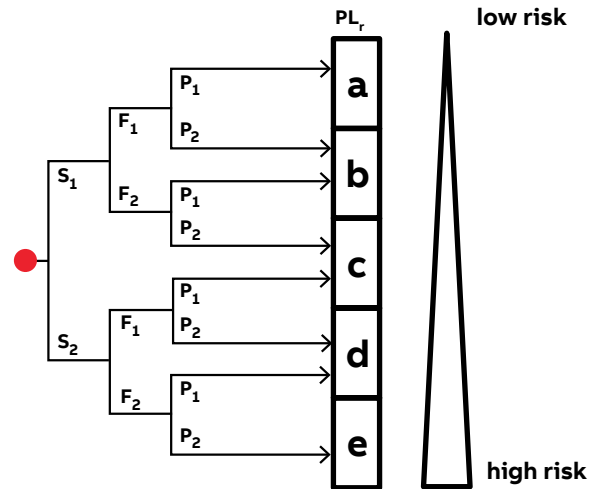
**F1** seldom to less often and/or exposure time is short

**F2** frequent to continuous and/or exposure time is long

#### P Possibility of avoiding hazard or limiting harm

**P1** possible under specific conditions

**P2** scarcely possible



### Risk assessment and risk minimisation

According to the Machinery Directive, the machine builder (anyone who builds or modifies a machine) is required to perform a risk assessment for the machine design and also include an assessment of all the work operations that need to be performed. EN ISO 12100 stipulates the requirements for a risk assessment. It is this that EN ISO 13849-1 is based on, and a completed risk assessment is a prerequisite for being able to work with the standard.

#### Step 1 – Risk assessment

A risk assessment begins with determining the scope of the machine. This includes the space that the machine and its operators need for all of its intended applications, and all operational stages throughout the machine's life cycle. All risk sources must then be identified for all work operations throughout the machine's life cycle.

A risk estimation is made for each risk source, i.e. indication of the degree of risk. According to EN ISO 13849-1 the risk is estimated using three factors: injury severity (S), frequency of exposure to the hazard (F) and the possibility you have of avoiding or limiting the injury (P). For each factor two options are given. Where the boundary between the two options lies is not specified in the standard, but the following are common interpretations and our recommendations:

**S1 bruises, abrasions, puncture wounds and minor crushing injuries**

**S2 skeletal injuries, amputations and death**

**F1 less frequent than once a week**

**F2 once a week or more often**

**P1 slow machine movements, plenty of space, low power**

**P2 quick machine movements, crowded, high power**

By selecting S, F and P for the risk, you will get the  $PL_r$  that is necessary for the risk source.

Finally, the risk assessment includes a risk evaluation where you determine if the risk needs to be reduced or if sufficient safety is ensured.

#### Step 2 – Reduce the risk

If you determine that risk reduction is required, you must comply with the priority in the Machinery Directive in the selection of measures:

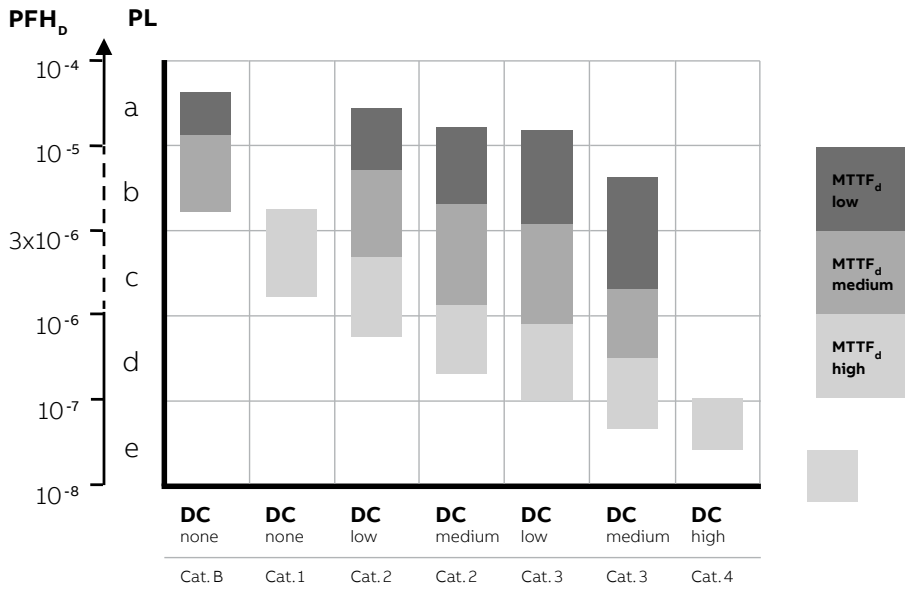
1. Avoid the risk already at the design stage. (E.g. reduce power, avoid interference in the danger zone.)
2. Use protection and/or safety devices. (E.g. fences, light grids or control devices.)
3. Provide information about how the machine can be used safely. (E.g. in manuals and on signs.)

If risk reduction is performed using safety devices, the control system that monitors these needs to be designed as specified in EN ISO 13849-1.

#### Step 3 - Design and calculate the safety functions

To begin with you need to identify the safety functions on the machine. (Examples of safety functions are emergency stop and monitoring of gate.)

For each safety function, a  $PL_r$  should be established (which has often already been made in the risk assessment). The solution for the safety function is then designed and implemented. Once the design is complete, you can calculate the  $PL$  the safety function achieves. Check that the calculated  $PL$  is at least as high as  $PL_r$  and then validate the system as per the validation plan. The validation checks that the specification of the system is carried out correctly and that the design complies with the specification. You will also need to verify that the requirements that are not included in the calculation of the  $PL$  are satisfied, that is, ensure that the software is properly developed and validated, and that you have taken adequate steps to protect the technical solution from systematic errors.



The relationship between categories, the DC<sub>avg</sub>, MTTFd for each channel and PL. The table also shows the PFH<sub>D</sub>-range that corresponds to each PL.

**PL calculation in Step 3**

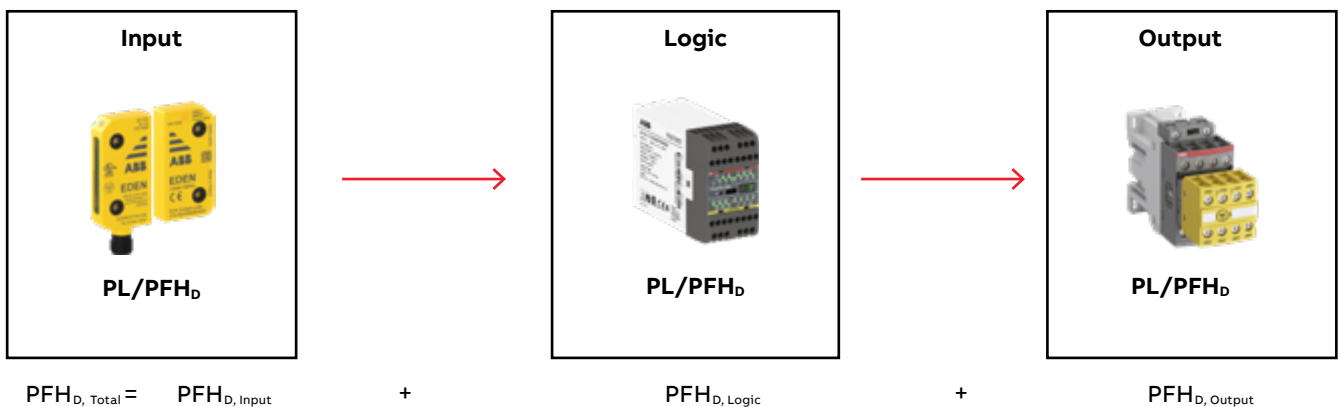
When you calculate the PL for a safety function, it is easiest to split it into separate, well defined blocks (also called subsystems). It is often logical to make the breakdown according to input, logic and output (e.g. switch - safety relay - contactors), but there may be more or fewer than three blocks depending on the connection and the number of components used (an expansion relay could for example create an additional logic block).

For each block, you calculate a PL or PFH<sub>D</sub>-value. It is easiest if you obtain these values from the component manufacturer, so you do not have to calculate yourself. The manufacturer of switches, sensors and logic devices often have

PL and PFH<sub>D</sub>-values for their components, but for mechanical devices (such as key switches or contactors) a PL-value cannot be supplied since it depends on how often the component will be used. You then need to calculate yourself according to EN ISO 13849-1 or use default values from the standard, if provided.

To calculate PL or PFH<sub>D</sub> for a block, you need to know its category, DC and MTTFd. In addition, you need to protect the system against systematic errors and ensure that an error does not knock out both channels, and generate and validate any software used correctly. The following text gives a brief explanation of what to do.

**Safety function (SF)**



### Category

The structure for the component(s) in the block is assessed to determine the category (B, 1-4) it corresponds to. For category 4, for example, individual failures do not result in any loss of the safety function.

In order to achieve category 4 with contactors, you need to have two channels - i.e., two contactors - that can cut the power to the machine individually. The contactors need to be monitored by connecting opening contacts to a test input on, for example a safety relay. For monitoring of this type to work, the contactors need to have positive-guided contacts.

### Diagnostic Coverage (DC)

A simple method to determine DC is explained in Appendix E in EN ISO 13849-1. It lists various measures and what they correspond to in terms of DC. For example, DC=99 % (which corresponds to DC high) is achieved for a pair of contactors by monitoring the contactors with the logic device.

### Mean Time To dangerous Failure (MTTF<sub>d</sub>)

The MTTF<sub>d</sub>-value should primarily come from the manufacturer. If the manufacturer cannot provide values, they are given from tables in EN ISO 13849-1 or you have to calculate MTTF<sub>d</sub> using the B<sub>10d</sub>-value, (average number of cycles until 10% of the components have a dangerous failure). To calculate the MTTF<sub>d</sub>, you also need to know the average number of cycles per year that the component will execute.

Calculation of the average number of cycles is as follows:

$$MTTF_d = \frac{B_{10d}}{0,1 \times n_{op}}$$

where

$$n_{op} = \frac{d_{op} \times h_{op} \times 3600}{t_{cycle}}$$

|             |   |                           |
|-------------|---|---------------------------|
| $n_{op}$    | = | Number of cycles per year |
| $d_{op}$    | = | Operation days per year   |
| $h_{op}$    | = | Operation hours per day   |
| $t_{cycle}$ | = | Cycle time (seconds)      |

Example:  $d_{op} = 365$  days,  $h_{op} = 24$  hours and  $t_{cycle} = 1,800$  seconds (2 times/hour) which gives  $n_{op} = 17,520$  cycles. With a  $B_{10d} = 2 \cdot 10^6$  this gives a  $MTTF_d = 1,141$  year which corresponds to  $MTTF_d = \text{high}$ .

Note that when you calculate MTTF<sub>d</sub> you have to calculate according to the total number of cycles the component will be working. A typical example of this is the contactors that frequently work for several safety functions simultaneously. This means that you must add the number of estimated cycles per year from all the safety functions that use the contactors. When MTTF<sub>d</sub> is calculated from a B<sub>10d</sub>-value, also consider

that if the MTTF<sub>d</sub>-value is less than 200 years, the component needs to be replaced after 10% of the MTTF<sub>d</sub>-value (due to the T<sub>10d</sub>-value). That is, a component with MTTF<sub>d</sub> = 160 years needs to be replaced after 16 years in order for the conditions for achieving PL to continue to be valid. This is because EN ISO 13849-1 is based on a “mission time” of 20 years.

### Common Cause Failure (CCF)

In Appendix F of EN ISO 13849-1 there is a table of actions to be taken to protect against CCF, to ensure a failure does not knock out both channels.

### Systematic errors

Appendix G of EN ISO 13849-1 describes a range of actions that need to be taken to protect against incorporating faults into your design.

### PL for safety functions

PL is given in the table on the previous page. If you want to use an exact PFH<sub>D</sub>-value instead, this can be produced using a table in Appendix K in EN ISO 13849-1.

Once you have produced the PL for each block, you can generate a total PL for the safety function in Table 11 of EN ISO 13849-1. This gives a rough estimate of the PL. If you have calculated PFH<sub>D</sub> for each block instead, you can get a total of PFH<sub>D</sub> for the safety function by adding together all the values of the blocks. The safety function's total PFH<sub>D</sub> corresponds to a particular PL in Table 3 of EN ISO 13849-1.

### Requirements for safety-related software

If you use a safety PLC for implementing safety functions, this places requirements on how the software is developed and validated. To avoid error conditions, the software should be readable, understandable and be possible to test and maintain.

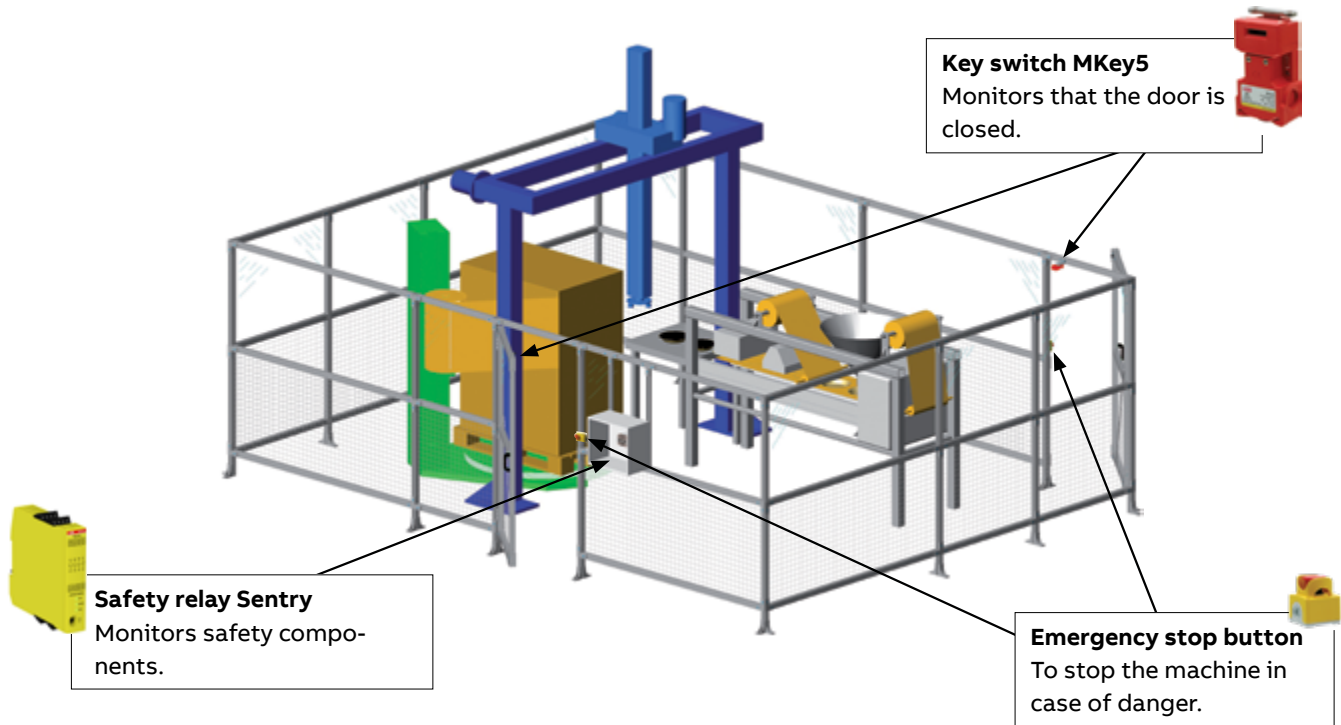
A software specification must be prepared to ensure that you can check the functionality of the program. It is also important to divide the program into modules that can be tested individually. Paragraph 4.6 and Appendix J of EN ISO 13849-1 specify requirements for safety related software.

The following are examples of requirements for software from EN ISO 13849-1:

- A development life cycle must be produced with validation measures that indicate how and when the program should be validated, for example, following a change.
- The specification and design must be documented.
- Function tests must be performed.
- Validated functional blocks must be used whenever possible.
- Data and control flow are to be described using, for example, a condition diagram or software flow chart.

## Case study 1 - Safety relay Sentry

Protection layout for a packaging machine with low risks



### Step 1 – Risk assessment

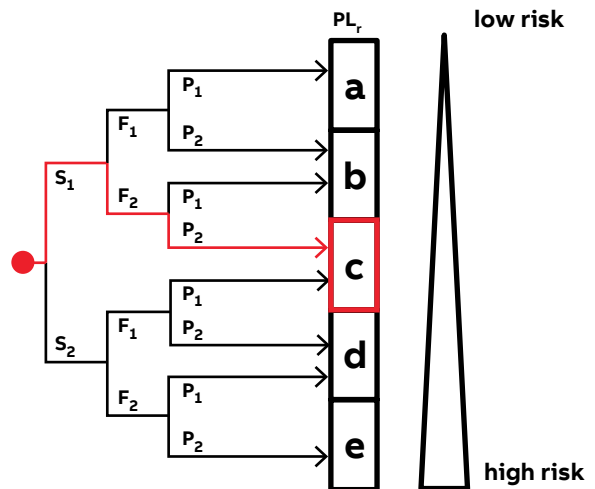
Food to be packaged is loaded into the cell manually through the rear door. A batch is prepared for the packing conveyor in the infeed hopper. The cell is reset and restarted. The packaging machine with conveyor belt only operates when both doors are closed and when the protection system has been reset.

In the risk assessment it was established that the machine is to be operated in three shifts (8 hours per shift) 365 days a year. The total access to the danger zone is estimated to be two times per hour (F2), including manual packaging and tending operational disturbances. Unexpected start-ups are not considered to cause serious injury but rather minor healable injuries (S1). The operator is considered not to have the possibility of avoiding injury as the machine moves quickly (P2).

The number of cycles for the safety function = 365 days/year x (3x8) hours/day x 2 cycles/hour = 17,520 cycles/year  
The assessment for the safety function required for access to the machine is  $PL_r = c$  (S1, F2, P2). In addition to this safety function, an emergency stop function is needed. This is also assessed as  $PL_r = c$ .

### Step 2 – Reduce the risk

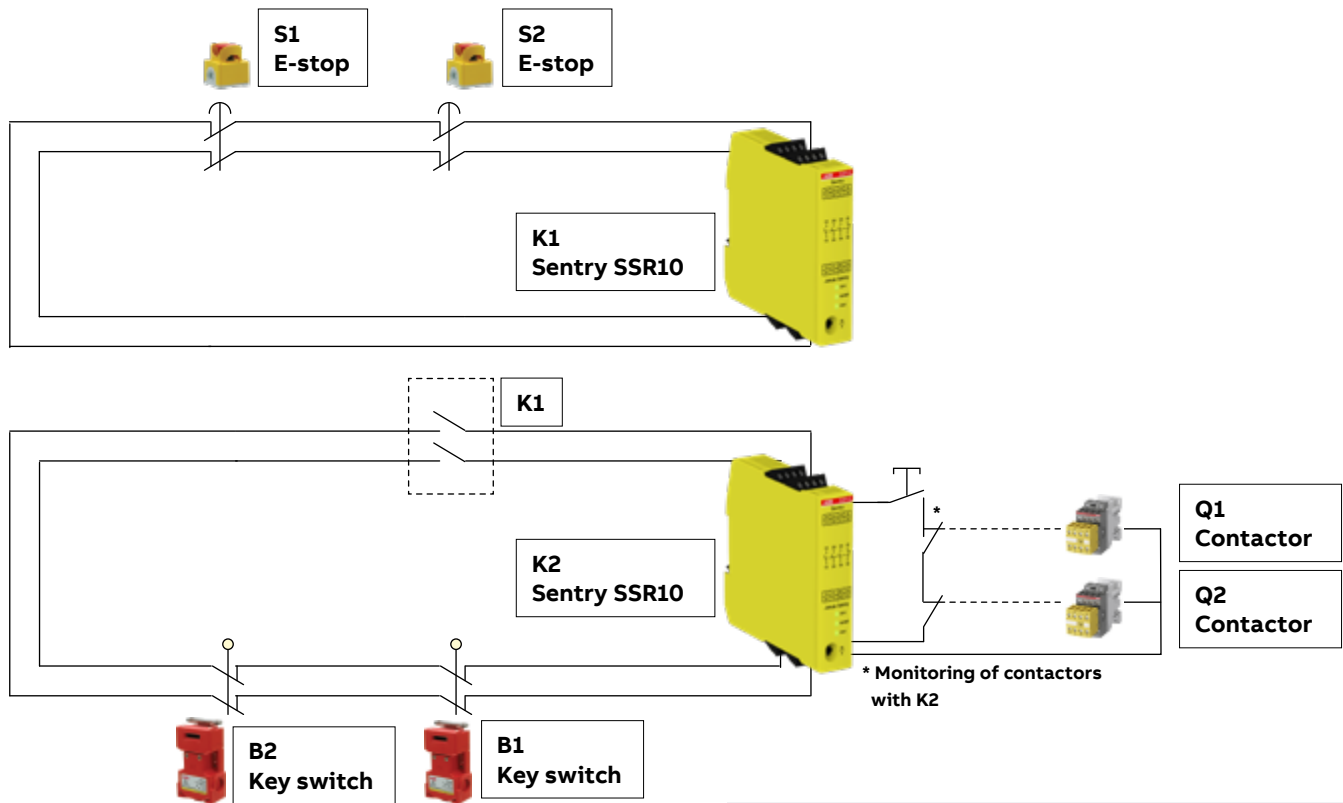
As protection, an interlocked door is selected with the key switch MKey5. Stopping time is short enough for the dangerous movement to have ceased before the operator can access it. The emergency stop is placed within easy reach, on both sides of the cell near the doors.



Determination of the PL<sub>r</sub> necessary for the safety function with interlocked door for this example.

### NOTE!

The assessment needs to be made for each safety function.

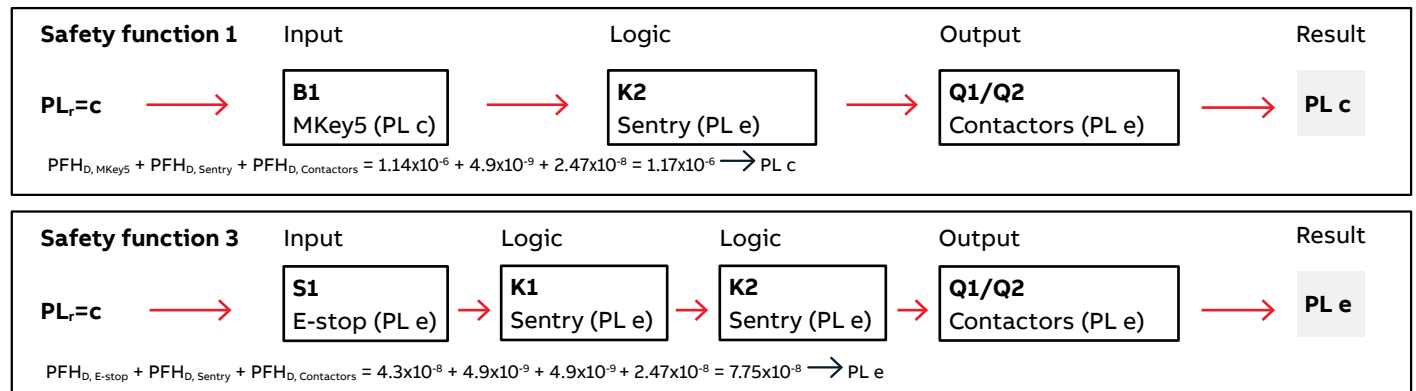


**Step 3 - Calculate the safety functions**

The output subsystem that is composed of double monitored contactors has been calculated at  $2.47 \times 10^{-8}$ . The safety functions are represented by block diagrams. Safety functions 1 and 2 are identical. Therefore, only safety function 1 is shown. Safety functions 3 and 4 are identical. Therefore, only safety function 3 is shown.

**How safe is a mechanical switch?**

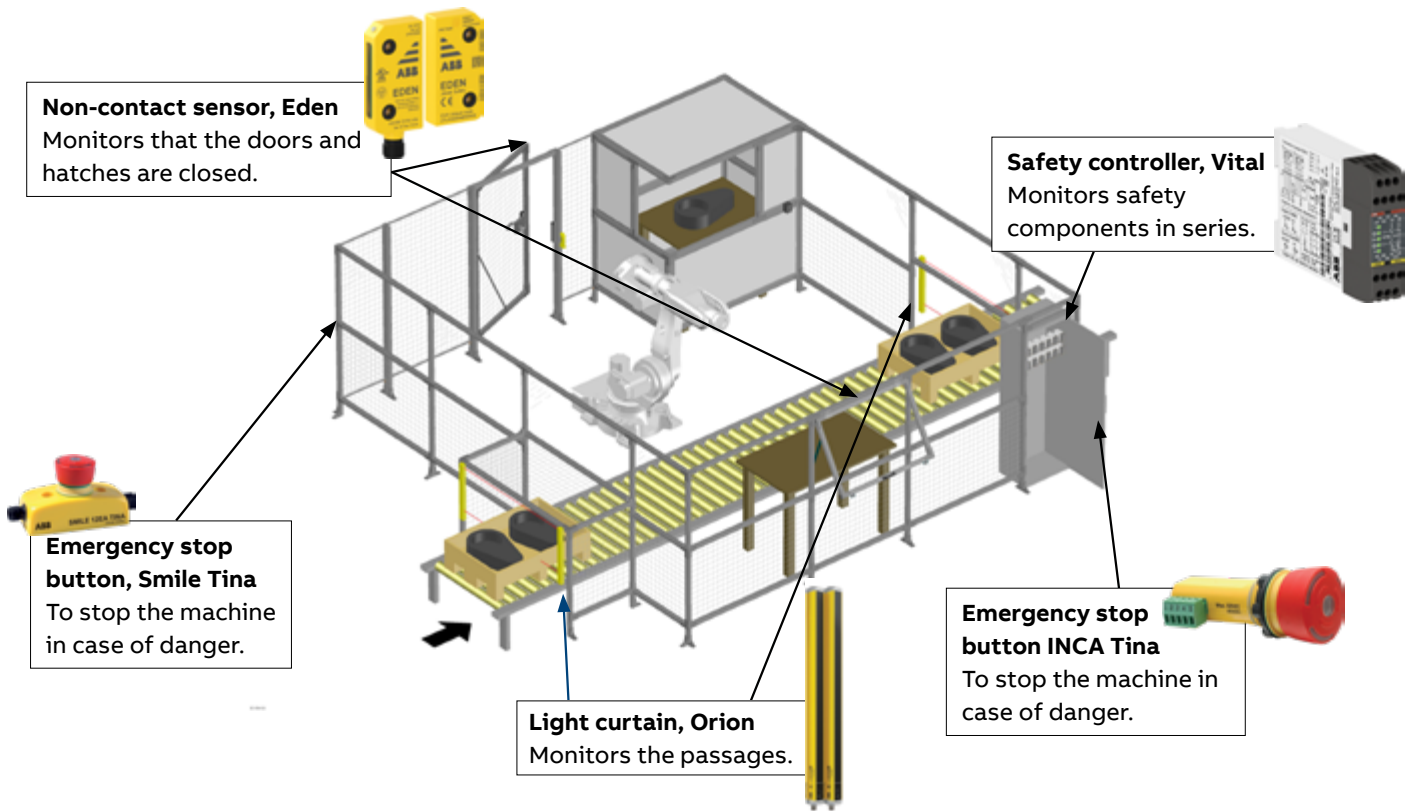
Mechanical switches have a tendency to break if misused. Manufacturer instructions must be followed, e.g. no excessive force or dirty environment. For interlocking switches in general EN ISO 14119 must be considered. It handles e.g. the possibility to defeat a switch and requirements on key switches. Connecting key switches in series gives a significant risk of masking errors, as stated in the technical report ISO/TR 24119, which limits the maximum achievable DC depending on the number of frequently used doors connected in series.



The reason for not achieving more than PL c with Safety function 1 is that only one key switch is used per door, and a key switch is mechanically a Category 1 device. For e-stop devices though, a fault exclusion for the mechanical parts is allowed according to EN ISO 13849-2 if a maximum number of operations is considered. For this solution to reach a higher PL, EN ISO 14119 and ISO/TR 24119 need to be consulted.

## Case study 2 - Safety controller Vital

Protection layout for a robot cell with high risks



### Step 1 – Risk assessment

The workpieces are transported into the robot cell where the robot places them in a test cabinet. Approved workpieces leave the cell on the conveyor belt, while workpieces that fail the tests are placed on the table for manual adjustments. The work that needs to be done in the robot cell is to correct operational disturbances for the test equipment and the conveyor belt (about once an hour), unloading from the manual station (about once an hour), program adjustments (once/week) and cleaning (once/week) (F2). Unexpected start-ups of the robot are considered to cause potentially serious injury (S2). The operator is considered not to have the possibility of avoiding injury as the robot moves quickly (P2). The risk estimation gives  $PL_r=e$  (S2, F2, P2) for the safety functions required for access to the machine.

The standard for robot systems/cells (EN ISO 10218-2) specifies that safety functions shall comply with at least PL d, unless the risk assessment determines otherwise. In this case the risk assessment gives us  $PL_r=e$ .

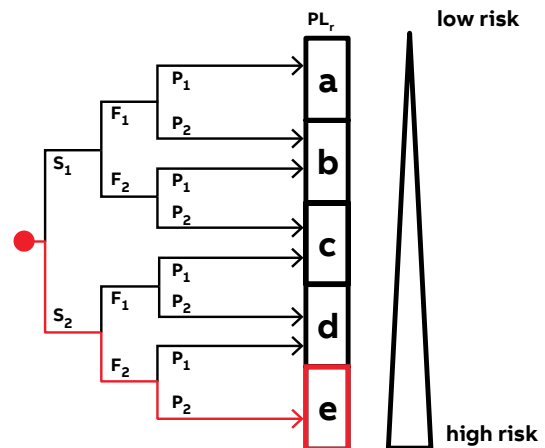
### Step 2 – Reduce the risk

As protection, the door and hatch are interlocked with Eden non-contact sensors. To protect against entering the cell the wrong way, transport of materials in and out is protected with light curtains and provided with muting to distinguish between material and people. The emergency stop function is also a safety function

that is required.

The energy to all hazardous machine functions shall be removed by all safety functions.

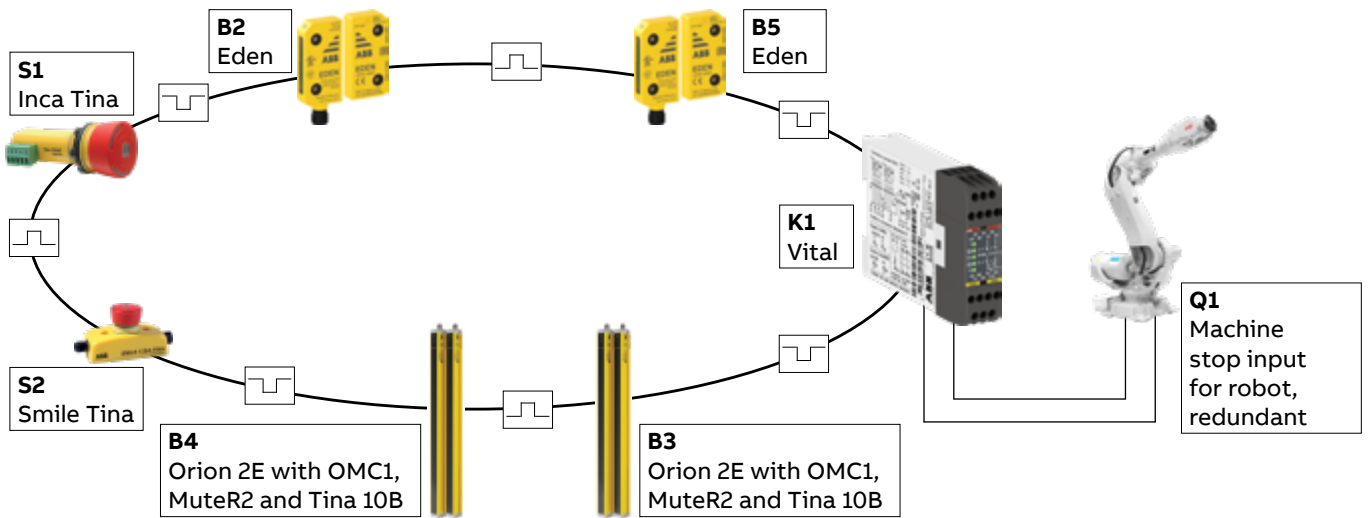
The solution with Vital makes it possible to implement a robot application with only one safety controller, which does not need to be configured or programmed. Vital makes it possible to connect up to 30 safety functions in a single DYNlink loop, with PL e in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1.



Determination of PLr for the safety function with interlocked door.

### NOTE!

The assessment needs to be made for each safety function.

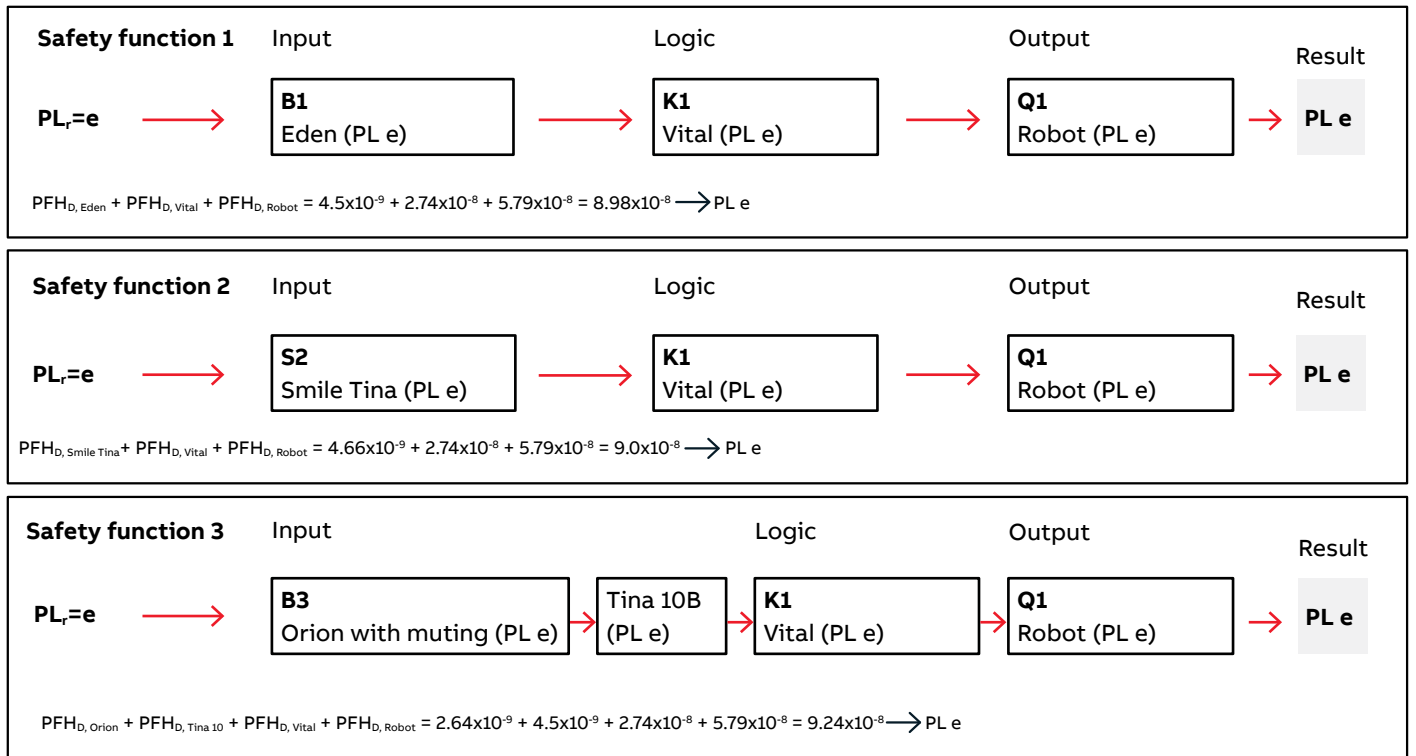


**Step 3 - Calculate the safety functions**

The PFH<sub>D</sub>-value of the robot's safety stop input is 5.79x10<sup>-8</sup> (the value applies to ABB industrial robots with IRC5 controller). The safety functions are represented by block diagrams.

**Safety function 3 - muting of light guards**

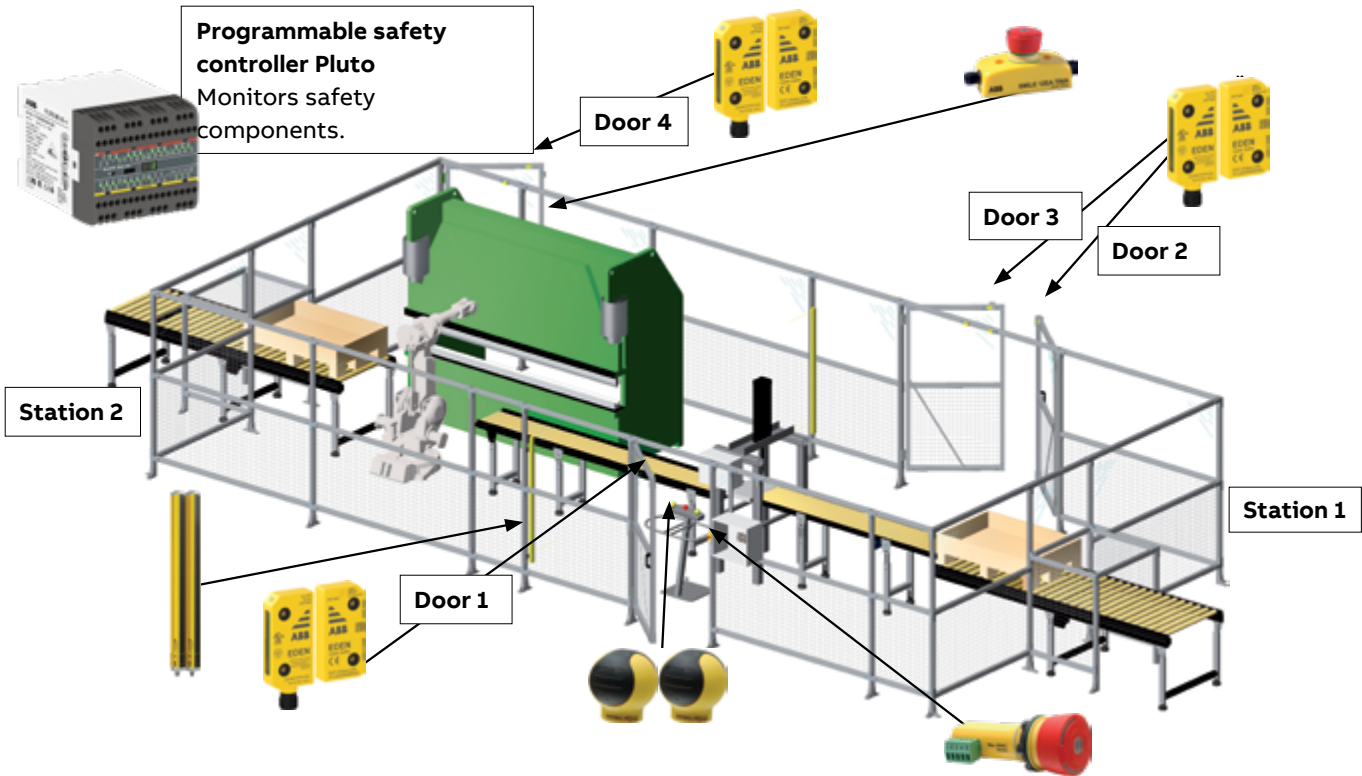
If the logic of the muting function is included in the light guard, the PFH<sub>D</sub>-value of the light guard should include the PFH<sub>D</sub>-values for the muting components. If the logic is external (i.e. safety PLC) the muting sensors should be added as separate blocks in the safety function.



These safety functions with Vital meet PL e in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1. Note that the above functions are only selected examples of the safety functions in the robot cell.

### Case study 3 - Programmable safety controller Pluto

Protection layout for a production cell with high risks



#### Step 1 – Risk assessment

The workpieces are fed into the cell through a conveyor belt and positioned by the operator in the pneumatic machining tool in station 1. The operator starts station 1 manually. The operator then places the workpiece on the conveyor belt for transfer to station 2. A light curtain prevents the operator from entering station 2 unnoticed. The robot in station 2 places the workpiece in the hydraulic press. The workpiece leaves the cell by transport out onto the conveyor.

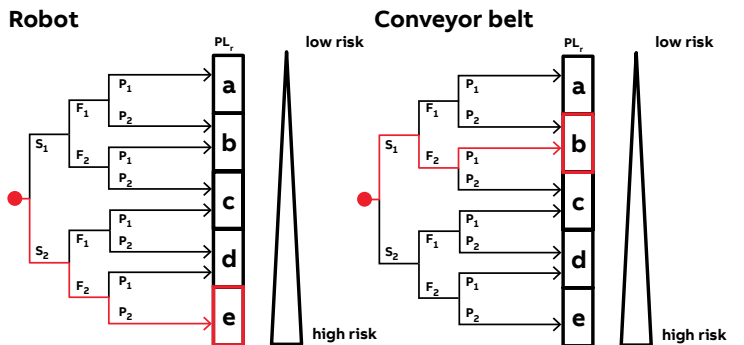
The work that needs to be done in station 2 is, e.g. to address operational disturbances in the press and the robot a few times a week (F2). Unexpected start-ups of the robot are considered to cause serious injury (S2). The operator is considered not to have the possibility of avoiding injury as the robot moves quickly (P2). The risk estimation for the safety function required for access to station 2 is  $PL_r=e$  (S2, F2, P2). This estimation would still be the same for the press. For the safety function for the risks associated with the conveyor belt, the estimation S1, F2, P1 is made giving  $PL_r=b$ .

#### Step 2 – Reduce the risk

As protection, interlocked doors are selected with the Eden non-contact sensor. Station 1 with the pneumatic machining tool is operated by a two-hand device. When the two-hand device is released, the dangerous movement will be stopped safely. Station 2 can be in automatic mode, when a light curtain (Orion) and a non-contact sensor at door 4 (Eden) protects the entry. If the door is opened or the light curtain

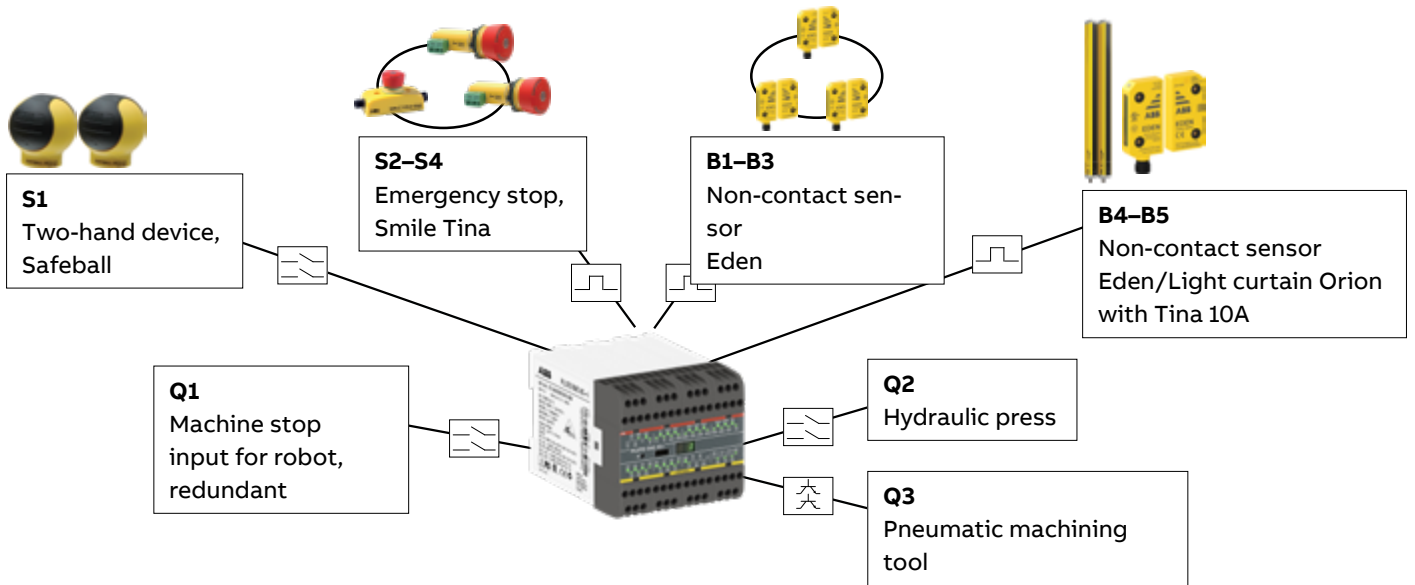
is interrupted, energy to the hazardous functions in station 2 is removed. By opening doors 2 and 3 (also monitored by Eden sensors) the conveyor belt and the pneumatic machining tool will stop safely. Manual reset must always be done after actuation of any safety device.

When the protection system requires a number of safety devices and that multiple machines must be stopped, Pluto programmable safety controller is the most effective solution. If the protection system also has to work by zones and in different modes of operation, this is another good reason to use Pluto. With Pluto, PL e can be achieved regardless of the number of connected safety devices.



PL<sub>r</sub>= e for the robot and hydraulic press. PL<sub>r</sub>=b for the conveyor belt.

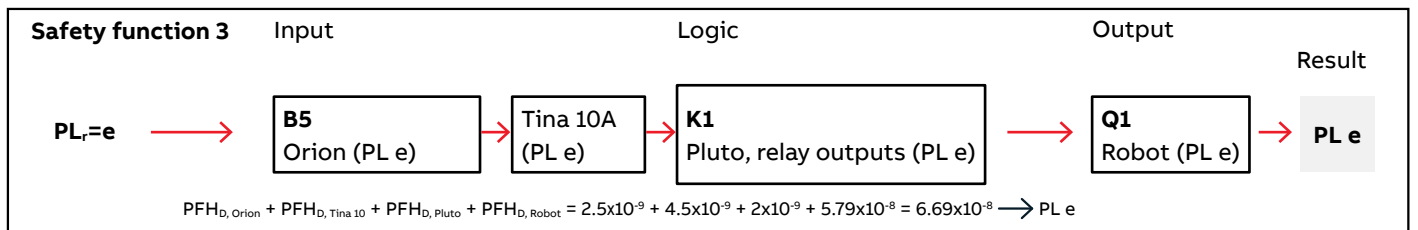
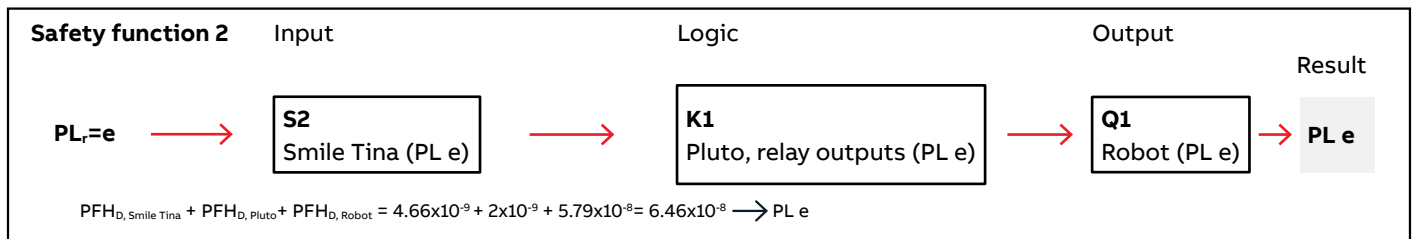
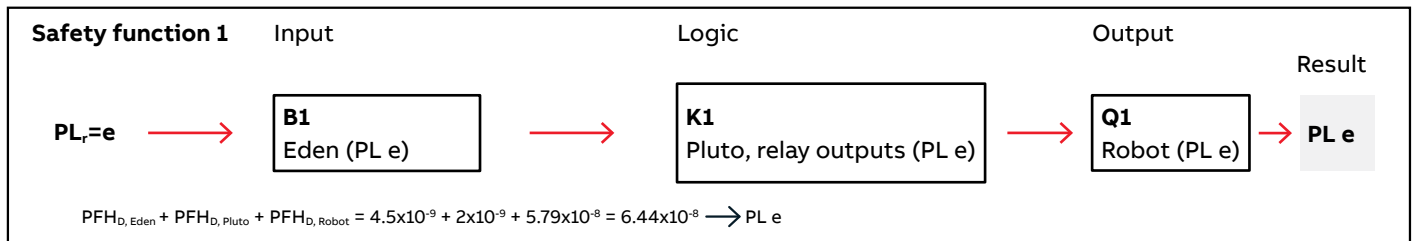




**Step 3 - Calculate the safety functions for the robot cell**

The PFH<sub>D</sub>-value for the robot's safety stop input is 5.79x10<sup>-8</sup> (the value applies to ABB industrial robots with IRC5 controller).

Only safety functions to help remove energy to the industrial robot are shown below. This is only a subset of the safety functions. When energy is removed to multiple machines in a cell, the safety functions can be defined in different ways depending on the risk assessment. The safety functions are represented by block diagrams.



These safety functions with Pluto meet PL e in accordance with EN ISO 13849-1. Note that the above functions are only selected examples of the safety functions in the robot cell.

## What defines a safety function?

Calculating that you have achieved the PL<sub>r</sub> that is required is not difficult, especially if you use “pre-calculated” safety devices and logic units. But which parts should be included in each safety function?

This must be resolved before you start the calculations. To summarise in simple terms you can say that each safety device should be a part of the safety function for each machine that is affected by the safety device in question. Three safety devices that all remove the energy to three machines in a cell is therefore equal to nine safety functions. In the section that follows, we explain the background.

### Multiple safety functions for a machine

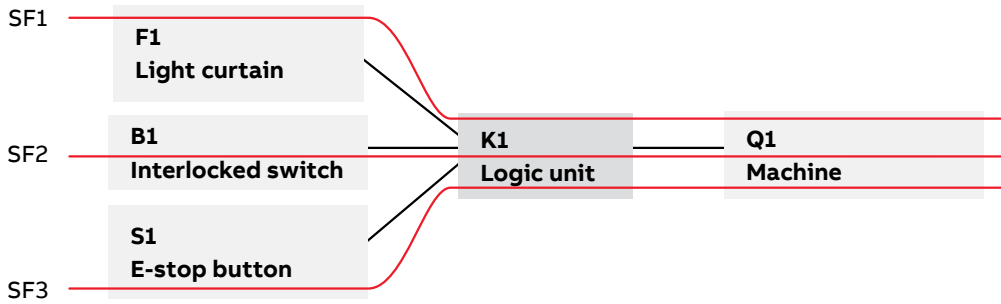
Multiple safety devices are often used on a machine in order to provide satisfactory and practical protection for the operators. In the following example, a machine is protected by three safety devices connected to a logic device. The following figure illustrates this interconnection schematically.

Three safety functions (SF) are defined for the machine and are calculated as:

$$SF1: PFH_{D, F1} + PFH_{D, K1} + PFH_{D, Q1} = PFH_{D, SF1}$$

$$SF2: PFH_{D, B1} + PFH_{D, K1} + PFH_{D, Q1} = PFH_{D, SF2}$$

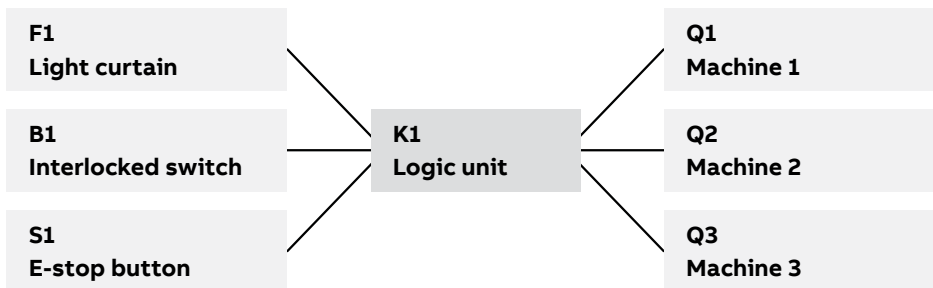
$$SF3: PFH_{D, S1} + PFH_{D, K1} + PFH_{D, Q1} = PFH_{D, SF3}$$



### Multiple safety functions for multiple machines in a cell

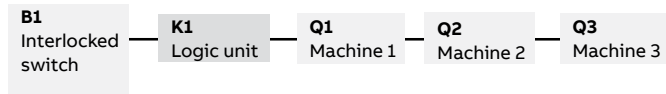
It is quite common for several machines in a single cell/zone to be protected by multiple safety devices. The following figure illustrates the interconnection schematically for an example. Each of the machines Q1 – Q3 is shut down separately and independently by K1.

If the operator enters the cell, he is exposed in this case to the same type of risk from all three machines. The power to all three machines must be cut e.g. when the operator enters the cell through the door interlocked by B1.



### Theoretical approach for multiple machines

The theoretical approach to calculate the safety function is as follows:



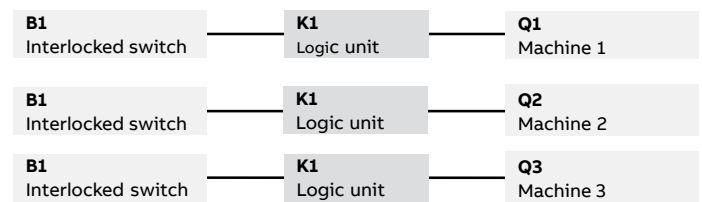
For the full safety function to be performed you require all the components to be working. Note that if B1 or K1 has a dangerous malfunction, the entire safety function is disabled. However, if for example machine Q1 has a dangerous malfunction, and is not shut down, machines Q2 and Q3 will still be shut down. One disadvantage in considering the safety function in this way is that you may have trouble achieving the  $PL_r$  required. But if you achieve the  $PL_r$  required, you can use the theoretical approach.

Sources:

[http://www.dguv.de/medien/ifa/en/prg/en13849/safety\\_functions.pdf](http://www.dguv.de/medien/ifa/en/prg/en13849/safety_functions.pdf)

### Practical approach for multiple machines

A more practical approach is to divide the safety function into three parts, one for each of the three machines.



This is an approach that can provide a more accurate way of looking at the safety functions, especially where a different  $PL_r$  is required for the safety functions above. If machine Q1 is a robot and machine Q2 is a conveyor which is designed to have negligible risks, the different  $PL_r$  required to protect against risks from Q1 and Q2 will also be different. This practical approach is therefore the one recommended. The interpretation is based on information provided by IFA (Institut für Arbeitsschutz der Deutschen Gesetzlichen Unfallversicherung). For more information on this and other issues, see Sources.

### Example of safety functions for multiple machines in a cell

For a cell with three machines (one robot, one hydraulic press and one pneumatic machining tool) a risk assessment is made resulting in different  $PL_r$  for the individual machines. The robot and the hydraulic press requires  $PL_r = e$ , while the pneumatic machining tool requires  $PL_r = d$ . One of the safety functions is that a non-contact sensor

(Eden) supervised by a safety PLC (Pluto) shall disconnect the energy to all three machines in the hazard zone:

- Eden B1 ( $PFH_{D, B1} = 4.5 \times 10^{-9}$ )
- Pluto K1 ( $PFH_{D, K1} = 2 \times 10^{-9}$ )
- Robot Q1 ( $PFH_{D, Q1} = 5.79 \times 10^{-8}$ )
- Hydraulic press Q2 ( $PFH_{D, Q2} = 8 \times 10^{-8}$ )
- Pneumatic machining tool Q3 ( $PFH_{D, Q3} = 2 \times 10^{-7}$ ).

### Practical approach

If you use the practical approach the safety functions are as follows:

Robot:

$$PFH_{D, B1} + PFH_{D, K1} + PFH_{D, Q1} = 4.5 \times 10^{-9} + 2 \times 10^{-9} + 5.79 \times 10^{-8} = 6.44 \times 10^{-8} \longrightarrow PL e$$

Hydraulic press:

$$PFH_{D, B1} + PFH_{D, K1} + PFH_{D, Q2} = 4.5 \times 10^{-9} + 2 \times 10^{-9} + 8 \times 10^{-8} = 8.65 \times 10^{-8} \longrightarrow PL e$$

Pneumatic machining tool:

$$PFH_{D, B1} + PFH_{D, K1} + PFH_{D, Q3} = 4.5 \times 10^{-9} + 2 \times 10^{-9} + 2 \times 10^{-7} = 2.07 \times 10^{-7} \longrightarrow PL d$$

This is to be done in a similar way with other safety functions for the cell. For each safety device, you define the machines it affects, and establish the various safety functions according to this.

### Theoretical approach

What would the result be using the theoretical approach? Would the safety function achieve  $PL e$ ?

All machines:

$$PFH_{D, B1} + PFH_{D, K1} + PFH_{D, Q1} + PFH_{D, Q2} + PFH_{D, Q3} \\ = 4.5 \times 10^{-9} + 2 \times 10^{-9} + 5.79 \times 10^{-8} + 8 \times 10^{-8} + 2 \times 10^{-7} = 3.44 \times 10^{-7} \longrightarrow PL d$$

In this case, the safety function would not achieve a total  $PL e$ , which was required for the risks associated with the robot and hydraulic press.

### Conclusions

- Use the practical approach for multiple machines.
- Use safety devices/logic units with high reliability (low  $PFH_D$ ) to make it easy to achieve the  $PL_r$  required.
- With Vital or Pluto, it is easier to achieve the  $PL_r$  required.

Please note that the examples on these pages are simplified in order to explain the principles. Values of products can also change.

## FSDT and SISTEMA

### Tools for determining performance level (PL)

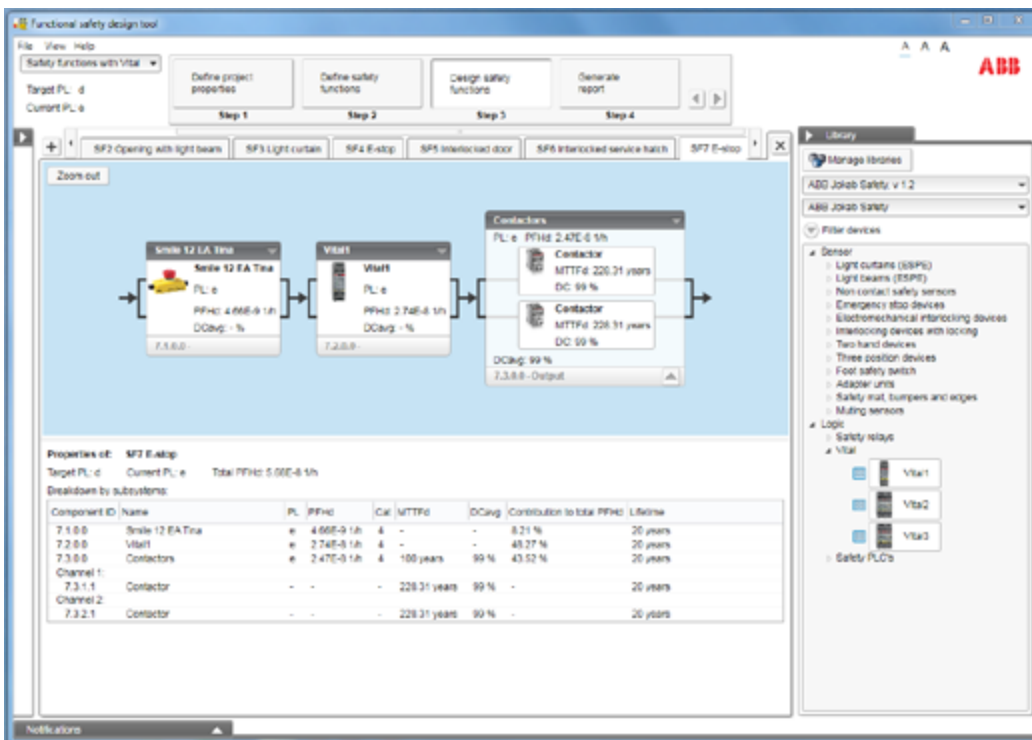
#### Tools to simplify the process of safety function design

FSDT is an ABB software for determining PL and SIL of safety functions and generating technical documentation. The tool helps simplifying the process of safety function design, verification and documentation. It supports the compliance of the requirements of both EN ISO 13849-1 and IEC 62061 as well as the European Machinery Directive. FSDT is freeware and can be downloaded from the ABB website.

Another commonly used software tool for the calculation of PL according to EN ISO 13849-1 is SISTEMA, developed by IFA (The Institute for Occupational Safety and Health) in Germany. With SISTEMA it is possible to “build” safety functions, verify them and generate the technical documentation required. The tool is freeware and can be downloaded from the IFA website.

To simplify the use of FSDT and SISTEMA with our products we have created a library containing all of our safety products.

#### 2TLC172300D0201



## Applying IEC/EN 62061

If a safety function is designed in accordance with IEC/EN 62061, the level of reliability is expressed as the Safety Integrity Level, SIL. There are a total of 4 levels, but in the IEC/EN 62061 standard SIL 3 is the highest level. SIL is similar to PL (performance level) and uses the same PFH<sub>d</sub> (probability of dangerous failure per hour) to express the reliability of components and systems.

| Safety Integrity Level, SIL | Probability of dangerous Failure per Hour (PFH <sub>d</sub> ) |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 3                           | $\geq 10^{-8}$ to $< 10^{-7}$                                 |
| 2                           | $\geq 10^{-7}$ to $< 10^{-6}$                                 |
| 1                           | $\geq 10^{-6}$ to $< 10^{-5}$                                 |

There is a method in IEC/EN 62061 for assigning the Safety Integrity Level.

| Severity (Se) | Class (CI) |      |      |       |       |
|---------------|------------|------|------|-------|-------|
|               | 3-4        | 5-7  | 8-10 | 11-13 | 14-15 |
| 4             | SIL2       | SIL2 | SIL2 | SIL3  | SIL3  |
| 3             |            | (OM) | SIL1 | SIL2  | SIL3  |
| 2             |            |      | (OM) | SIL1  | SIL2  |
| 1             |            |      |      | (OM)  | SIL1  |

CI=Fr+Pr+Av  
OM=Other Measures

The severity of injury that can occur is divided into four levels. Class is the addition of the values of frequency (Fr, stated as a value between 1 and 5, where 5 represents the highest frequency), probability that a dangerous event will occur (Pr, stated as a value between 1 and 5, where 5 represents the highest probability) and the possibility of avoiding or limiting injury (Av, stated as a value of 1, 3 or 5, where 5 represents the least chance of avoiding or limiting an injury).

The safety function that is to be designed must at least fulfill the SIL that has been assigned to it in the risk assessment. The safety function consists of a number of sub-elements. Example: a door is interlocked by a non-contact sensor which is in turn monitored by a Pluto safety PLC, with outputs that break the power to two supervised contactors. The sensor is sub-element 1, Pluto is sub-element 2 and the two supervised contactors are sub-element 3. If in the assessment it has been established that SIL2 shall be used, every individual sub-element in the safety function must fulfill the SIL2 requirements. And the safety function must in its entirety fulfill the SIL2 requirements.

### Definition of protective safety in accordance with IEC/EN 62061

"Function of a machine whose failure can result in an immediate increase of the risk(s)"

If the SIL requirements are not fulfilled in any of the sub-elements or by the safety function in its entirety, a re-design must be made.

### Finally

This is just a brief introduction to the EN ISO 13849-1 and IEC/EN 62061 standards. You are welcome to contact us for more information and we are happy to guide you in how to apply the standards to our products.

The information given in this document is not intended to replace the standards - we strongly encourage you to purchase the standards if you are working with machine safety.



---




# Safety controllers

- 2-2      **Introduction and overview**
- 2-6      **Programmable safety controller  
Pluto**
- 2-16     **Safety controller  
Vital**
- 2-22     **Safety relay  
Sentry**

# Introduction and overview

## Selection guide

The safety controllers from ABB can monitor anything from a single safety function to complete manufacturing lines.

|                                  | Pluto  | Vital  | Sentry  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|---|
| <b>Image</b>                     |    |    |   |
| <b>Type</b>                      | Programmable safety controller   | Safety controller  | Safety relay  |
| <b>Description</b>               | A cost-effective, powerful and compact programmable safety controller for all types of safety applications.  | A configurable safety controller that can monitor all safety devices on smaller machines.  | Powerful and easy-to-install safety relays suitable for all common types of safety devices.   |
| <b>Application(s)</b>            | Monitoring of multiple safety devices and several safety functions, as well as control of machines and/or processes. Many I/Os and programmable logic.   | Monitoring multiple safety devices with all the advantages of the DYNlink system.  | Monitoring safety devices with one safety function, as well as expansion of safety outputs, with or without time delay.   |
| <b>Compatible safety devices</b> | All types of conventional safety devices and DYNlink devices   | DYNlink devices  | All types of conventional safety devices  |
| <b>Advantages</b>                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Easy-to-use while still allowing advanced programming</li> <li>- Free software</li> <li>- Easy system modification</li> <li>- Gateway communication with all main fieldbuses</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Monitor up to 30 sensors in series maintaining Cat. 4/PL e</li> <li>- No programming</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Easy to install</li> <li>- Universal models for all common applications</li> <li>- Extensive status information</li> <li>- Advanced timer functions</li> <li>- Multireset of up to 10 safety relays</li> </ul> |



---

## Overview

### Selection orientation

#### Conventional safety devices

By conventional safety devices, we mean safety devices with one or two channels with contacts (e.g. key switches and emergency stop buttons), devices with OSSD outputs (e.g. light guards and Eden OSSD), safety devices with solid state outputs (e.g. safety magnetic sensors) and pressure sensitive devices (e.g. safety mats, safety edges and bumpers). A safety controller compatible with conventional safety devices can be used with most safety devices on the market, independently of the brand.

#### The DYNlink solution

The DYNlink solution is a unique ABB Jokab Safety feature allowing to connect safety devices in series and still reach category 4/PL e/SIL 3 with only one channel (instead of two with conventional safety devices). This saves cabling and hardware.

For a small machine, the Vital safety controller can be a very cost effective solution since up to 30 DYNlink devices can be connected to one Vital and still reach category 4/PL e/SIL 3. With conventional safety devices this would require one safety relay per safety device.

When Pluto programmable safety controller is used, only one safety input is necessary for each DYNlink circuit instead of two inputs for a traditional safety device, which means that less I/Os are necessary.

Tina adapters allow to use conventional safety devices in a DYNlink solution and transform between DYNlink signals and conventional safety signals, while maintaining the highest level of safety. This means that most conventional safety devices can be used in a DYNlink solution when used together with a suitable Tina adapter.

#### Programmable logic

Quite often, there is a need for logic between the different safety functions. For instance: IF ("door A" AND "door B" are open) OR ("door C" is open) THEN "Action 1".

A logic like this can be hardwired without using programmable safety controllers, but the cabling becomes much more complicated, modifications are time consuming, errors happen more often and are difficult to find.

With a programmable safety controller, the safety devices are simply connected to the safe inputs of the controller and the logic is made in the program of the safety controller. The logic is then easy to modify without changing anything in the cabling. The Pluto Manager programming software allows to test the logic and see on the screen if there are any problems, which means much faster troubleshooting.

Pluto also offers many functions that enables it to do much more than supervising safety functions. It can e.g. control the complete manufacturing process of a smaller machine, thus saving the cost of a standard (non-safety) PLC.

---

## Introduction and overview

### Standards

#### Standards

Some of the more important safety standards to follow when designing safety solutions are:

EN ISO 12100 - Risk assessment

EN ISO 13849 - Performance Level

EN ISO 62061 - SIL

ISO/TR 23849 - Guidance on the use of the PL and SIL standards

EN 60204 - Electrical equipment



# Programmable safety controller

## Pluto

Pluto is a cost effective, powerful and compact programmable safety controller used in a variety of applications: in large and small systems for process and functional safety.

Pluto can control most types of safety devices on the market, as well as ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink safety devices, analog sensors, encoders, contactors, valves and many more. Programming is done easily in the complimentary software, Pluto Manager.

The models with safety bus communication simplify the design of safety systems, thanks to our All-Master concept. A wide range of gateways allows communication with other networks and also remote monitoring of a Pluto system.



Speed up installation



Optimum interface



Continuous operation

### Great flexibility

Up to 32 Pluto units can exchange data on the same safety bus, and the unique All-Master system allows simple scaling, splitting and modification.

### Powerful yet compact

Unexpected features for its size, like real programming and speed monitoring, enables replacement of more complex PLC systems in some applications.

### More sensors and less cabling

The DYNlink solution allows series connection of up to 10 safety devices on each input. StatusBus and light button feature also reduces cabling to a minimum.

### Programming software free of charge

Pluto Manager is an easy to use PC based programming software provided free of charge.

### Easy programming

Ready-made TÜV approved function blocks for safety functions make it easy to reach PL e/SIL3. Ladder logic and text programming allow the design of more advanced functions and the control of complete machines.

### Communication with external networks

Pluto gateways provide a two-way communication between the Pluto safety bus and other field buses.

### Easy modification

Easy and quick replacement of units without any configuration.

### Flexible monitoring

Online monitoring from any Pluto in the system and remote monitoring and control with an Ethernet gateway.

## Features

### Pluto

#### I/Os

**Failsafe inputs (I)** are used to connect the safety devices to be monitored. Some of them can be used as analog inputs and counter inputs. The choice is made in the Pluto program when the I/Os are configured. Depending on the model, the analog inputs can be low resolution 0-27 V or high resolution 0-10 V/4-20 mA. The fast counter inputs can handle frequencies up to 14 kHz.

**Failsafe inputs/non-failsafe outputs (IQ)** are terminals that can be used as failsafe inputs or communication outputs (non-failsafe). The choice is made in the Pluto program when the I/Os are configured. A specific configuration is “light button” which means that both the contact and the LED indicator of an illuminated push-button are connected to only one IQ, thus saving one I/O.

**Failsafe outputs (Q)** are individually safe and independently programmable outputs. There are both relay and transistor outputs. The transistor outputs deliver a negative voltage (-24 VDC) that facilitates the detection of a short circuit with other voltage potentials and increases safety. The transistor outputs are primarily intended for electromechanical components such as contactors and valves.

#### DYNlink solution

The DYNlink circuit is a unique solution that allows up to 10 DYNlink devices to be connected in series to a Pluto input while still reaching up to Cat. 4/PL e/SIL3. This saves inputs and cabling, since to reach the same level with standard two-channel safety devices, two inputs are necessary and series connection is not possible.

The DYNlink solution checks the signal 200 times/second and a fault such as a short circuit will be detected before any safety device is used.

Examples of DYNlink devices are Eden and Smile Tina. Most two-channel safety devices can be connected to the DYNlink solution using Tina adapters.

#### StatusBus functionality

The StatusBus functionality is available with some DYNlink devices and allows to collect the status of each individual safety device, even when connected in series. A single input on Pluto can collect the status of up to 30 safety devices. The devices are connected using standard cable and M12-5 connectors. No specific bus cable or extra communication module is necessary. All Pluto models offer the StatusBus functionality.



StatusBus logotype

#### Safety bus with All-Master function

The unique All-Master system allows simple scaling, splitting and modification of the safety system.

In a traditional safety PLC network, there is one Master and additional Slave units. But for Plutos connected to a safety bus, all units are Masters and make their own decisions, while still having the possibility to listen to what is happening to the other Plutos on the safety bus. This enables great flexibility when it comes to modification of the safety system. It also enables very simple replacement of a broken Pluto, since all Plutos have a copy of the application software of all other Plutos on the safety bus stored locally. If the replacement Pluto is given the same ID as the broken Pluto (using IDFIX), the software is downloaded from the safety bus with a simple button on the front of Pluto.

Up to 32 Pluto units can be connected to the Pluto safety bus. The Pluto S20 and S46 are stand-alone models and cannot be connected to the Pluto safety bus. All other models have bus functionality. The Safety bus functionality is necessary in order to use a Pluto gateway.

## Features

### Pluto

#### Pluto Manager

Pluto Manager is the programming software for Pluto, downloaded free of charge from our website <http://new.abb.com/low-voltage/products/safety-products/programmable-safety-controllers/pluto>

An update function in Pluto Manager helps you to always have the latest version installed as long as you have an Internet connection. Pluto Manager is a user friendly PC software that allows a simple configuration of the Pluto I/Os and programming in ladder logic and with TÜV approved function blocks.



Examples of what the available function blocks can handle:

- Two-channel safety devices, with or without Reset and Monitoring.
- Single channel functions with Reset.
- Muting functions
- Encoders and counters
- Communication with Gateways and StatusBus

Examples of ladder logic functions provided:

- Boolean instructions, Edge/inverted edge detection, Latch function, Toggle
- Timers
- Addition, Subtraction, Multiplication, Division
- Remanent memories
- Registers: 16 and 32 bit
- Sequence programming
- Option handling
- Online monitoring

In Pluto Manager there is a unique Option handling function suitable for series production of machines with different customer options. All versions of a machine type can have the same PLC program. To handle the different customer options, check boxes are used to set memories that activate the different functions of the code.

#### Current monitoring

Pluto A20 has a special current monitoring function. The function is mainly used to check if the connected muting lamps are working.

#### Remote monitoring and control

Remote monitoring allows the connection to a remote Pluto system via the Internet and an Ethernet gateway. Pluto Manager is used for the monitoring.

This function can be used for:

- Support of local maintenance personnel during troubleshooting
- Regular monitoring of the status of the machine or process
- Follow-up of operational data like number of cycles/day or runtime.

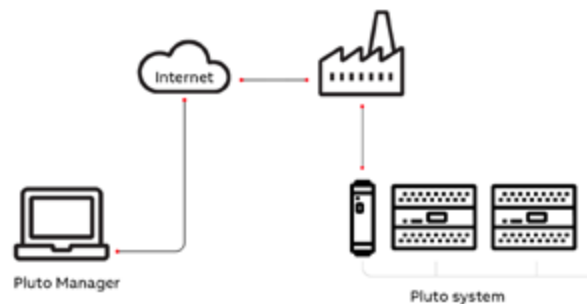
Pluto Manager also offers remote control of a Pluto system using the Internet and an Ethernet gateway.

With the remote control function it is possible to:

- Download a program from PC to the remote Pluto
- Configure addressing of AS-i and StatusBus slaves, write IDFIX code

The security of the remote control function is guaranteed by use of the K-button on Pluto. A change in a remote Pluto system cannot be made without a person at the remote Pluto confirming the action by pressing the K-button.

Configuration of the gateway itself, e.g. switching remote control on/off, can only be made via the programming port on the gateway and not via the Ethernet port.



## Accessories

### Pluto

#### Pluto gateways

Pluto gateways provide two-way communication between the Pluto safety bus, i.e. all the Pluto units connected to it, and other field buses. Several models are available for the most common field buses.

Ready-made function blocks in Pluto Manager facilitate the communication. A gateway can be located anywhere on the Pluto safety bus.



#### Pluto safe encoders

Rotary absolute encoders can be used for safe position determination.

Our safe encoders are intended to be connected to the Pluto safety bus. They are available in single and multi-turn versions, with shaft or hollow shaft. Up to 16 absolute encoders can be connected to a Pluto safety bus. In Pluto Manager, specific function blocks make it easy to read and evaluate the values of two encoders forming a PL e/SIL3 solution. Apart from position, the speed values are available which means that also zero speed and overspeed can be monitored.

Examples of applications are gantry robots, industrial robots, and also eccentric shaft presses, where the encoders can replace existing cam mechanisms.



#### Operator panels

An operator panel can be connected to the programming port of Pluto with a specific cable and communicate with Pluto in MODBUS ASCII. We recommend the ABB CP600 series operator panels that offer the appropriate communication driver.

An operator panel can also communicate with Pluto via a GATE-MT gateway.



# Ordering information

## Pluto



2TLC000095V0201

Pluto S20 v2



2TLC000098V0201

Pluto A20 v2



2TLC000029V0201

Pluto D45

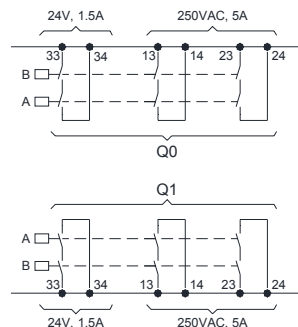
### Pluto ordering table

Pluto is available in different models depending on the needs of your application. Optional features includes bus communication, high resolution analog inputs and current monitoring.

| Safety bus | Failsafe outputs <sup>a)</sup> | Failsafe inputs (max) <sup>b)</sup> | Analog inputs (max) <sup>b)</sup> | Fast counter inputs (max) <sup>b)</sup> | StatusBus inputs (max) <sup>b)</sup> | Non failsafe outputs (max) <sup>b)</sup> | Width mm | Type                    | Order code      |                 |
|------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|--|----------|-------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| No         | 4                              | 16                                  | 1 <sup>c)</sup>                   | -                                       | 4                                    | 8  | 45       | Pluto S20               | 2TLA020070R4700 |                 |
|            | 6                              | 40                                  | 3 <sup>c)</sup>                   | -                                       | 4                                    | 16                                       | 90       | Pluto S46               | 2TLA020070R1800 |                 |
| Yes        | -                              | 22                                  | 1 <sup>c)</sup>                   | -                                       | 4                                    | 8  | 45       | Pluto B22 <sup>e)</sup> | 2TLA020070R4800 |                 |
|            | 2                              | 4                                   | -                                 | -                                       | 2                                    | 2  | 45       | Pluto O2 <sup>f)</sup>  | 2TLA020070R8500 |                 |
|            | 4                              | 16                                  | 1 <sup>c)</sup>                   | -                                       | 4                                    | 8  | 45       | Pluto A20 <sup>g)</sup> | 2TLA020070R4500 |                 |
|            |                                |                                     |                                   |   |                                      |  |          | Pluto B20               | 2TLA020070R4600 |                 |
|            |                                |                                     |                                   | 4 <sup>d)</sup> + 1 <sup>c)</sup>       | -                                    | 4  | 8        | 45                      | Pluto D20       | 2TLA020070R6400 |
|            |                                | 6                                   | 40                                | 3 <sup>c)</sup>                         | -                                    | 4  | 16       | 90                      | Pluto B46       | 2TLA020070R1700 |
|            |                                | 39                                  | 8 <sup>d)</sup>                   | 4                                       | 4                                    | 15                                       | 90       | Pluto D45               | 2TLA020070R6600 |                 |

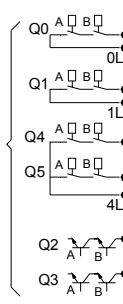
a) Failsafe outputs

- 2 failsafe outputs:
  - 2 independent individually safe potential free relay outputs (Q0 and Q1) with 3 contacts each



- 4 failsafe outputs:
  - 2 independent individually safe potential free relay outputs (Q0 and Q1)
  - 2 independent individually safe transistor outputs (-24 VDC) (Q2 and Q3)

- 6 failsafe outputs:
  - 2 independent individually safe potential free relay outputs (Q0 and Q1)
  - 2 independent individually safe potential free relay outputs with common supply (Q4 and Q5)
  - 2 independent individually safe transistor outputs (-24 VDC) (Q2 and Q3)



- b) -The number of failsafe inputs available decreases with the number of used non-failsafe outputs, analog inputs, fast counter inputs and StatusBus inputs.
  - The number of analogue inputs available decreases with the number of used fast counter inputs.
  - The number of non-failsafe outputs available decreases with the number of StatusBus inputs used.
 Check the [Pluto hardware manual](#) for more information.
- c) 0-27 V analog inputs
- d) 0-10 V/4-20 mA (high resolution) analog inputs
- e) Expansion model with failsafe inputs and no failsafe outputs.
- f) Expansion model with 2 failsafe outputs with 3 contacts each. Also possible to use as stand-alone unit.
- g) Model with current monitoring



## Ordering information

### Pluto accessories



2TLC1272609F0201

IDFIX-R



2TLC1272655F0201

IDFIX-RW



2TLC1272607F0201

IDFIX-DATA



2TLC1272611F0201

IDFIX-PROG 2k5



2TLC1272613F0201

IDFIX-PROG 10k



FIXA



2TLC1272624F0201

R120 Resistor

#### IDFIX identifiers

IDFIX is an identification circuit that is connected to Pluto. It must be used:

- when several Pluto are connected to the Pluto Safety bus (IDFIX-R or IDFIX-RW)
- to get the possibility to replace a stand-alone Pluto with a new one without the need of a PC (IDFIX-PROG stores the Pluto program)

| Description   | Type           | Order code      |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| Pre-programmed unique identification number.  | IDFIX-R        | 2TLA020070R2000 |
| Programmable identification number, i.e. the user can choose identification number. | IDFIX-RW       | 2TLA020070R2100 |
| Programmable identification number and storage of AS-i safety codes.                | IDFIX-DATA     | 2TLA020070R2300 |
| Storage of the Pluto program, 2.5 Kbyte. Especially useful for stand-alone Pluto.   | IDFIX-PROG 2k5 | 2TLA020070R2400 |
| Storage of the Pluto program, 10 Kbyte. Especially useful for stand-alone Pluto.    | IDFIX-PROG 10k | 2TLA020070R2600 |

#### Pluto cables and connection accessories

| Description  | Type               | Order code      |
|--|--------------------|-----------------|
| Pluto programming and on-line monitoring cable. For a PC serial port, 9-pole D-sub connector.  | Pluto cable serial | 2TLA020070R5600 |
| Pluto programming and on-line monitoring cable. For a PC USB port.   | Pluto cable USB    | 2TLA020070R5800 |
| Cable for connecting a HMI-panel to the Pluto programming port. Connector on HMI-side: 15-pole D-sub. On Pluto side: 90 degrees angled Modbus contact. | Pluto cable HMI    | 2TLA020070R5700 |
| Cable for connecting HMI-panel ABB CP400 to Pluto programming port. Connector on HMI-side: 9-pole D-sub.   | Pluto cable CP400  | 2TLA020070R6700 |
| Cable for connecting HMI-panel ABB CP600 to Pluto programming port. Connector on HMI-side: 9-pole D-sub.   | Pluto cable CP600  | 2TLA020070R6900 |
| Bus cable for Pluto safety bus, 2 x 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> . Ordered by meter, cut to size. Minimum order length 10 m.                                   | PCABLE-000         | 2TLA020070R6800 |
| Bus cable for Pluto safety bus, 2 x 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> . 50-meter ring.  | PCABLE-050         | 2TLA020070R6805 |
| Bus cable for Pluto safety bus, 2 x 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> . 100-meter ring.   | PCABLE-100         | 2TLA020070R6810 |
| Bus cable for Pluto safety bus, 2 x 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> . 500-meter drum.   | PCABLE-500         | 2TLA020070R6850 |
| Bus cable for Pluto safety bus, 2 x 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> . Halogen free. Ordered by meter, cut to size. Minimum order length 10 m.                     | PCABLE-000-HF      | 2TLA020070R8600 |
| Bus cable for Pluto safety bus, 2 x 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> . Halogen free. 50-meter ring.  | PCABLE-050-HF      | 2TLA020070R8605 |
| Bus cable for Pluto safety bus, 2 x 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> . Halogen free. 100-meter ring.   | PCABLE-100-HF      | 2TLA020070R8610 |
| Bus cable for Pluto safety bus, 2 x 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> . Halogen free. 500-meter drum.   | PCABLE-500-HF      | 2TLA020070R8650 |
| Terminal block with capacitor, 12nF, for connection between 0 V of Pluto supply and earth in order to reduce problems with conducted disturbances.     | Pluto capacitor    | 2TLA020070R3200 |

#### Other accessories

| Description   | Type              | Order code      |
|---|-------------------|-----------------|
| Set of function blocks for mechanical presses.  | Pluto press block | 2TLA020070R4100 |
| Smile reset button for light button function with M12-5 connector.  | Smile 11 RB       | 2TLA030053R0100 |
| Handheld terminal for StatusBus. Used for e.g. addressing and test. Connection to PC via USB-micro cable  | FIXA              | 2TLA020072R2000 |
| Terminating resistor for Pluto safety bus. Necessary for each stand-alone Pluto and on the Pluto units at each end of the Pluto safety bus. Should be removed from the other Pluto units. | R120 Resistor     | 2TLA020070R2200 |

#### Pluto spare parts (included when ordering a Pluto)

| Description   | Type                 | Order code      |
|---|----------------------|-----------------|
| Contact block for safety relays and Pluto. 7 poles. Grey. | Contact block 7 grey | 2TLA081200R1500 |

## Ordering information

### DYNlink solution



Tina 2A

2TLC12453F0201



Tina 2B

2TLC12457F0201



Tina 3A

2TLC12458F0201



Tina 7A

2TLC12489F0201



Tina 10A

2TLC12473F0201



Tina 10B

2TLC12476F0201



Tina 10C

2TLC12477F0201



Tina 6A

2TLC12467F0201

#### Tina adaptation units to DYNlink

The Tina devices adapt the DYNlink signals from Pluto to safety components with mechanical contacts, such as E-stops, switches and light beams/curtains with dual outputs. Tina is available in several versions depending on the type of safety component that is connected to the DYNlink solution. Also available is connector blocks and a blind plug.

| Type of safety device   | Type of connection to the DYNlink loop  | Description  | Type        | Order code      |
|---|---|--|-------------|-----------------|
| Devices with positively driven force-guided contacts like E-stop buttons and key switches | Via the device connection   | Mounted directly on the device enclosure to a M20 cable entry.   | Tina 2A     | 2TLA020054R0100 |
|   | Placed inside the safety device enclosure                                     |  | Tina 2B     | 2TLA020054R1100 |
|   | M12-5 male connector  | Mounted directly on the device enclosure to a M20 cable entry.   | Tina 3A     | 2TLA020054R0200 |
|   | M12-5 male connector with extra conductor for the supply of the safety device | Two circuits and with supply voltage for the safety sensor. Connects to a M20 cable entry.   | Tina 3Aps   | 2TLA020054R1400 |
| Devices with OSSD outputs like Orion light guards   | Removable terminal blocks   | Mounted on a DIN rail in the electrical cabinet. Note that the connected safety device(s) must be mounted on the same cabinet.     | Tina 7A     | 2TLA020054R0700 |
|   | M12-5 male connector  | Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 for DYNlink.   | Tina 10A v2 | 2TLA020054R1210 |
|   |   | Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink with possibility to connect a local reset button. M12-8 for OSSD and M12-5 for DYNlink and reset.    | Tina 10B v2 | 2TLA020054R1310 |
| Safety mats, edges and bumpers with short-circuit detection                               |   | Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink with possibility to power the transmitter. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 for DYNlink and power. | Tina 10C v2 | 2TLA020054R1610 |
|   | M12-5 male connector  | Short-circuit detection and adaptation to DYNlink.   | Tina 6A     | 2TLA020054R0600 |

#### Connection blocks for serial connection of DYNlink devices (or devices with Tina adapter)

| Description  | Type     | Order code      |
|--|----------|-----------------|
| Connection block for serial connection of up to 4 DYNlink devices with M12-5 connectors        | Tina 4A  | 2TLA020054R0300 |
| Connection block for serial connection of up to 8 DYNlink devices with M12-5 connectors        | Tina 8A  | 2TLA020054R0500 |
| Connection block for serial connection of 2 DYNlink devices with M12-5 connectors              | Tina 11A | 2TLA020054R1700 |
| Connection block for serial connection of 2 DYNlink devices with M12-8 connectors, e.g. Magne. | Tina 12A | 2TLA020054R1800 |

#### Blind plug to complete the serial connection on a connection block

All M12 connectors on Tina 4A or Tina 8A must be connected to a safety device or a Tina 1A. For example, if only 6 devices are connected to a Tina 8A, two Tina 1A are necessary.

| Description  | Type    | Order code      |
|--|---------|-----------------|
| Tina 1A is a blind plug connected to the unused M12 connectors of the connection blocks Tina 4A and Tina 8A. | Tina 1A | 2TLA020054R0000 |

#### M12 Y-connectors

| Description  | Type   | Order code      |
|--|--------|-----------------|
| M12 Y-connector for series connection of DYNlink devices such as Eden, Smile, Inca and Tina.   | M12-3A | 2TLA020055R0000 |
| M12 Y-connector for parallel connection of 2 DYNlink devices.  | M12-3B | 2TLA020055R0100 |
| M12 Y-connector for the connection of 2 DYNlink devices or one DYNlink and one light button to Pluto safety PLC with only one cable. | M12-3E | 2TLA020055R0200 |
| M12 Y-connector for series connection of DYNlink devices with the StatusBus function.  | M12-3S | 2TLA020055R0600 |

## Ordering information

### Accessories



2TLC172509F0201

GATE-C2



2TLC172843F0201

GATE-EC



2TLC172331F0201

RSA 597



2TLC172469F0201

RSA 698



CP604

#### Pluto gateways

With the use of a gateway, Pluto can communicate with other control systems and form a part of a larger network. The gateway models GATE-D2 and C2 can also be used as an extension of the safety bus cable to extend the Pluto network.

| Fieldbus    | Ethernet | Type     | Order code      |
|-------------|----------|----------|-----------------|
| CANopen     |          | GATE-C2  | 2TLA020071R8100 |
| DeviceNet   |          | GATE-D2  | 2TLA020071R8200 |
| PROFIBUS-DP |          | GATE-P2  | 2TLA020071R8000 |
| EtherCAT    | x        | GATE-EC  | 2TLA020071R9100 |
| Ethernet/IP | x        | GATE-EIP | 2TLA020071R9000 |
| Modbus TCP  | x        | GATE-MT  | 2TLA020071R9400 |
| PROFINET    | x        | GATE-PN  | 2TLA020071R9300 |
| SERCOS III  | x        | GATE-S3  | 2TLA020071R9200 |

For more information, see the gateway manuals:

Pluto gateways [2TLC172009M0210](#)

Pluto Ethernet gateways [2TLC172285M0203](#)

#### Pluto safe encoders

The safe encoders can be used together with Pluto to safely determine the position of machine movements.

| Function    | Shaft  | Shaft diameter (mm) | Type of connection      | Type                | Order code      |
|-------------|--------|---------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| Single-turn | Solid  | 10                  | Connector male 12 poles | RSA 597 connector   | 2TLA020070R3600 |
|             |        | 6                   | 1.5 m cable             | RSA 597 1.5 m cable | 2TLA020070R3300 |
|             | Hollow | 12                  | 2 m cable               | RHA 597 2 m cable   | 2TLA020070R3400 |
|             |        | 10 m cable          | RHA 597 10 m cable      | 2TLA020070R5900     |                 |
| Multi-turn  | Solid  | 6                   | M12 connector           | RSA 698 6 mm solid  | 2TLA020071R7800 |
|             |        | 10                  | M12 connector           | RSA 698 10 mm solid | 2TLA020070R3700 |
|             | Hollow | 12                  | M12 connector           | RHA 698 hollow      | 2TLA020071R7900 |

For more information, see the manual:

Pluto safe encoders [2TLC172006M0206](#)

#### Pluto safe encoders accessories

| Description   | Type                           | Order code      |
|---|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| Female 12 pole connector to be used with absolute encoder "RSA 597 connector". Connector to be mounted on the cable.    | Connector for absolute encoder | 2TLA020070R3900 |
| M12 plug with Pluto safety bus termination resistor. To be used when the encoder is at one end of the Pluto safety bus. | M12-CANend                     | 2TLA020061R0300 |

#### Operator panels

An operator panel (also called HMI) can be connected to the Pluto programming port (on the Pluto front) with a special cable and communicate with Pluto using MODBUS ASCII. We recommend the ABB CP600 series that offer the appropriate communication driver. An operator panel can also communicate with Pluto via a GATE-MT gateway.

| Description   | Type  | Order code      |
|---|-------|-----------------|
| Operator panel, 4.3" touch screen, 480 x 272 pixels | CP604 | 1SAP504100R0001 |

For more sizes and version, see: <http://new.abb.com/plc/control-panels>

## Technical data

### Pluto

#### Technical data

##### Approvals



Functional Safety Type Approved  
www.tuv.com



##### Conformity



2006/42/EC - Machinery  
2014/30/EU - EMC  
2011/65/EU - RoHS  
EN ISO 13849-1:2015, IEC 62061:2015+Corr.1:2015, EN 61496-1:2013(in extracts), EN 574:1996+A1:2008(in extracts), EN 692, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009+AC:2010, EN 50178:1997, EN 61000-6-2, EN 61000-6-4, EN 61000-4-1...6, IEC 61508:2010, IEC 61511-1, EN 50156-1, EN 50156-2:2015, ISO 13851:2002 (in extracts)

##### Functional safety data

|                       |            | PFH <sub>d</sub> Failsafe relay outputs | PFH <sub>d</sub> Failsafe transistor outputs |
|-----------------------|------------|---|--|
| EN 61508:2010         | SIL3       | 2.00 × 10 <sup>-9</sup>                 | 1.5 × 10 <sup>-9</sup>                       |
| EN 62061:2005+A1:2013 | SILCL3     | 2.00 × 10 <sup>-9</sup>                 | 1.5 × 10 <sup>-9</sup>                       |
| EN ISO 13849-1:2008   | PL e/Cat.4 | 2.00 × 10 <sup>-9</sup>                 | 1.5 × 10 <sup>-9</sup>                       |

##### Electrical data

Electrical insulation Category II in accordance with IEC 61010-1

Operating voltage +24 VDC ± 15%

Failsafe outputs Q Transistor, -24 VDC, 800 mA

| Q2, Q3<br>Q0, Q1, (Q4, Q5) | Relay outputs<br>AC-12: 250 V / 1.5 A<br>VAC-15: 250 V / 1.5 A<br>VDC-12: 50 V / 1.5 A<br>DC-13: 24 V / 1.5 A | Pluto O2<br>Relay outputs<br>AC-12: 250 V / 5 A<br>AC-15: 250 V / 3 A<br>DC-12: 60 V / 5 A<br>DC-13: 24 V / 3 A | Pluto O2<br>Relay outputs (33-34)<br>AC-12: 24 V / 1.5 A<br>AC-15: 24 V / 1.5 A<br>DC-12: 24 V / 1.5 A<br>DC-13: 24 V / 1.5 A |
|----------------------------|---|---|---|
|----------------------------|---|---|---|

Installation 35 mm DIN rail

Ambient temperature -10 °C to +50 °C

##### Pluto safety bus

Max. number of Pluto units 32

Cable length Up to 600 m

#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual:

Pluto hardware manual [2TLC172001M0211](#)

#### Connection diagrams

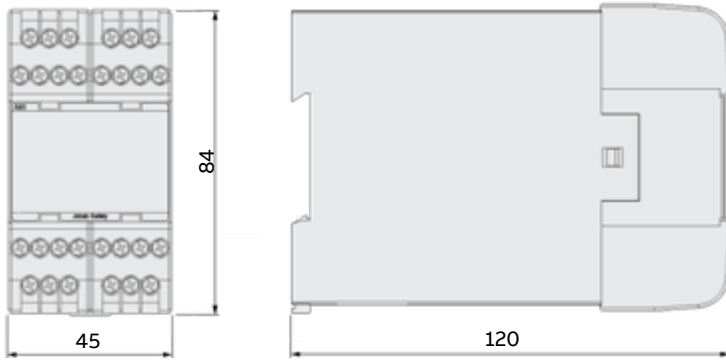
For Pluto connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>

---

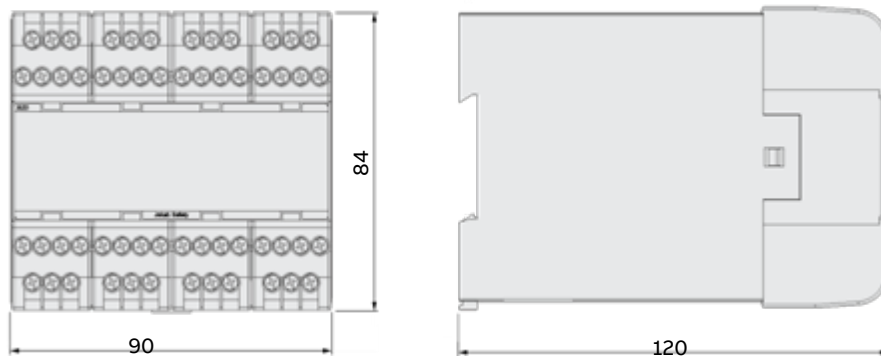
## Dimension drawings

### Pluto

#### Single size



#### Double size



All dimensions in mm

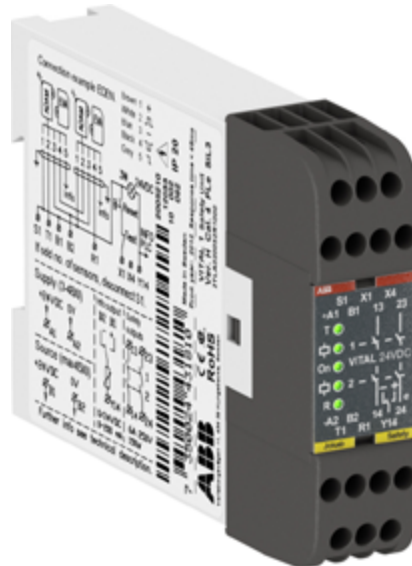
# Safety controller

## Vital

Vital is a configurable safety controller that does not require programming. It uses the DYNlink system, which allows up to 30 safety devices to be connected in series to the same circuit, while achieving PL e.

This enables a single Vital to supervise all safety functions on many machines that otherwise would have required a programmable safety controller or multiple safety relays.

Vital is also commonly used to supervise all emergency stops for larger machine lines.



Speed up your projects

### Easy connection

Reduced installation and engineering time thanks to simple installation with serial connection using M12 connectors.

### No programming required

The use of only one safety module without any programming simplifies engineering, commissioning and replacement.

### Less components

Significantly less components needed to achieve PL e/SIL 3.



Continuous operation

### LED diagnostics

Integrated LED diagnostics reduces down time when troubleshooting.

### Detachable connection blocks

Detachable connection blocks simplify replacement.

### Exchange without configuration

The configuration is made with jumpers in the detachable connection blocks. In case of exchange, the new unit automatically gets the correct configuration.



Safety and protection

### Easy to reach highest safety level

The DYNlink solution makes it possible to maintain the highest level of safety with up to 30 sensors connected in series.

### Extensive fault detection

The DYNlink solution enables unique fault detection features and prevents 2-channel faults.

---

## Applications and features

### Vital

#### Applications

Vital safety controller excels at supervising multiple safety devices on the same machine, since up to 30 safety devices can be connected in series to the same input while achieving up to PL e.

Typical applications are machines with multiple doors/hatches or emergency stop buttons.

#### Features

##### **DYNlink**

The DYNlink circuit is a unique solution that uses one single channel to achieve up to Cat. 4/PL e. Vital sends out a square wave signal that is inverted by each safety device. A connection between B1 and S1 sets if Vital should receive a non-inverted signal, i.e. an even number of devices are connected (no shunt indicates an odd number). Vital checks the returning signal 200 times/second and a fault such as a short circuit will be detected before any safety device is used.

Vital can only be used with DYNlink safety device, such as Eden DYN, and devices with a Tina adapter.

## Ordering information

### Vital



2TLC010101V0201

Vital 1

#### Description

| DYNlink circuits | Maximum DYNlink devices | Safe outputs | Type    | Order code      |
|------------------|-------------------------|--------------|---------|-----------------|
| 1                | 30                      | 2 NO         | Vital 1 | 2TLA020052R1000 |

#### Tina adaptation units to DYNlink

The Tina devices adapt the DYNlink signals from Pluto to safety components with mechanical contacts, such as E-stops, switches and light beams/curtains with dual outputs. Tina is available in several versions depending on the type of safety component that is connected to the DYNlink solution. Also available is connector blocks and a blind plug.

| Type of safety device   | Type of connection to the DYNlink loop  | Description   | Type        | Order code      |
|---|---|---|-------------|-----------------|
| Devices with positively driven force-guided contacts like E-stop buttons and key switches | Via the device connection   | Mounted directly on the device enclosure to a M20 cable entry.  | Tina 2A     | 2TLA020054R0100 |
|   |   | Placed inside the safety device enclosure   | Tina 2B     | 2TLA020054R1100 |
|   | M12-5 male connector  | Mounted directly on the device enclosure to a M20 cable entry.  | Tina 3A     | 2TLA020054R0200 |
|   | M12-5 male connector with extra conductor for the supply of the safety device | Two circuits and with supply voltage for the safety sensor. Connects to a M20 cable entry.  | Tina 3Aps   | 2TLA020054R1400 |
| Devices with OSSD outputs like Orion light guards   | Removable terminal blocks   | Mounted on a DIN rail in the electrical cabinet. Note that the connected safety device(s) must be mounted on the same cabinet.                          | Tina 7A     | 2TLA020054R0700 |
|   | M12-5 male connector  | Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink. One M12-5 and one M12-8 connector.   | Tina 10A v2 | 2TLA020054R1210 |
|   |   | Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink with possibility to connect a local reset button. M12-8 connector for OSSD. M12-5 connector for DYNlink and reset button. | Tina 10B v2 | 2TLA020054R1310 |
| Safety mats, edges and bumpers with short-circuit detection                               |   | Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink with possibility to power the transmitter. M12-8 connector for OSSD. M12-5 for DYNlink and power.                         | Tina 10C v2 | 2TLA020054R1610 |
|   | M12-5 male connector  | Short-circuit detection and adaptation to DYNlink.  | Tina 6A     | 2TLA020054R0600 |



2TLC12453F0201

Tina 2A



2TLC12457F0201

Tina 2B



2TLC12459F0201

Tina 3A



2TLC12469F0201

Tina 7A



2TLC12473F0201

Tina 10A



2TLC12475F0201

Tina 10B



2TLC12467F0201

Tina 6A

#### Connection blocks for serial connection of DYNlink devices (or devices with Tina adapter)

| Description  | Type     | Order code      |
|--|----------|-----------------|
| Connection block for serial connection of up to 4 DYNlink devices with M12-5 connectors        | Tina 4A  | 2TLA020054R0300 |
| Connection block for serial connection of up to 8 DYNlink devices with M12-5 connectors        | Tina 8A  | 2TLA020054R0500 |
| Connection block for serial connection of 2 DYNlink devices with M12-5 connectors              | Tina 11A | 2TLA020054R1700 |
| Connection block for serial connection of 2 DYNlink devices with M12-8 connectors, e.g. Magne. | Tina 12A | 2TLA020054R1800 |

#### Blind plug to complete the serial connection on a connection block

All M12 connectors on Tina 4A or Tina 8A must be connected to a safety device or a Tina 1A. For example, if only 6 devices are connected to a Tina 8A, two Tina 1A are necessary.

| Description   | Type    | Order code      |
|---|---------|-----------------|
| Blind plug connected to unused M12 connectors of the connection blocks Tina 4A and Tina 8A. | Tina 1A | 2TLA020054R0000 |

#### M12 Y-connectors




| Description  | Type   | Order code      |
|--|--------|-----------------|
| M12 Y-connector for series connection of DYNlink devices such as Eden, Smile, Inca and Tina. | M12-3A | 2TLA020055R0000 |
| M12 Y-connector for parallel connection of 2 DYNlink devices.                                | M12-3B | 2TLA020055R0100 |
| M12 Y-connector for the connection of 2 DYNlink devices with only one cable.                 | M12-3E | 2TLA020055R0200 |
| M12 Y-connector for series connection of DYNlink devices with the StatusBus function.        | M12-3S | 2TLA020055R0600 |



## Technical data

### Vital

#### Technical data

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Approvals  |  TÜV NORD    |
| Conformity   | <br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>2014/30/EU - EMC<br>2011/65/EU - RoHS<br>EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13849-1:2015, EN 62061:2005+A1:2013, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009+Cor.:2010, EN 60664-1:2007, EN 61000-6-2:2016, EN 61000-6-4:2007, EN 61496-1:2013 |
| Functional safety data   |  |
| EN 61508:2010  | SIL3   |
| EN 62061:2005+A1:2013  | SILCL3   |
| EN ISO 13849-1:2008  | PL e, Cat. 4   |
| PFH <sub>D</sub> Relay output  | $2.74 \times 10^{-8}$  |
| Electrical data  |  |
| Power supply   | +24 VDC $\pm$ 15%  |
| AC-1   | 250 VAC / 6 A / 1500 VA  |
| AC-15  | 240 VAC / 2 A  |
| DC-1   | 24 VDC / 6 A / 150 W   |
| DC-13  | 24 VDC / 1 A   |
| Number of sensors  |  |
| Max. number of Eden DYN or Tina units per input                      | 30   |
| Total max. cable length (depending on the number of Eden/Tina units) | 1000 m   |
| Operating temperature  | -10 °C to +55 °C   |

#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for:

Vital 1: [2TLC172156M0201](#)

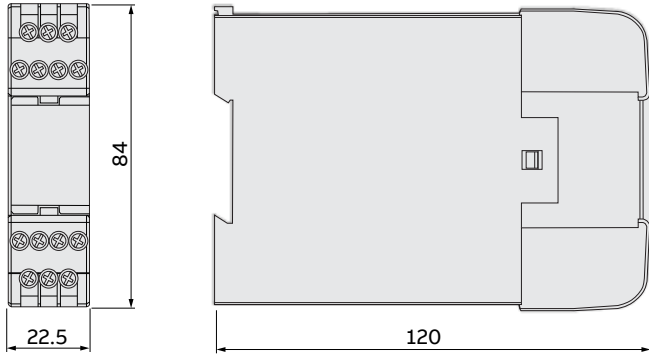
#### Connection diagrams

For Vital connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>

## Dimension drawings

Vital

### Vital 1





# Safety relay

## Sentry

The Sentry safety relays are powerful and easy to use safety relays, suitable for all common types of safety applications.

The Sentry series contains basic models for simple applications and easy output expansion, as well as highly flexible models with extremely accurate timer functions.

Sentry safety relays are used in both simple and more advanced safety solutions when safety devices need to be monitored according to the requirements of functional safety standards.



Continuous operation

### LEDs and display

LEDs in 3 colours allow for more status messages and simplify troubleshooting. Models with display offer preset configurations and extensive fault information.

### Advanced timer functions

Timer functions with an accuracy of  $\pm 1\%$  minimize unnecessary downtime.

### Multi-reset

The multi-reset function enables reset of up to 10 Sentry safety relays using just one reset button.



Optimized logistics

### Universal models

A single safety relay for all common safety applications reduces stock and saves warehouse space.

### Multi-voltage

Multi-voltage models offer more flexibility and less stock.

### Compact size

All models are only 22.5 mm wide, even models with 2 NO + 2 NO outputs.



Easy to install

### Detachable terminal blocks

Detachable terminal blocks speed up connection and replacement.

### Switch for reset selection

Manual or automatic reset easily selectable by switch.

### Powerful outputs

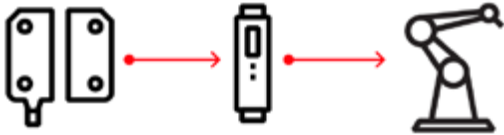
Powerful outputs allow to drive larger contactors and simplify installation by saving the use of an intermediary contactor.

## Applications

### Sentry

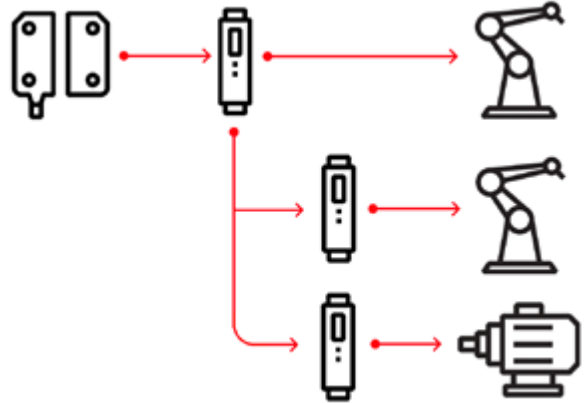
#### Monitoring of safety devices

Sentry safety relays make it easy to reach the required level of safety when monitoring safety devices like emergency stop buttons, door switches, light guards, etc.



#### Expansion of safety outputs

Sentry expansion modules are used to increase the number of safety outputs of a safety control module in order to control more machinery.



## Features

### Sentry

#### Timer functions with an accuracy of $\pm 1\%$

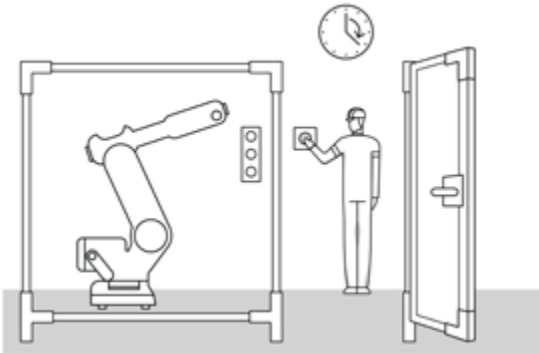
Several timer functions are available: On/Off-delay, time bypass and time reset.

On/Off-delay are used to postpone the activation/deactivation of the safety outputs with a preset time delay. This is used in e.g. Category 1 stops.

Time bypass activates the safety outputs for a maximum predefined time when the safety inputs are closed. Inching is an example of application.

Time reset activates the safety outputs for a maximum predefined time when the safety inputs are opened. Pre-reset is an example of application.

An accuracy of  $\pm 1\%$  allows a very precise time to be set in order to increase safety and minimize unnecessary downtime.



#### Multi-reset

The multi-reset function enables reset of up to 10 Sentry safety relays using just one reset light-button. This simplifies connection, minimizes cabling and unnecessary downtime. The multi-reset function is available for all +24 VDC Sentry models offering manual reset.

#### Light-button function

The light-button function is used for the multi-reset function, but can also be used for a standard reset button. The function of the LED in the light-button is the following:

- on** - at least one input is not accepted
- flashing** - all inputs are accepted, reset possible
- off** - all inputs accepted, reset performed, outputs active

Note: if an input is accepted it means that the door is closed, the light curtain is not interrupted, etc.



#### Configurable models with display

The models with display are configurable and the user can choose between preset configurations and a custom configuration that can be protected by password.

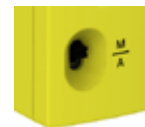
#### Faster troubleshooting with display

The display minimizes troubleshooting by giving extensive information about internal faults, I/O faults, system faults, function faults and a log of the last 10 errors.



#### Switch for selection of the reset function

All models can be used in automatic reset and some models allow to choose manual reset, either by switch or by configuration, which simplifies connection. In order to prevent mistakes, it is not possible to change reset function during operation by just flipping the switch.



#### Powerful outputs

The outputs have a switching capacity of up to 6A DC-13. This allows Sentry to drive larger contactors and saves the use of an intermediary contactor.

#### Delayed outputs

Some Sentry models have delayed outputs in order to e.g. give a machine time to apply breaking force before power is disconnected.

For models with 2 NO + 2 NO outputs, it is only the second pair of NO outputs that is delayed.

For models with 3 NO + 1 NC, all outputs are delayed.

#### Single function or universal models

Sentry **SSR** models are single function safety relays designed for a specific application such as 1 and 2 channel devices, OSSD devices or two-hand devices.

Sentry **USR** models are universal safety relays. They are capable of handling most types of applications and safety devices, i.e. 1 and 2 channel devices, OSSD-devices, two-hand devices and contact mats/bumpers/edges. This means that only one type of relay is necessary as a spare, which reduces stock and saves warehouse space.

# Ordering information

## Sentry



2TLC172049V0201

BSR10



2TLC172064V0201

SSR32



2TLC172079V0201

USR10



2TLC000019F0201

S30A



2TLC000020F0201

S30B

### Ordering details

| Expansion                              | Safety devices   | Test/Reset  | Safety relay outputs  | Timer function                      | Feature | Power supply | Type                | Order code      |
|--|--|---|---|-------------------------------------|---------|--------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| Expansion of safety controller outputs | 1 channel<br>2 channels with equivalent contacts<br>2 channels with antivalent contacts<br>OSSD outputs / PNP outputs<br>Contact mats, bumpers and safety edges <sup>c)</sup><br>Two-hand devices<br>Manual reset (all models have auto reset)<br>Start/Test | 3 NO + 1 NC<br>4 NO<br>2 NO + 2 delayed/delayable NO<br>4 NO + 1 NC | Off-delay 0.5 s<br>Off-delay 1.5 s<br>Advanced timer functions 0 - 999 s <sup>d)</sup><br>Configurable with display | 85-265 VAC / 120-375 VDC<br>+24 VDC |         |              |                     |                 |
| a)                                     | • b)   | • •   |   |                                     |         | •            | BSR10               | 2TLA010040R0000 |
| a)                                     | • b)   | • •   |   |                                     |         | •            | BSR11               | 2TLA010040R0200 |
| a)                                     |  |   |   | •                                   |         | •            | BSR23 <sup>e)</sup> | 2TLA010041R0600 |
| •                                      | • • •  | • •   |   |                                     |         | •            | SSR10               | 2TLA010050R0000 |
| •                                      | •  | • •   |   |                                     |         | •            | SSR10M              | 2TLA010050R0100 |
|  |  | • •   |   |                                     |         | •            | SSR20               | 2TLA010051R0000 |
|  |  | • •   |   |                                     |         | •            | SSR20M              | 2TLA010051R0100 |
|  | • • •  | • •   |   | •                                   | •       | •            | SSR32               | 2TLA010052R0400 |
|  | • • •  | • •   |   | •                                   | •       | •            | SSR42               | 2TLA010053R0400 |
| •                                      | • • •  | • •   |   |                                     | • • • • | •            | TSR10               | 2TLA010060R0000 |
| •                                      | • • •  | • •   |   |                                     | • •     | •            | TSR20               | 2TLA010061R0000 |
| •                                      | •  | • •   |   |                                     | • •     | •            | TSR20M              | 2TLA010061R0100 |
|  | • • • • • •  | • •   |   | • • • •                             | • • • • | •            | USR10               | 2TLA010070R0000 |
|  | • • • • • •  | • •   |   | • • • •                             | • • • • | •            | USR22               | 2TLA010070R0400 |

- a) These models can also be used for expansion of Pluto safe transistor outputs (-24 VDC)
- b) No monitoring of two-channel fault, i.e. max Category 3 without fault exclusion.
- c) The safety relay detects a short-circuit, not a change in resistance.
- d) Off-delay, On-delay, Time bypass or Time reset.
- e) BSR23 must be monitored by another device in order to reach higher than Category 1/PL c according to EN ISO 13849-1, for example a safety relay, a safety PLC or an Orion light guard (EDM function).


### Accessories

| Description   | Type | Order code      |
|---|------|-----------------|
| Terminal block for Sentry safety relays. One piece.           | S30A | 2TLA010099R0000 |
| Coding kit for terminal blocks. One kit for one Sentry relay. | S30B | 2TLA010099R0100 |

## Technical data

### Sentry

#### Technical data

|   |   |  |   |  |
|---|---|--|---|--|
| Approvals                                     |    |  |   |  |
| Conformity                                    | <b>CE</b><br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>2014/30/EU - EMC<br>2011/65/EU - RoHS<br>EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13849-1:2015, EN 62061:2005+A2:2015, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009,<br>EN 60664-1:2007, EN 61000-6-2:2005, EN 61000-6-4:2007, EN 61508:2010 |  |   |  |
| Functional safety data                        | BSR10   | BSR11, BSR23   | SSR10, SSR10M, SSR20,<br>SSR20M, TSR10, TSR20,<br>TSR20M, USR10 | SSR32, SSR42, USR22  |
| EN/IEC 61508:2010                             | SIL3,<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 3.0 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  | SIL3,<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 4.1 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>         | SIL3,<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 4.9 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>              | SIL3,<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 9.3 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>         |
| EN/IEC 62061:2005+A1:2013                     | SILCL3,<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 3.1 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  | SILCL3,<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 4.1 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>       | SILCL3,<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 4.9 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>            | SILCL3,<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 3.9 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>       |
| EN ISO 13849-1:2008                           | PL e, Cat. 4,<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 3.1 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  | PL e, Cat. 4,<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 4.1 x 10 <sup>-9</sup> | PL e, Cat. 4,<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 4.9 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>      | PL e, Cat. 4,<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 3.9 x 10 <sup>-9</sup> |
|   | Note! The relays must be cycled at least once a year.   |  |   |  |
| Electrical data                               |   |  |   |  |
| Operating voltage                             | +24 VDC (19.2-27.6 VDC) PELV / SELV<br>Mains models: 85-265 VAC (50 / 60 Hz) or 120-375 VDC   |  |   |  |
| Response time at deactivation                 | 20 ms   |  |   |  |
| Maximum switching capacity                    |   |  |   |  |
| DC13, DC1                                     | Up to 6 A (except relays with 2 NO + 2 NO outputs that switch 3 A)  |  |   |  |
| AC15, AC1                                     | Up to 5 A (except relays with 2 NO + 2 NO outputs that switch 3 A)  |  |   |  |
| Mechanical data                               |   |  |   |  |
| Operating temperature                         | BSR10, BSR11, BSR23<br>-10 °C to 55 °C<br>SSR10M, SSR20M, TSR20M<br>-20 °C to 55 °C<br>SSR10, SSR20, SSR32, SSR42, TSR10, TSR20, USR10, USR22<br>-20 °C to 65 °C  |  |   |  |
| Humidity range                                | 25% ... 90%   |  |   |  |
| Protection class                              | IP20 (enclosure/electrical cabinet must have at least an IP54)  |  |   |  |
| Mounting                                      | 35 mm DIN rail (DIN 50022)  |  |   |  |
| Minimum space between relays in the enclosure | 0 mm (except for BSR23 which needs 5 mm distance)   |  |   |  |

#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual:

Sentry [2TLC010002M0201](#)

#### Connection diagrams

For Sentry connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>

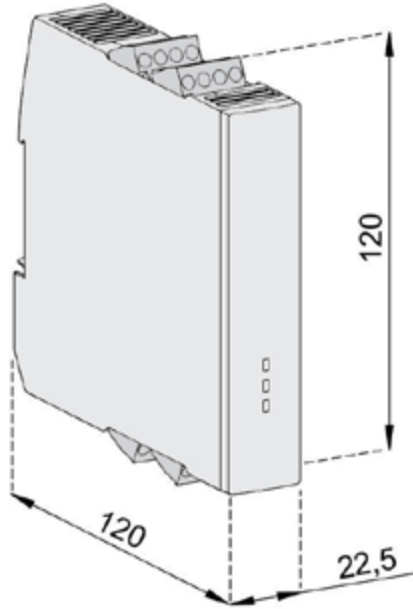


---

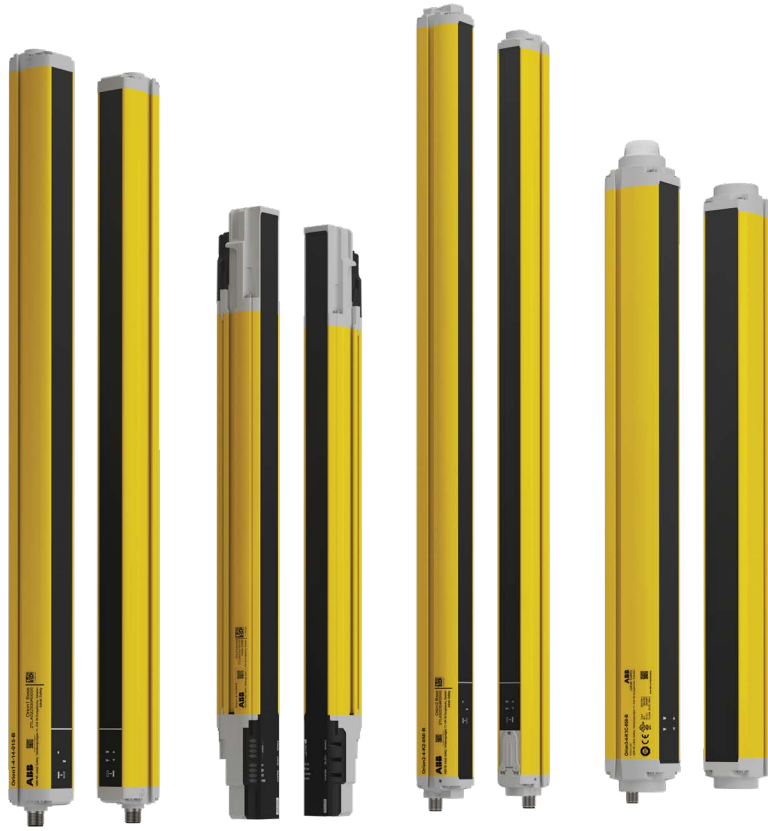
## Dimension drawing

Sentry

### Dimension drawing



All dimensions in mm



---

# Optical safety devices

- 3-2 Introduction and overview
- 3-8 Safety light curtain - Orion1 Base
- 3-16 Safety light curtain - Orion1 Extended
- 3-24 Safety light grid - Orion2 Base
- 3-32 Safety light grid - Orion2 Extended
- 3-40 Safety light grid - Orion3 Base
- 3-48 Safety light grid - Orion3 Extended

# Introduction and overview

## Selection guide

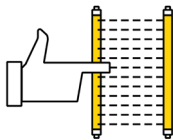
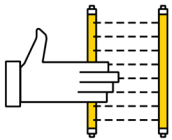
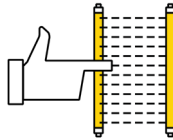
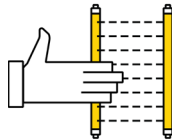
Light curtains and light grids that cover most types of applications.



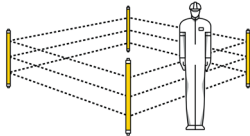
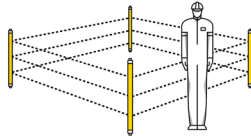
### Orion1

**Function** Light curtain, Transmitter + Receiver, Slim profile

**Image**



| Type                          | Orion1 Base   |   | Orion1 Extended   |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|---|---|
| <b>Type of detection</b>      |  |  |                                 |  |
|                               | Finger  | Hand  | Finger  | Hand  |
| <b>Resolution</b>             | 14 mm   | 30 mm   | 14 mm   | 30 mm   |
| <b>Protected height</b>       | 15-180 cm   | 15-180 cm   | 30-180 cm   | 30-180 cm   |
| <b>Applications</b>           | Manually serviced machines with short safety distances.                             |   | Manually serviced machines with short safety distances. With advanced features like muting, blanking and cascading. |   |
| <b>Functions</b>              |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Range</b>                  | 6 m   | 19 m  | 7 m   | 20 m  |
| <b>Auto/Manual reset</b>      | •   | •   | •   | •   |
| <b>EDM</b>                    | •   | •   | •   | •   |
| <b>Muting</b>                 |   |   | •   | •   |
| <b>Override</b>               |   |   | •   | •   |
| <b>Integrated muting lamp</b> |   |   |   |   |
| <b>Blanking</b>               |   |   | •   | •   |
| <b>No dead zone</b>           |   |   | •   | •   |
| <b>Coding</b>                 |   |   | •   | •   |
| <b>Cascading</b>              |   |   | •   | •   |

|                               | Orion2  |  | Orion3  |   |
|-------------------------------|---|--|---|---|
| <b>Function</b>               | Light grid, Transmitter + Receiver, Slim profile                                    |  | Light grid, Active + Passive units, Sturdy profile                                    |   |
| <b>Image</b>                  |   |  |   |   |
| <b>Type</b>                   | <b>Orion2 Base</b>  | <b>Orion2 Extended</b>                             | <b>Orion3 Base</b>  | <b>Orion3 Extended</b>                                  |
| <b>Type of detection</b>      |  |  |  |   |
|                               |   | Body   |   | Body  |
| <b>Resolution</b>             | 2, 3 or 4 beams   |  |   |   |
| <b>Protected height</b>       | 50-120 cm   |  |   |   |
| <b>Applications</b>           | Perimeter guarding over long distances  | Perimeter guarding over long distances with muting | Perimeter guarding with one-sided connection  | Perimeter guarding with one-sided connection and muting |
| <b>Functions</b>              |   |  |   |   |
| <b>Range</b>                  | 50 m  | 50 m   | Up to 8 m   | Up to 8 m   |
| <b>Auto/Manual reset</b>      | •   | •  | •   | •   |
| <b>EDM</b>                    | •   | •  | •   | •   |
| <b>Muting</b>                 |   | •  |   | •   |
| <b>Override</b>               |   | •  |   | •   |
| <b>Integrated muting lamp</b> |   | •  |   | •   |
| <b>Blanking</b>               |   |  |   |   |
| <b>No dead zone</b>           |   |  |   |   |
| <b>Coding</b>                 |   |  |   |   |
| <b>Cascading</b>              |   |  |   |   |

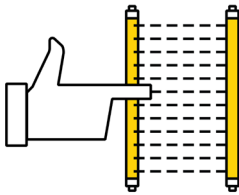
## Introduction and overview

### Selection orientation

Choose the right resolution for your application

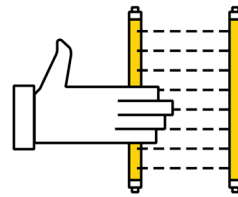
#### Finger detection

Light curtains with 14 mm resolution are intended for finger detection when the light guard needs to be very close to the machine in order to give the operator a good view and easy accessibility to the machine.



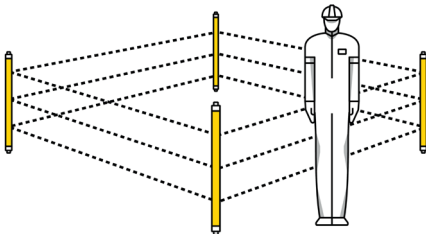
#### Hand detection

Light curtains with 30 mm resolution are intended for hand detection and area protection and is often a good compromise between cost and accessibility to the machine. They offer a better sensing range than finger detection light curtains, but require a slightly greater safety distance.



#### Body detection

Light grids have a resolution adapted for detection of the whole body and are intended for perimeter guarding where there is a requirement for high accessibility. They offer a very good sensing range, but require a much greater safety distance than light guards for finger and hand detection.



---

## Introduction and overview

### Standards

#### **Resolution and safety distance**

The optical safety device must be installed so that no-one can reach the hazardous area without first passing through the detection zone of the light guard. The distance from the hazardous area to the detection zone of the optical safety device must be large enough in order for the machine to have time to stop before someone can reach the hazardous area. This distance is called the safety distance, and it shall be calculated using the formula from EN ISO 13855.

The safety distance is influenced by the distance between each beam in the light guard. The closer the beams are together, the smaller the safety distance can be, which is why light curtains for finger detection can be placed much closer to the hazardous area than light grids for body detection.

## Safety distance according to EN ISO 13855

The distance 'S' is the minimum distance between a light curtain and a hazardous area. This is calculated with the formula from EN ISO 13855 - Safety of machinery - Positioning of safeguards with respect to the approach speeds of parts of the human body.

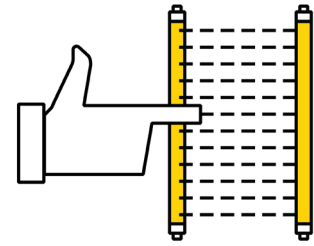
$$S = (K \times T) + C$$

S = minimum distance in mm

K = approach speed (of hand or body) in mm/s

T = stopping time of the machine (including reaction time of safety devices) in seconds

C = additional distance in mm based upon the body's intrusion towards the hazardous area before the safety device has been actuated.



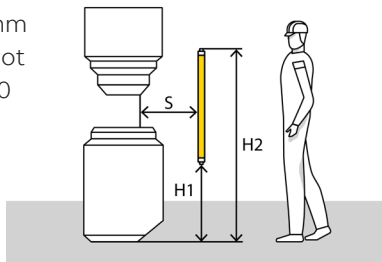
Resolution for finger ( $\leq 14$  mm) gives  $C = 0$

NB If it is possible to reach the hazard zone by reaching over the light beam, an adjustment is made to the formula. In table 1 in EN ISO 13855 an alternative safety distance addition ( $C_{ro}$ ) is given to the formula  $S = (K \times T) + C$ . The greatest value out of C and  $C_{ro}$  is to be used to prevent reaching the hazard zone by reaching over the light curtain/grid.

## Minimum distances for light curtains installed vertically and horizontally according to EN ISO 13855

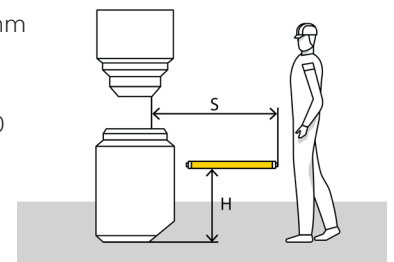
S = minimum distance in mm

H1 = the lower beam may not be situated higher than 300 mm above the ground  
H2 = the upper beam may not be situated lower than 900 mm above the ground



S = minimum distance in mm

H = the light curtain detection zone must be positioned between 0 and 1000 mm above the floor



**For  $S \leq 500$  mm the minimum distance for vertical installation is calculated with the following formula:**

$$S = (2000 \times T) + 8 \times (d-14)$$

where d is the light curtain's resolution in mm.

K = 2000 mm/s is used to represent the speed of the hand. The expression  $(8 \times (d-14))$  may never be less than 0. Minimum distance S may never be less than 100 mm.

**If the minimum distance according to the formula above gets larger than 500 mm one can instead use:**

$$S = (1600 \times T) + 8 \times (d-14)$$

K = 1600 mm/s is used to represent the speed of the body. Minimum distance according to this formula is 500 mm.

**The minimum distance for horizontal installation is calculated with the following formula:**

$$S = (1600 \times T) + (1200 - 0.4 \times H)$$

where H is the height of the detection zone above the reference plane, e.g. the ground

$(1200 - 0.4 \times H)$  may not be less than 850 mm. Depending on the resolution, d, that the light curtain has, there is a minimum height where the detection zone may be placed. This is calculated with:

$$H = 15 \times (d - 50).$$

H cannot be less than 0. With a resolution  $d = 14$  or 30 mm one can therefore install the light curtain from  $H = 0$  and up. The higher it is situated, the shorter the minimum distance gets. The highest permissible height H of the detection zone is 1000 mm.

When you use a horizontal light curtain as perimeter protection, the depth of the light curtain shall be at least 750 mm to prevent people from inadvertently stepping over it. The estimated minimum distance is measured from the machine's hazardous section to the outermost beam of the horizontal light curtain (seen from the machine).



### Minimum distance for light beams according to EN ISO 13855

For light beams the minimum distance is calculated from the following:

$$S = (1600 \times T) + 850 \text{ mm}$$

**NOTE!** The additional distance will in most cases be more than 850 mm due to the possibility to reach over a light beam. ( $C_{ro}$ )

The formula applies to light guards with 2, 3 or 4 beams. It is the risk assessment that decides the number of beams that are to be chosen. The following possibilities must be considered.

- to crawl under the lowest beam;
- to reach over the top beam;
- to reach in between two beams;
- that the body passes in between two beams.

To fulfill the requirements the beams shall be installed at the following heights:

| Number of beams | Height over the reference plane, e.g. ground |
|-----------------|--|
| 4               | 300, 600, 900, 1200                          |
| 3               | 300, 700, 1100                               |
| 2               | 400, 900                                     |

### Minimum distance for single beams according to EN ISO 13855

A single beam as only protection is normally not suitable to prevent whole body access. Single beams are mostly used in combination with other safety devices or fixed guards.

The risk assessment should determine if a single beam is a suitable protection for the hazard in question.

The safety distance is calculated using:

$$S = (1600 \times T) + 1200 \text{ mm}$$

A height of 750 mm from the reference plane has been found suitable to prevent inadvertent access to the danger zone.

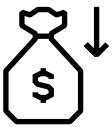
# Safety light curtain

## Orion1 Base

Orion1 Base is an easy to use light curtain with compact dimensions and two resolutions for detection of fingers and hands.

Light curtains are usually used closed to the hazardous zone when repeated access to the machine is necessary, for example manually serviced machines.

Light curtains can also be used to limit work zones inside the hazardous area and be mounted horizontally for area protection.



Cost effective solution

### No more functions than necessary

Orion1 Base comes with a minimum of advanced functionalities to save cost.

### Minimized cabling

A local reset button can be connected directly to the light curtain. In this way there is no need for a cable between the reset button and the electrical cabinet or for an extra control module.

### External device monitoring

Each light curtain can monitor the actuators without any extra control module (EDM function).



Continuous operation

### Visible alignment level

Since the alignment level is displayed, the alignment can be improved before the occurrence of an unwanted stop.

### Extensive error indication

Extensive error indication reduces troubleshooting time.

### Protection against harsh environment

Protective tubes and lens shields protect the devices in harsh environments.



Easy to install

### Easy to align

Alignment help and a wide angle within the limits of a Type 4 device facilitate alignment. Rotation brackets also simplify alignment.

### Easy to connect

M12 connectors speed up cabling.

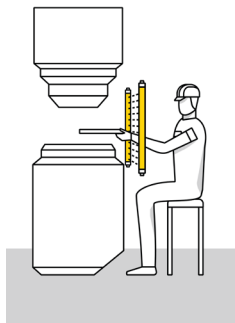
## Applications and features

### Orion1 Base

#### Applications

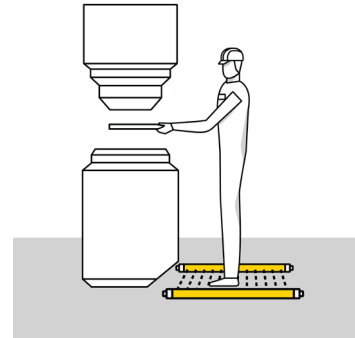
##### Vertical mounting

When using standard vertical mounting the light guard can be placed close to the hazard zone. This is suitable for applications where repeated access to the machine is necessary, e.g. manually serviced machines.



##### Horizontal mounting

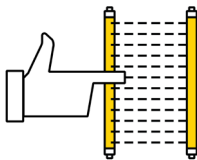
Horizontal mounting is mainly used for area protection and limitation of work zones.



#### Features

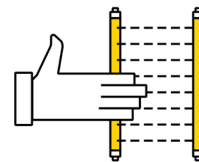
##### Finger detection

A 14 mm resolution is intended for finger detection when the light guard needs to be very close to the machine in order to give the operator a good view and easy accessibility to the machine. A 14 mm resolution enables a sensing range of 6 m.



##### Hand detection

A 30 mm resolution is intended for hand detection and area protection and is a good compromise between cost and accessibility to the machine. A 30 mm resolution enables a sensing range of 19 m.



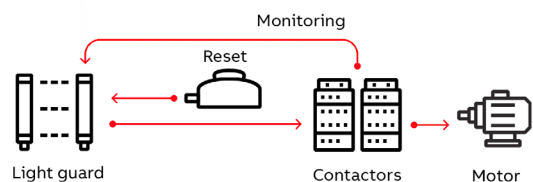
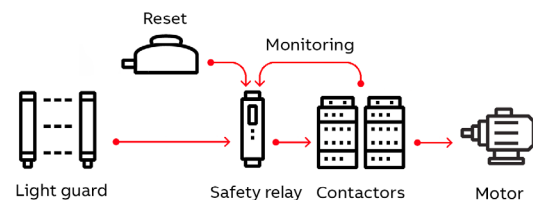
##### Local reset

A local reset button is connected directly to the light guard instead of to the safety control module in the electrical cabinet. This saves safety relays/PLC inputs and minimizes cabling to the electrical cabinet. Clever accessories makes the connection easier.



##### EDM

External Device Monitoring is a feature allowing the light guard to supervise the actuators in simpler applications, eliminating the need for a safety relay or programmable safety controller.



## Safety light curtain

### Orion1 Base



2TLC12787R0201

Orion1 Base

#### Ordering Details

| Detection (Resolution mm) | Protected height mm | Type (Transmitter + receiver) | Order code        |                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| Finger (14)               | 150                 | Orion1-4-14-015-B             | 2TLA022300R0000   |                 |
|                           | 300                 | Orion1-4-14-030-B             | 2TLA022300R0100   |                 |
|                           | 450                 | Orion1-4-14-045-B             | 2TLA022300R0200   |                 |
|                           | 600                 | Orion1-4-14-060-B             | 2TLA022300R0300   |                 |
|                           | 750                 | Orion1-4-14-075-B             | 2TLA022300R0400   |                 |
|                           | 900                 | Orion1-4-14-090-B             | 2TLA022300R0500   |                 |
|                           | 1050                | Orion1-4-14-105-B             | 2TLA022300R0600   |                 |
|                           | 1200                | Orion1-4-14-120-B             | 2TLA022300R0700   |                 |
|                           | 1350                | Orion1-4-14-135-B             | 2TLA022300R0800   |                 |
|                           | 1500                | Orion1-4-14-150-B             | 2TLA022300R0900   |                 |
|                           | 1650                | Orion1-4-14-165-B             | 2TLA022300R1000   |                 |
|                           | 1800                | Orion1-4-14-180-B             | 2TLA022300R1100   |                 |
|                           | Hand (30)           | 150                           | Orion1-4-30-015-B | 2TLA022302R0000 |
|                           |                     | 300                           | Orion1-4-30-030-B | 2TLA022302R0100 |
| 450                       |                     | Orion1-4-30-045-B             | 2TLA022302R0200   |                 |
| 600                       |                     | Orion1-4-30-060-B             | 2TLA022302R0300   |                 |
| 750                       |                     | Orion1-4-30-075-B             | 2TLA022302R0400   |                 |
| 900                       |                     | Orion1-4-30-090-B             | 2TLA022302R0500   |                 |
| 1050                      |                     | Orion1-4-30-105-B             | 2TLA022302R0600   |                 |
| 1200                      |                     | Orion1-4-30-120-B             | 2TLA022302R0700   |                 |
| 1350                      |                     | Orion1-4-30-135-B             | 2TLA022302R0800   |                 |
| 1500                      |                     | Orion1-4-30-150-B             | 2TLA022302R0900   |                 |
| 1650                      |                     | Orion1-4-30-165-B             | 2TLA022302R1000   |                 |
| 1800                      |                     | Orion1-4-30-180-B             | 2TLA022302R1100   |                 |

#### Spare parts (included when ordering Orion)

| Description                             | Type        | Order code      |
|---|-------------|-----------------|
| 4 standard brackets for Orion1 & Orion2 | JSM Orion01 | 2TLA022310R0000 |



2TLC12787R0201

JSM Orion01

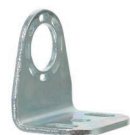
## Accessories

### Orion1 Base



2TLC172816F0201

Orion Laser pointer



2TLC172839F0201

JSM Orion03



2TLC172867F0201

Smile 11 RB



2TLC172012V0201

M12-3R



2TLC172477F0201

Tina 10C

### Accessories

#### Mounting accessories

| Description  | Type              | Order code      |
|--|-------------------|-----------------|
| Orion Test Piece 14 mm   | Orion TP-14       | 2TLA022310R5200 |
| Orion Test Piece 30 mm   | Orion TP-30       | 2TLA022310R5300 |
| Orion Laser pointer  | Orion Laser       | 2TLA022310R5000 |
| JSM M5B special T-nut M5 to be used with M5x12 screw for mounting Orion on Quick-Guard   | T-nut JSM M5B     | 2TLA040035R0400 |
| 4 rotation brackets for Orion1 Base  | JSM Orion03       | 2TLA022310R0100 |
| Kit for mounting of Orion1 & Orion2 in Stand (4 pieces for lengths shorter than 1200 mm) | JSM Orion06       | 2TLA022310R0400 |
| Kit for mounting of Orion1 & Orion2 in Stand (6 pieces for lengths of 1200 mm or more)   | JSM Orion07       | 2TLA022310R0500 |
| Kit for mounting of Orion1 Mirror in Stand   | JSM Orion11       | 2TLA022310R0900 |
| Orion Plate kit for adjustment of protective stand                                       | Orion Stand Plate | 2TLA022312R5000 |
| Deviating mirror to be mounted in Orion Stand with one kit JSM Orion11                   | Orion1 Mirror*    |                 |
| Protective stand   | Orion Stand*      |                 |
| Protective tube  | Orion WET*        |                 |
| Lens shield  | Orion Shield*     |                 |

#### Connection accessories

|   |             |                 |
|---|-------------|-----------------|
| Smile reset button with NO contact  | Smile 11 RA | 2TLA030053R0000 |
| Smile reset button with NO contact for Pluto  | Smile 11 RB | 2TLA030053R0100 |
| Smile reset button with NO contact for Orion1 Base  | Smile 11RO1 | 2TLA022316R3000 |
| Y-connector for series connection of DYNlink devices with M12-5 connectors, e.g. Eden   | M12-3A      | 2TLA020055R0000 |
| Y-connector for connection of a Smile reset button to Orion   | M12-3R      | 2TLA022316R0000 |
| Y-connector for easy connection of a transmitter  | M12-3D      | 2TLA020055R0300 |
| Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 for DYNlink.  | Tina 10A v2 | 2TLA020054R1210 |
| Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink with possibility to connect a local reset button. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 for DYNlink and reset. | Tina 10B v2 | 2TLA020054R1310 |
| Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink with possibility to power the transmitter. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 for DYNlink and transmitter.  | Tina 10C v2 | 2TLA020054R1610 |

\*These accessories are available in different sizes.

For more information see:

Orion1 Mirror [2TLC172058L0201](#), Orion Stand [2TLC172059L0201](#), Orion WET [2TLC172061L0201](#), Orion Shield [2TLC172071L0201](#)

For more information about the connection accessories, please see:

Orion connection accessories [2TLC172101L0201](#)

### How to choose correct reset button

| Local or global reset                               | Adaption to DYNlink* | Safety control module                                 | Type          | Useful connection accessories  |
|---|----------------------|---|---------------|--|
| Local reset button connected to the light guard     | Yes                  | Vital or Pluto  | Smile 11RO1   | Tina 10B: OSSD to DYNlink + local reset button<br>M12-3A: Serial connection of DYNlink |
| (Orion in manual reset mode)                        | No                   | Any safety control module compatible with light guard | Smile 11RO1   | M12-3R: Easy connection of a local reset button  |
| Global reset button connected to the control module | Yes                  | Vital   | Smile 11 RA   | Tina 10A: OSSD to DYNlink<br>Tina 10C: OSSD to DYNlink + supply to transmitter         |
| (Orion in automatic reset mode)                     |                      | Pluto   | Smile 11 RB   | Tina 10A: OSSD to DYNlink<br>Tina 10C: OSSD to DYNlink + supply to transmitter         |
|   | No                   | Any safety control module compatible with light guard | Smile 11 RA** | -  |

\* The ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink solution offers the following advantages:

- Serial connection of safety devices while maintaining PLe/cat. 4, up to 25 Tina 10 per Vital and up to 5 Tina 10 per Pluto input.
- Only one safety input of the Pluto instead of two with the standard OSSD outputs.

\*\* Smile 11 RA has one NO contact, which is the most common for reset buttons. Please check what is requested for the chosen safety control module.

# Cables and connectors

## Orion1 Base



M12-C61

2TLC12951F0201



M12-C61HE

2TLC010003F0201



M12-C334

2TLC12931F0201

### Cable with connectors

| Connector                 | Female/male   | Length    | Special feature                 | Type                        | Order code      |                 |
|---------------------------|---------------|-----------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| M12-5                     | Female        | 3 m       |                                 | M12-C31                     | 2TLA020056R0500 |                 |
|                           |               | 6 m       |                                 | M12-C61                     | 2TLA020056R0000 |                 |
|                           |               |           | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C61HE                   | 2TLA020056R8000 |                 |
|                           |               | 10 m      |                                 | M12-C101                    | 2TLA020056R1000 |                 |
|                           |               |           | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C101HE                  | 2TLA020056R8100 |                 |
|                           |               | 20 m      |                                 | M12-C201                    | 2TLA020056R1400 |                 |
|                           | Female + male | 0.3 m     |                                 | M12-C0312                   | 2TLA020056R5800 |                 |
|                           |               | (a)       | 0.06 m                          |                             | M12-C00612      | 2TLA020056R6300 |
|                           |               |           | 1 m                             |                             | M12-C112        | 2TLA020056R2000 |
|                           |               |           | 3 m                             |                             | M12-C312        | 2TLA020056R2100 |
|                           |               |           | 6 m                             |                             | M12-C612        | 2TLA020056R2200 |
|                           |               |           | 10 m                            |                             | M12-C1012       | 2TLA020056R2300 |
| 16 m                      |               | M12-C1612 | 2TLA020056R5400                 |                             |                 |                 |
| 20 m                      |               | M12-C2012 | 2TLA020056R2400                 |                             |                 |                 |
| Male                      | 6 m           |           | M12-C62                         | 2TLA020056R0200             |                 |                 |
|                           | (c)           | 10 m      |                                 | M12-C102                    | 2TLA020056R1200 |                 |
| M12-8                     | Female        | 6 m       |                                 | M12-C63                     | 2TLA020056R3000 |                 |
|                           |               | (d)       | 10 m                            |                             | M12-C103        | 2TLA020056R4000 |
|                           |               | 20 m      |                                 | M12-C203                    | 2TLA020056R4100 |                 |
|                           | Female + male | 0.06 m    |                                 | M12-C00634                  | 2TLA020056R6400 |                 |
|                           |               | (e)       | 1 m                             |                             | M12-C134        | 2TLA020056R5000 |
|                           |               | 3 m       |                                 | M12-C334                    | 2TLA020056R5100 |                 |
| M12-8 male + female       | Female + male | 0.2       |                                 | M12-CTO1BA <sup>1</sup>     | 2TLA022315R3000 |                 |
| M12-8 male + female       | Female + male | 0.2       |                                 | M12-CTO1BM <sup>2</sup>     | 2TLA022315R3100 |                 |
| M12-8 female - M12-5 male | Female + male | 1         |                                 | M12-CTURAX-01B <sup>3</sup> | 2TLA022315R3300 |                 |

Letters (a, b, c, d, e, t<sub>1</sub>, t<sub>2</sub>, t<sub>3</sub>) refer to cables in connection examples, e.g:  
 2TLC010002T0001 Connection diagram Orion cables Tina10 M12-3A M12-3D  
 2TLC010003T0001 Connection diagram Orion cables Smile11R Urax M12-3R

- M12-CTO1BA (t<sub>1</sub>) can be used for:
  - connection of Orion1 Base to Tina 10A/C
  - replacement of Focus II in automatic reset with Orion in automatic reset. The EDM function should be deactivated in all cases.
- M12-CTO1BM (t<sub>2</sub>) can be used for:
  - connection of Orion1 Base to Tina 10B or M12-3R for use of a local reset button, for example Smile 11ROx
  - replacement of Focus II in manual reset with Orion in manual reset. The EDM function should be deactivated in all cases.
- M12-CTURAX-01B (t<sub>3</sub>) is used for:
  - the connection of Orion1 Base to URAX-D1R. The light guard is automatically configured in automatic reset and the EDM function should be deactivated.



M12-C01

2TLC2857F0201



C5 cable

2TLC010003F0201

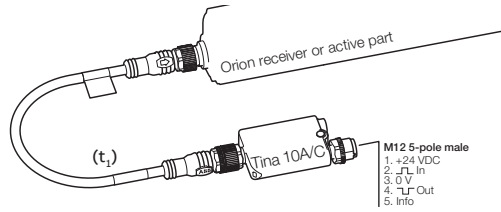
### Separate cables and connectors

| Description                                   | Type           | Order code      |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>Connectors</b>                             |                |                 |
| M12-5 pole female, straight                   | M12-C01        | 2TLA020055R1000 |
| M12-5 pole male, straight                     | M12-C02        | 2TLA020055R1100 |
| M12-8 pole female, straight                   | M12-C03        | 2TLA020055R1600 |
| M12-8 pole male, straight                     | M12-C04        | 2TLA020055R1700 |
| <b>Cable with 5 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 10 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 10 m  | 2TLA020057R0001 |
| 50 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R0005 |
| 100 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R0010 |
| 200 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R0020 |
| 500 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R0050 |
| <b>Cable with 8 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 50 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C8 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R1005 |
| 100 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R1010 |
| 200 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R1020 |
| 500 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R1050 |

## Connection examples

### Orion1 Base

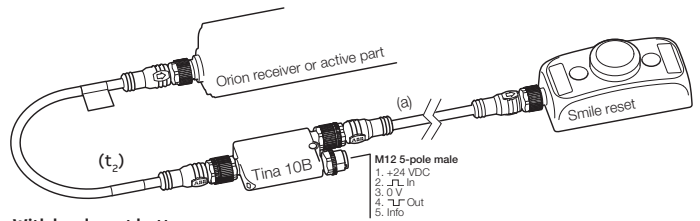
#### Orion with Tina 10A/C



Without local reset button

Connection to the ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink signal via Tina 10 A/C. To be used with Vital safety control module or Pluto programmable safety controller.

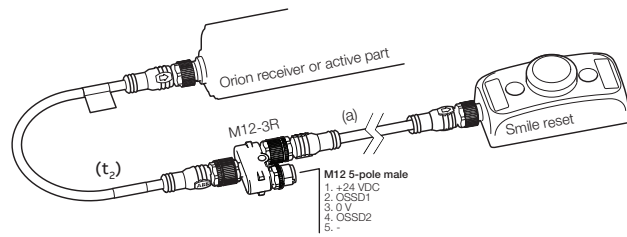
#### Reset to Orion with Tina 10B



With local reset button

Connection to the ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink signal via Tina 10B. To be used with Vital safety control module or Pluto programmable safety controller.

#### Reset to Orion with M12-3R



Connection of a local reset button via M12-3R.


#### Connection diagrams

For Orion1 Base connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>

## Technical data

### Orion1 Base

#### Technical data

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Approvals                       |                                       |
| Conformity                      | <b>CE</b><br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>2004/108/EC - EMC<br>EN ISO 13849-1:2008, EN 62061:2005/A1:2013, EN 61496-1:2013, EN 61496-2, EN 61508-1:2010, EN 61508-2:2010, EN 61508-3:2010, EN 61508-4:2010 |
| Functional safety data          |   |
| EN 61508:2010                   | SIL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.64 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| EN 62061:2005+A1:2013           | SILCL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.64 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| EN ISO 13849-1:2008             | PL e, Cat. 4, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.64 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| Electrical data                 |   |
| Power supply                    | +24 VDC ± 20%   |
| Power consumption, transmitter  | 1.5 W max   |
| Power consumption, receiver     | 4 W max (without load)  |
| Outputs                         | 2 PNP   |
| Short-circuit protection        | 1.4 A max   |
| Output current                  | 0.5 A max / output  |
| Output voltage – ON             | V <sub>DD</sub> -1 V min  |
| Output voltage – OFF            | 0.2 V max   |
| Capacitive load                 | 2.2 µF at +24 VDC max   |
| Cable length (for power supply) | 50 m max  |
| Connectors                      | M12-4 pole male on transmitter (compatible with M12-5 pole female)<br>M12-8 pole male on receiver   |
| Optical data                    |   |
| Light emission (λ)              | Infrared, LED (950 nm)  |
| Resolution                      | 14 or 30 mm   |
| Operating distance              | 0.2...19 m for 30 mm<br>0.2...6 m for 14 mm   |
| Ambient light rejection         | According to IEC-61496-2:2013   |
| Mechanical data                 |   |
| Operating temperature           | 0...+ 55 °C   |
| Storage temperature             | - 25...+ 70 °C  |
| Humidity range                  | 15...95% (no condensation)  |
| Protection class                | IP65 (EN 60529:2000)  |
| Weight                          | 1.3 kg / meter for each single unit   |
| Housing material                | Painted aluminium (yellow RAL 1003)   |
| Front glass material            | PMMA  |
| Cap material                    | PC MAKROLON   |

#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, please see product manual for:  
Orion1 Base [2TLC172287M0201](#)

#### Connection diagrams

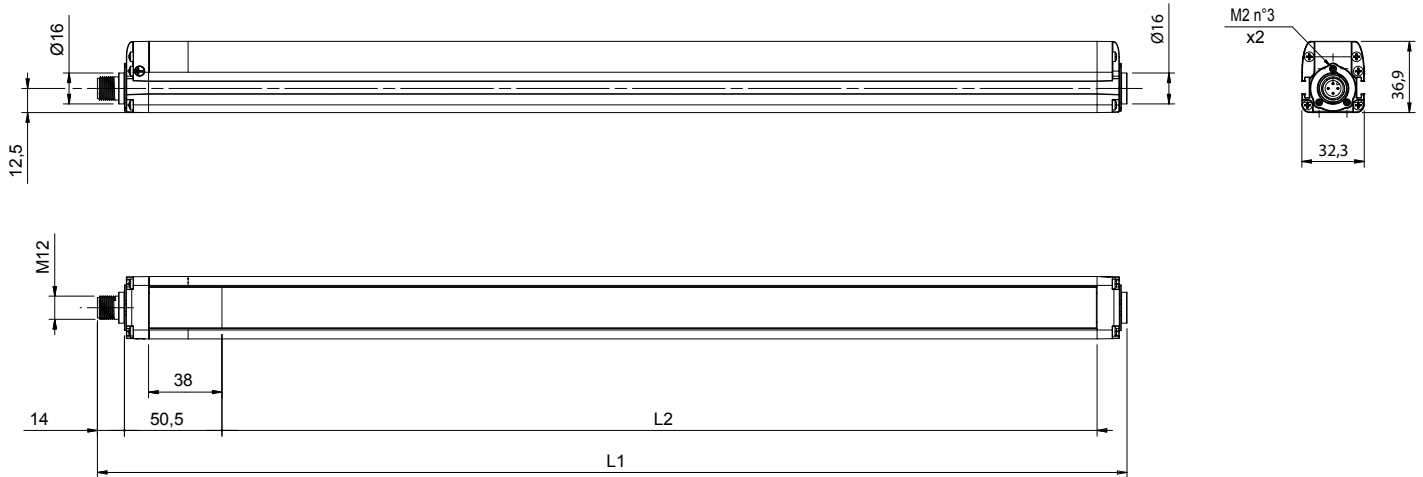
For Orion1 Base connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>



## Dimension drawings

### Orion1 Base

#### Orion1 Base



All dimensions in mm

#### Dimension

| Protected height<br>mm | L1<br>mm | L2<br>mm | Type              |
|------------------------|----------|----------|-------------------|
| 150                    | 233.3    | 153.3    | Orion1-4-xx-015-B |
| 300                    | 383.2    | 303.2    | Orion1-4-xx-045-B |
| 450                    | 533.2    | 453.3    | Orion1-4-xx-045-B |
| 600                    | 683.3    | 603.2    | Orion1-4-xx-060-B |
| 750                    | 833.2    | 753.3    | Orion1-4-xx-075-B |
| 900                    | 983.2    | 903.2    | Orion1-4-xx-090-B |
| 1050                   | 1133.2   | 1053.2   | Orion1-4-xx-105-B |
| 1200                   | 1283.2   | 1203.3   | Orion1-4-xx-120-B |
| 1350                   | 1433.2   | 1353.2   | Orion1-4-xx-135-B |
| 1500                   | 1583.3   | 1503.3   | Orion1-4-xx-150-B |
| 1650                   | 1733.3   | 1653.3   | Orion1-4-xx-165-B |
| 1800                   | 1883.3   | 1803.3   | Orion1-4-xx-180-B |

xx = Resolution

# Safety light curtain

## Orion1 Extended

Orion1 Extended is an easy to use light curtain with compact dimensions. It has two resolutions for detection of fingers and hands, and comes with advanced features like cascading, muting and blanking.

Light curtains are usually placed closed to the hazardous zone when repeated access to the machine is necessary, for example manually serviced machines.



Cost effective solution



Easy to install



Continuous operation

### Integrated muting function

Muting sensors are connected directly to the light grid, with no need for a remote muting module.

### No dead zones

The light beams cover all of the profile length, without the usual dead zones at the ends requiring extra mechanical guards.

### Easy serial connection

Cascading with the standard units: no separate slave or master units.

### Easy to align

Alignment help and a wide angle within the limits of a Type 4 device facilitate installation.

### Easy to connect

Cables with M12 connectors speeds up connection.

### Reduced downtime

Extensive error indication reduces troubleshooting time.

### Interference protection

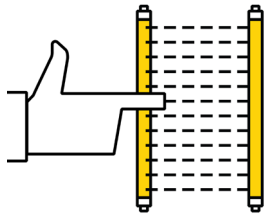
Protection against mutual interference with coding.

## Features

### Orion1 Extended

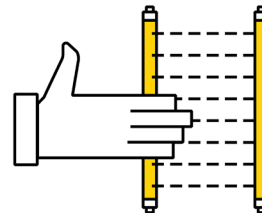
#### Finger detection

A 14 mm resolution is intended for finger detection when the light guard needs to be very close to the machine in order to give the operator a good view and easy accessibility to the machine. A 14 mm resolution enables a sensing range of 7 m.



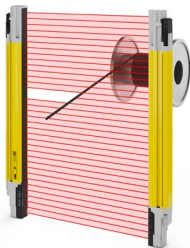
#### Hand detection

A 30 mm resolution is intended for hand detection and area protection and is a good compromise between cost and accessibility to the machine. A 30 mm resolution enables a sensing range of 20 m.



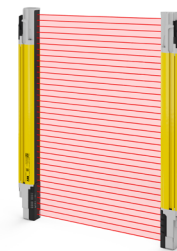
#### Blanking

The blanking function allows to define a number of beams that can be constantly interrupted without stopping the machine. In this way a fixed material or a cable is allowed in the protected field, but a hand interrupting an extra beam would stop the machine. With floating blanking, the object, for ex. the cable, can move within the protected field.



#### No dead zones

A special feature of Orion1 Extended is that the light beams cover all of the profile length, without any dead zones. This enables to place it inside openings, instead of having a larger light guard in front of an opening.



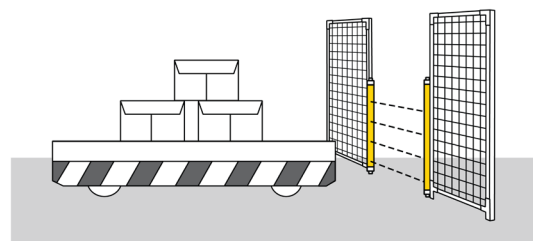
#### Cascading

All Orion1 Extended units can be connected in series (cascaded) to easily create a suitable light curtain setup with no special units needed.



#### Muting

By connecting muting sensors to the light guard, it can distinguish material from persons and allow the material to pass through an opening but not persons.



#### Local reset

A local reset button is connected directly to the light guard instead of to the safety control module in the electrical cabinet. This saves safety relays/programmable inputs and minimizes cabling to the electrical cabinet.

#### EDM

External Device Monitoring is a feature allowing the light guard to supervise the actuators in simpler applications, eliminating the need for a safety relay or programmable safety controller.

## Ordering information

### Orion1 Extended



2TLC17798F0201

**Orion1 Extended**

#### Ordering Details

| Resolution mm | Protected height mm | Type (Transmitter + receiver) | Order code      |
|---------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| Finger (14)   | 300                 | Orion1-4-14-030-E             | 2TLA022301R0100 |
|               | 450                 | Orion1-4-14-045-E             | 2TLA022301R0200 |
|               | 600                 | Orion1-4-14-060-E             | 2TLA022301R0300 |
|               | 750                 | Orion1-4-14-075-E             | 2TLA022301R0400 |
|               | 900                 | Orion1-4-14-090-E             | 2TLA022301R0500 |
|               | 1050                | Orion1-4-14-105-E             | 2TLA022301R0600 |
|               | 1200                | Orion1-4-14-120-E             | 2TLA022301R0700 |
|               | 1350                | Orion1-4-14-135-E             | 2TLA022301R0800 |
|               | 1500                | Orion1-4-14-150-E             | 2TLA022301R0900 |
|               | 1650                | Orion1-4-14-165-E             | 2TLA022301R1000 |
|               | 1800                | Orion1-4-14-180-E             | 2TLA022301R1100 |
| Hand (30)     | 300                 | Orion1-4-30-030-E             | 2TLA022303R0100 |
|               | 450                 | Orion1-4-30-045-E             | 2TLA022303R0200 |
|               | 600                 | Orion1-4-30-060-E             | 2TLA022303R0300 |
|               | 750                 | Orion1-4-30-075-E             | 2TLA022303R0400 |
|               | 900                 | Orion1-4-30-090-E             | 2TLA022303R0500 |
|               | 1050                | Orion1-4-30-105-E             | 2TLA022303R0600 |
|               | 1200                | Orion1-4-30-120-E             | 2TLA022303R0700 |
|               | 1350                | Orion1-4-30-135-E             | 2TLA022303R0800 |
|               | 1500                | Orion1-4-30-150-E             | 2TLA022303R0900 |
|               | 1650                | Orion1-4-30-165-E             | 2TLA022303R1000 |
|               | 1800                | Orion1-4-30-180-E             | 2TLA022303R1100 |



2TLC17788F0201

**JSM Orion01**

#### Spare parts (included when ordering Orion)

| Description                             | Type        | Order code      |
|---|-------------|-----------------|
| 4 standard brackets for Orion1 & Orion2 | JSM Orion01 | 2TLA022310R0000 |

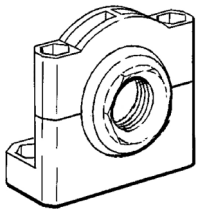
## Accessories

### Orion1 Extended



**OMC1**

2TLC172016R0201



**JSM 64**

2TLC03003EF0201



**Orion Laser pointer**

2TLC172816F0201

### Accessories

#### Connection accessories

| Description   | Type        | Order code      |
|---|-------------|-----------------|
| Connection box for two or four muting sensors               | OMC1        | 2TLA022316R2000 |
| Retroreflex photoelectric sensor                            | Mute R2     | 2TLA022044R0500 |
| Adjustable mounting bracket for M18 sensors (e.g. Mute R2). | JSM 64      | 2TLA040007R0200 |
| Reflector diameter 63 mm                                    | Reflect 1   | 2TLA022044R2000 |
| Reflector diameter 82 mm                                    | Reflect 2   | 2TLA022044R3000 |
| Smile reset button with NO contact                          | Smile 11 RA | 2TLA030053R0000 |
| Smile reset button with NO contact for Pluto                | Smile 11 RB | 2TLA030053R0100 |

#### Mounting accessories

|  |                   |                 |
|--|-------------------|-----------------|
| Orion Test Piece 14 mm   | Orion TP-14       | 2TLA022310R5200 |
| Orion Test Piece 30 mm   | Orion TP-30       | 2TLA022310R5300 |
| Orion Laser pointer  | Orion Laser       | 2TLA022310R5000 |
| JSM M5B special T-nut M5 to be used with M5x12 screw for mounting Orion on Quick-Guard   | T-nut JSM M5B     | 2TLA040035R0400 |
| Kit for mounting of Orion1 & Orion2 in Stand (4 pieces for lengths shorter than 1200 mm) | JSM Orion06       | 2TLA022310R0400 |
| Kit for mounting of Orion1 & Orion2 in Stand (6 pieces for lengths of 1200 mm or more)   | JSM Orion07       | 2TLA022310R0500 |
| Kit for mounting of Orion1 Mirror in Stand   | JSM Orion11       | 2TLA022310R0900 |
| Orion Plate kit for adjustment of protective stand                                       | Orion Stand Plate | 2TLA022312R5000 |
| Deviating mirror to be mounted in Orion Stand with one kit JSM Orion11                   | Orion1 Mirror*    |                 |
| Protective stand   | Orion Stand*      |                 |

\*These accessories are available in different sizes.

For more information see:

Orion1 Mirror [2TLC172058L0201](#)

Orion Stand [2TLC172059L0201](#)

For more information about the connection accessories, please see:

Orion connection accessories [2TLC172101L0201](#)

## Cables

### Orion1 Extended



M12-C61

2TLC172951F0201



M12-C61HE

2TLC010003F0201



M12-C2012

2TLC172959F0201

#### Cables with connectors

| Muting to be used | Necessary transmitter/receiver cable | Suitable cable between transmitter/receiver cable and el-cabinet | Length                  | Special feature                                   | Type            | Order code                      |            |                 |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|--|-------------------------|---|-----------------|---------------------------------|------------|-----------------|
| Yes               | Transmitter M12-C02PT2T              | M12-5 female single ended, to e.g. el-cabinet (b)                | 3 m                     |   | M12-C31         | 2TLA020056R0500                 |            |                 |
|                   |                                      |  | 6 m                     |   | M12-C61         | 2TLA020056R0000                 |            |                 |
|                   |                                      |  | 6 m                     | Harsh environment, halogen free                   | M12-C61HE       | 2TLA020056R8000                 |            |                 |
|                   |                                      |  | 10 m                    |   | M12-C101HE      | 2TLA020056R8100                 |            |                 |
|                   |                                      |  | 10 m                    |   | M12-C101        | 2TLA020056R1000                 |            |                 |
|                   |                                      |  | 20 m                    | M12-C201  | 2TLA020056R1400 |                                 |            |                 |
|                   | Receiver M12-C02PT62RM               | M12-5 male + female, to e.g. OMC1 (a)                            | 0.06 m                  |   | M12-C00612      | 2TLA020056R6300                 |            |                 |
|                   |                                      |  | 0.3                     |   | M12-C0312       | 2TLA020056R5800                 |            |                 |
|                   |                                      |  | 1 m                     |   | M12-C112        | 2TLA020056R2000                 |            |                 |
|                   |                                      |  | 3 m                     |   | M12-C312        | 2TLA020056R2100                 |            |                 |
|                   |                                      |  | 6 m                     |   | M12-C612        | 2TLA020056R2200                 |            |                 |
|                   |                                      |  | 10 m                    |   | M12-C1012       | 2TLA020056R2300                 |            |                 |
|                   |                                      |  | 16 m                    |   | M12-C1612       | 2TLA020056R5400                 |            |                 |
|                   |                                      |  | 20 m                    |   | M12-C2012       | 2TLA020056R2400                 |            |                 |
|                   |                                      |  | 6 m                     | M12-12 female single ended, to e.g. el-cabinet    | M12-C65         | 2TLA020056R7200                 |            |                 |
| 10 m              |                                      |  | M12-C105                |   | 2TLA020056R7300 |                                 |            |                 |
| 20 m              |                                      |  | M12-C205                |   | 2TLA020056R7500 |                                 |            |                 |
| 6 m               |                                      |  |                         |   | M12-C61         | 2TLA020056R0000                 |            |                 |
| No                |                                      |  | Transmitter M12-C02PT2T | M12-5 female single ended, to e.g. el-cabinet (b) | 6 m             | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C61HE  | 2TLA020056R8100 |
|                   |                                      |  |                         |   | 10 m            |                                 | M12-C101HE | 2TLA020056R5400 |
|                   | 10 m                                 | M12-C101   |                         |   | 2TLA020056R1000 |                                 |            |                 |
|                   | 20 m                                 | M12-C201   |                         |   | 2TLA020056R1400 |                                 |            |                 |
|                   | Receiver M12-C02PT6RB                | M12-12 female single ended, to e.g. el-cabinet                   |                         |   | 6 m             |                                 | M12-C65    | 2TLA020056R7200 |
|                   |                                      |  |                         |   | 10 m            |                                 | M12-C105   | 2TLA020056R7300 |
|                   |                                      |  | 20 m                    |   | M12-C205        | 2TLA020056R7500                 |            |                 |

#### Separate cables and connectors



M12-C01

2TLC172657F0201



C5 cable

2TLC010003F0201

| Description                                   | Type           | Order code      |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>Connectors</b>                             |                |                 |
| M12-5 pole female, straight                   | M12-C01        | 2TLA020055R1000 |
| M12-5 pole male, straight                     | M12-C02        | 2TLA020055R1100 |
| <b>Cable with 5 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 10 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 10 m  | 2TLA020057R0001 |
| 50 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R0005 |
| 100 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R0010 |
| 200 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R0020 |
| 500 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R0050 |

#### Special cables for Orion1 Extended



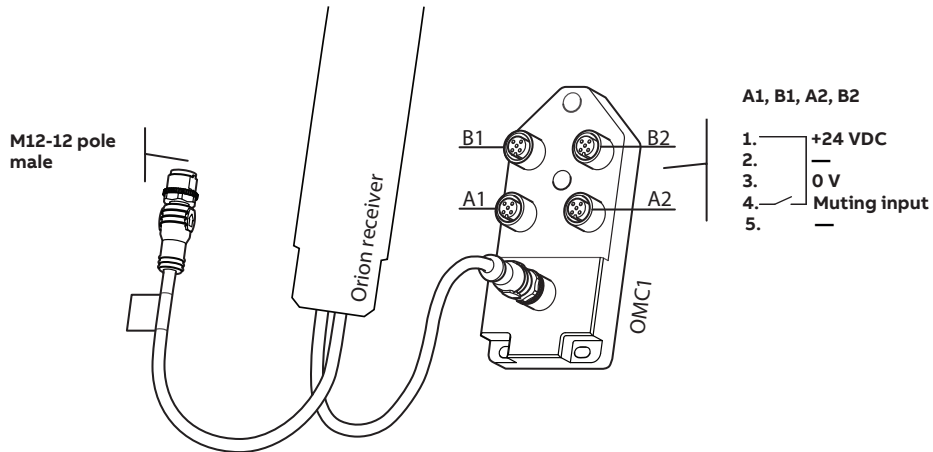
M12-C02PT2T

| Description  | Length | Type          | Order code      |
|--|--------|---------------|-----------------|
| Transmitter cable for Orion1 Extended. M12-5 male connector.   | 0.2 m  | M12-C02PT2T   | 2TLA022315R0100 |
| Receiver cable for Orion1 Extended when no muting. M12-12 male connector.  | 0.2 m  | M12-C02PT6RB  | 2TLA022315R0200 |
| Receiver cable for Orion1 Extended when muting. M12-5 male connector (for muting sensors) and M12-12 male connector. | 0.2 m  | M12-C02PT62RM | 2TLA022315R0300 |
| Cascade cable for Orion1 Extended  | 1 m    | PT-C1PT       | 2TLA022315R1000 |
| Cascade cable for Orion1 Extended  | 0.5 m  | PT-C05PT      | 2TLA022315R1100 |
| Cascade cable for Orion1 Extended  | 0.05 m | PT-C005PT     | 2TLA022315R1200 |

## Connection example

### Orion1 Extended

#### Connection of the muting sensors with M12-C02PT62RM and OMC1





NB: Cable with M12-5 male + female connectors shall be used between muting sensors and OMC1 inputs A1, B1, A2, B2.

## Technical data

### Orion1 Extended

#### Technical data

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <b>Approvals</b>                |                                       |
| <b>Conformity</b>               | <b>CE</b><br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>2004/108/EC - EMC<br>EN ISO 13849-1:2008, EN 62061:2005/A1:2013, EN 61496-1:2013, EN 61496-2, EN 61508-1:2010, EN 61508-2:2010, EN 61508-3:2010, EN 61508-4:2010 |
| <b>Functional safety data</b>   |   |
| EN 61508:2010                   | SIL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.64 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| EN 62061:2005+A1:2013           | SILCL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.64 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| EN ISO 13849-1:2008             | PL e, Cat. 4, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.64 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| <b>Electrical data</b>          |   |
| Power supply                    | +24 VDC ± 20%   |
| Power consumption, Transmitter  | 3 W max   |
| Power consumption, Receiver     | 5 W max (without load)  |
| Outputs                         | 2 PNP   |
| Short-circuit protection        | 1.4 A max   |
| Output current                  | 0.5 A max / output  |
| Output voltage – ON             | V <sub>dd</sub> -1 V min  |
| Output voltage – OFF            | 0.2 V max   |
| Capacitive load                 | 2.2 µF at +24 VDC max   |
| Current for external lamp       | 20 mA min; 200 mA max   |
| Cable length (for power supply) | 50 m max  |
| <b>Connectors</b>               | M12-4 pole male on transmitter (compatible with M12-5 pole female)<br>M12-8 pole male on receiver   |
| <b>Optical data</b>             |   |
| Light emission (λ)              | Infrared, LED (950 nm)  |
| Resolution                      | 14 or 30 mm   |
| Operating distance              | 0.2...20 m for 30 mm<br>0.2...7 m for 14 mm   |
| Ambient light rejection         | According to IEC-61496-2:2013   |
| <b>Mechanical data</b>          |   |
| Operating temperature           | 0...+ 50 °C   |
| Storage temperature             | - 25...+ 70 °C  |
| Humidity range                  | 15...95% (no condensation)  |
| Protection class                | IP65 (EN 60529:2000)  |
| Weight                          | 1.35 kg / meter for each single unit  |
| Housing material                | Painted aluminium (yellow RAL 1003)   |
| Front glass material            | PMMA  |
| Cap material                    | PBT Valox 508   |

#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for:

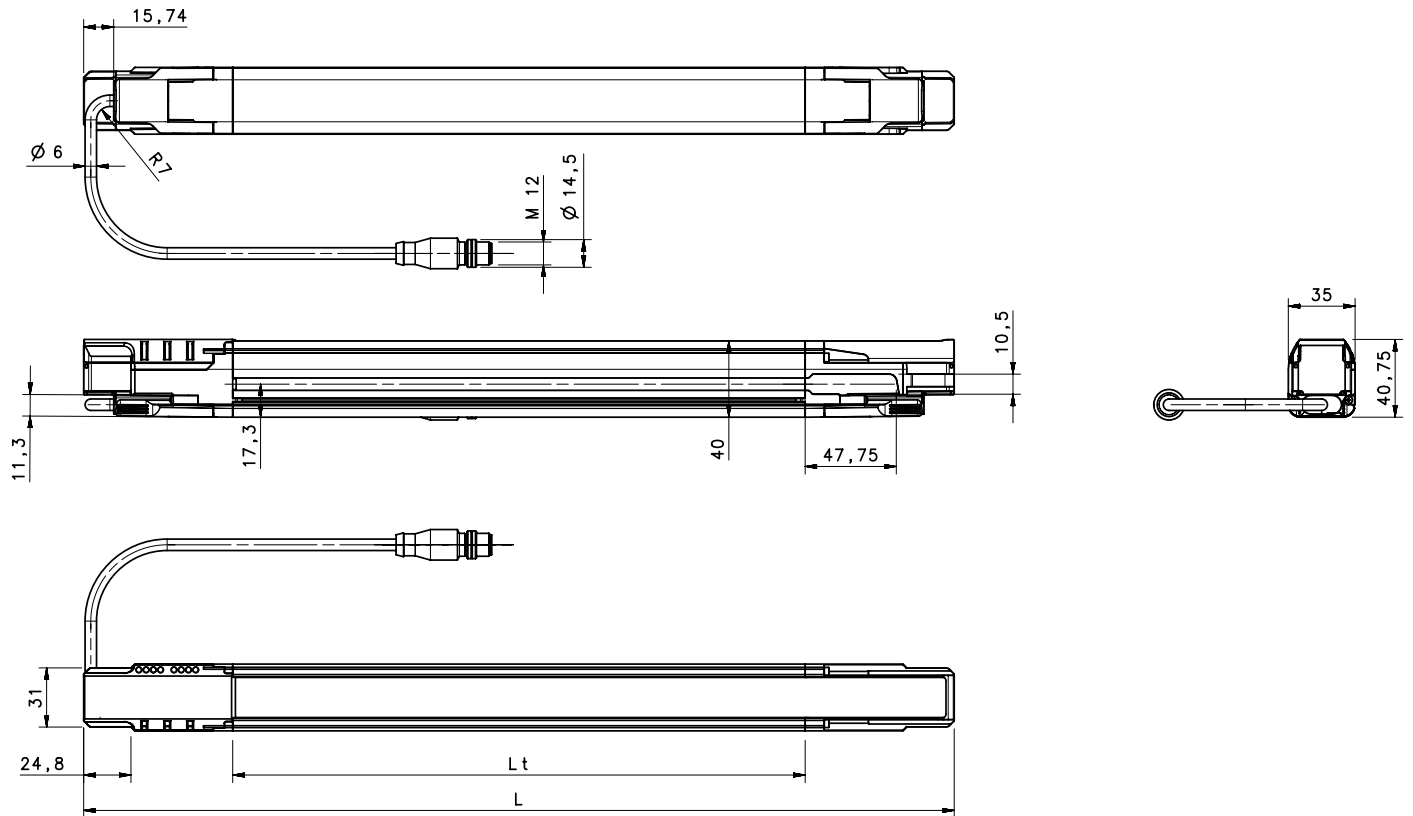
Orion1 Extended [2TLC172290M0201](#)



## Dimension drawings

### Orion1 Extended

#### Orion1 Extended



All dimensions in mm

#### Dimension

| L1<br>mm | L2<br>mm | Type              |
|----------|----------|-------------------|
| 300      | 306.3    | Orion1-4-xx-030-E |
| 450      | 456.3    | Orion1-4-xx-045-E |
| 600      | 606.3    | Orion1-4-xx-060-E |
| 750      | 756.3    | Orion1-4-xx-075-E |
| 900      | 906.3    | Orion1-4-xx-090-E |
| 1050     | 1056.3   | Orion1-4-xx-105-E |
| 1200     | 1206.3   | Orion1-4-xx-120-E |
| 1350     | 1356.3   | Orion1-4-xx-135-E |
| 1500     | 1506.3   | Orion1-4-xx-150-E |
| 1650     | 1656.3   | Orion1-4-xx-165-E |
| 1800     | 1806.3   | Orion1-4-xx-180-E |

xx = Resolution (14 or 30 mm)

# Safety light grid

## Orion2 Base

Orion2 Base is a compact light grid for access protection.

The light grid has 2-4 beams and is intended for body detection.

With an operating distance of 50 m between transmitter and receiver the light grid is suitable for applications with deviating mirrors.



Cost effective solution

### Minimized cabling

A local reset button can be connected directly to the light grid, eliminating the need for cable between the reset button and the electrical cabinet or for an extra control module.

### External device monitoring

Each light grid can monitor the actuators without any extra control module (EDM function).



Easy to install

### Alignment help

Alignment help and a wide angle within the limits of a Type 4 device facilitate installation.

### Easy adjustment

Rotation brackets makes alignment easy.

### Fast connection

M12 connectors speed up cabling.



Continuous operation

### Protection in harsh environments

The housing is IP65 rated, and protective tubes and lens shields are available to provide further protection for the device in harsh environments.

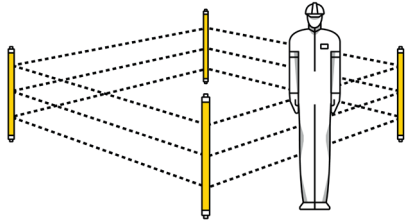
## Applications and features

### Orion2 Base

#### Application

##### Body detection over long distances

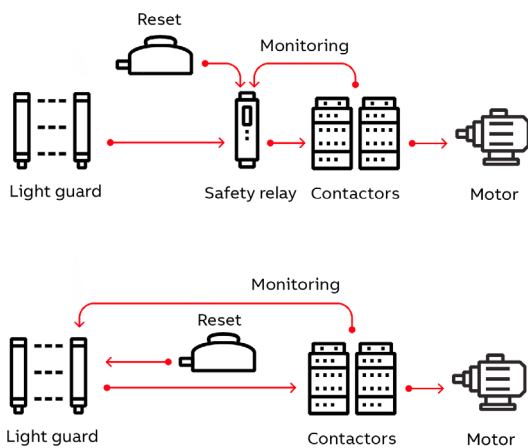
With 2-4 beams and a maximum sensing range of 50 m between transmitter and receiver, the light grid is intended for body detection and can be used with deviating mirrors to form a protective perimeter around a dangerous area.



#### Features

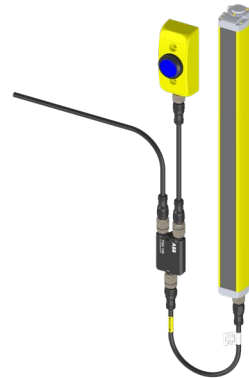
##### EDM

External Device Monitoring is a feature allowing the light guard to supervise the actuators in simpler applications, eliminating the need for a safety relay or programmable safety controller.



##### Local reset

A local reset button is connected directly to the light guard instead of to the safety control module in the electrical cabinet. This saves safety relays/programmable inputs and minimizes cabling to the electrical cabinet. Clever accessories make the connection easier.



## Ordering information

### Orion2 Base



2TLC172798F0201

**Orion2 Base**

#### Ordering details

| Detection | Protected height<br>mm | Type<br>(Transmitter + receiver) | Order code      |
|-----------|------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|
| Body      | 500 (2 beams)          | Orion2-4-K2-050-B                | 2TLA022304R0000 |
|           | 800 (3 beams)          | Orion2-4-K3-080-B                | 2TLA022304R0100 |
|           | 900 (4 beams)          | Orion2-4-K4-090-B                | 2TLA022304R0200 |
|           | 1200 (4 beams)         | Orion2-4-K4-120-B                | 2TLA022304R0300 |



2TLC172781F0201

**JSM Orion01**

#### Spare parts (included when ordering Orion)

| Description                             | Type        | Order code      |
|---|-------------|-----------------|
| 4 standard brackets for Orion1 & Orion2 | JSM Orion01 | 2TLA022310R0000 |

## Accessories

### Orion2 Base



JSM Orion 04

2TLC17276F0201



M12-3R

2TLC172012V0201



Smile 11 RB

2TLC172367F0001



Tina 10 C

2TLC17247F0201

## Accessories

### Mounting accessories

| Description  | Type              | Order code      |
|--|-------------------|-----------------|
| Orion Test Piece 14 mm   | Orion TP-14       | 2TLA022310R5200 |
| Orion Test Piece 30 mm   | Orion TP-30       | 2TLA022310R5300 |
| Orion Laser pointer  | Orion Laser       | 2TLA022310R5000 |
| JSM M5B special T-nut M5 to be used with M5x12 screw for mounting Orion on Quick-Guard   | T-nut JSM M5B     | 2TLA040035R0400 |
| 4 rotation brackets for Orion2   | JSM Orion04       | 2TLA022310R0200 |
| Kit for mounting of Orion1 & Orion2 in Stand (4 pieces for lengths shorter than 1200 mm) | JSM Orion06       | 2TLA022310R0400 |
| Kit for mounting of Orion1 & Orion2 in Stand (6 pieces for lengths of 1200 mm or more)   | JSM Orion07       | 2TLA022310R0500 |
| Orion Plate kit for adjustment of protective stand                                       | Orion Stand Plate | 2TLA022312R5000 |
| Deviating mirror in stand for Orion 2 and 3  | Orion Mirror*     |                 |
| Protective stand   | Orion Stand*      |                 |
| Protective tube  | Orion WET*        |                 |
| Lens shield  | Orion Shield*     |                 |

### Connection accessories

|  |             |                 |
|--|-------------|-----------------|
| Smile reset button with NO contact   | Smile 11 RA | 2TLA030053R0000 |
| Smile reset button with NO contact for Pluto   | Smile 11 RB | 2TLA030053R0100 |
| Smile reset button with NO contact for Orion1 Base   | Smile 11RO1 | 2TLA022316R3000 |
| Y-connector for series connection of DYNlink devices with M12-5 connectors, e.g. Eden  | M12-3A      | 2TLA020055R0000 |
| Y-connector for connection of a Smile reset button to Orion  | M12-3R      | 2TLA022316R0000 |
| Y-connector for easy connection of a transmitter   | M12-3D      | 2TLA020055R0300 |
| Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 for DYNlink.   | Tina 10A v2 | 2TLA020054R1210 |
| Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink with possibility to connect a local reset button. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 for DYNlink and reset button. | Tina 10B v2 | 2TLA020054R1310 |
| Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink with possibility to power the transmitter. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 for DYNlink and transmitter.         | Tina 10C v2 | 2TLA020054R1610 |

\*These accessories are available in different sizes.

For more information see:

Orion Mirror [2TLC172060L0201](#), Orion Stand [2TLC172059L0201](#), Orion WET [2TLC172061L0201](#), Orion Shield [2TLC172071L0201](#)

For more information about the connection accessories, please see:

Orion connection accessories [2TLC172101L0201](#)

### How to choose correct reset button

| Local or global reset  | Adaption to DYNlink* | Safety control module                                 | Type          | Useful connection accessories  |
|--|----------------------|---|---------------|--|
| Local reset button connected to the light guard<br><br>(Orion in manual reset mode)        | Yes                  | Vital or Pluto  | Smile 11RO2   | Tina 10B: OSSD to DYNlink + local reset button<br>M12-3A: Serial connection of the DYNlink |
|  | No                   | Any safety control module compatible with light guard | Smile 11RO2   | M12-3R: Easy connection of a local reset button  |
| Global reset button connected to the control module<br><br>(Orion in automatic reset mode) | Yes                  | Vital   | Smile 11 RA   | Tina 10A: OSSD to DYNlink<br>Tina 10C: OSSD to DYNlink + supply to transmitter             |
|  | No                   | Pluto   | Smile 11 RB   | Tina 10A: OSSD to DYNlink<br>Tina 10C: OSSD to DYNlink + supply to transmitter             |
|  | No                   | Any safety control module compatible with light guard | Smile 11 RA** | -  |

\* The ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink solution offers the following advantages:

- Serial connection of safety devices while maintaining PLe/cat. 4, up to 25 Tina 10 per Vital and up to 5 Tina 10 per Pluto input.
- Only one safety input of the Pluto instead of two with the standard OSSD outputs.

\*\* Smile 11RA has one NO contact, which is the most common for reset buttons. Please check what is requested for the chosen safety control module.

# Cables

## Orion2 Base



M12-C61

2TLC12931F0201



M12-C61HE

2TLC010003F0201



M12-C334

2TLC12931F0201

### Cable with connectors

| Connector | Female/male   | Length | Special feature | Type                            | Order code              |                 |
|-----------|---------------|--------|-----------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| M12-5     | Female        | 3 m    |                 | M12-C31                         | 2TLA020056R0500         |                 |
|           |               | 6 m    |                 | M12-C61                         | 2TLA020056R0000         |                 |
|           | (b)           | 10 m   |                 | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C61HE               | 2TLA020056R8000 |
|           |               |        |                 | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C101                | 2TLA020056R1000 |
|           | 20 m          |        |                 | M12-C201                        | 2TLA020056R1400         |                 |
|           |               |        |                 | M12-C0312                       | 2TLA020056R5800         |                 |
|           | Female + male | (a)    | 0.3 m           |                                 | M12-C0312               | 2TLA020056R5800 |
|           |               |        | 0.06 m          |                                 | M12-C00612              | 2TLA020056R6300 |
|           |               |        | 1 m             |                                 | M12-C112                | 2TLA020056R2000 |
|           |               |        | 3 m             |                                 | M12-C312                | 2TLA020056R2100 |
| 6 m       |               |        |                 | M12-C612                        | 2TLA020056R2200         |                 |
| 10 m      |               |        |                 | M12-C1012                       | 2TLA020056R2300         |                 |
| 16 m      |               |        |                 | M12-C1612                       | 2TLA020056R5400         |                 |
| 20 m      |               |        |                 | M12-C2012                       | 2TLA020056R2400         |                 |
| M12-8     | Male          | 6 m    |                 | M12-C62                         | 2TLA020056R0200         |                 |
|           |               | 10 m   |                 | M12-C102                        | 2TLA020056R1200         |                 |
|           | (c)           | 10 m   |                 |                                 | M12-C63                 | 2TLA020056R3000 |
|           |               |        |                 |                                 | M12-C103                | 2TLA020056R4000 |
|           |               |        |                 |                                 | M12-C203                | 2TLA020056R4100 |
|           | Female + male | (d)    | 0.06 m          |                                 | M12-C00634 <sup>1</sup> | 2TLA020056R6400 |
|           |               |        | 1 m             |                                 | M12-C134 <sup>1</sup>   | 2TLA020056R5000 |
|           |               |        | 3 m             |                                 | M12-C334 <sup>1</sup>   | 2TLA020056R5100 |
|           |               |        | 1               |                                 | M12-CT132 <sup>2</sup>  | 2TLA020060R0600 |

Letters (a, b, c, d, e, t<sub>3</sub>) refer to cables in connection examples, e.g:

[2TLC010002T0001 Connection diagram Orion\\_cables\\_Tina10\\_M12-3A\\_M12-3D](#)

[2TLC010003T0001 Connection diagram Orion\\_cables\\_Smile11R\\_Urax\\_M12-3R](#)

1) Used for the connection to Tina 10, M12-3D and M12-3R. Tina 10 can be connected directly to the light guard without cable, but will form an angle (i.e. not be aligned) with the light guard, which might be a problem if the light guard is mounted close to a wall/aluminum profile.

2) M12-CT132 (t<sub>3</sub>) is used for the connection of Orion2 Base to URAX-D1R.



M12-C01

2TLC1265F0201



C5 cable

2TLC010008F0201

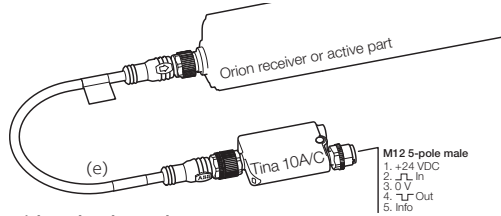
### Separate Cables and connectors

| Description                                   | Type           | Order code      |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>Connectors</b>                             |                |                 |
| M12-5 pole female, straight                   | M12-C01        | 2TLA020055R1000 |
| M12-5 pole male, straight                     | M12-C02        | 2TLA020055R1100 |
| M12-8 pole female, straight                   | M12-C03        | 2TLA020055R1600 |
| M12-8 pole male, straight                     | M12-C04        | 2TLA020055R1700 |
| <b>Cable with 5 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 10 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 10 m  | 2TLA020057R0001 |
| 50 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R0005 |
| 100 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R0010 |
| 200 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R0020 |
| 500 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R0050 |
| <b>Cable with 8 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 50 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C8 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R1005 |
| 100 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R1010 |
| 200 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R1020 |
| 500 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R1050 |

## Connection examples

### Orion2 Base

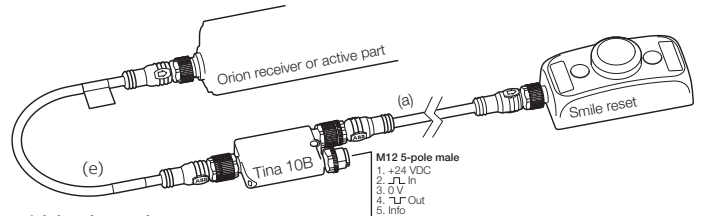
#### Orion with Tina 10A/C



#### Without local reset button

Connection to the ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink signal via Tina 10 A/C. To be used with Vital safety control module or Pluto programmable safety controller.

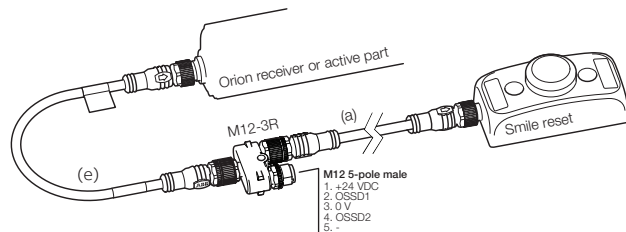
#### Reset to Orion with Tina 10B



#### With local reset button

Connection to the ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink signal via Tina 10B. To be used with Vital safety control module or Pluto programmable safety controller.

#### Reset to Orion with M12-3R



Connection of a local reset button via M12-3R.



#### Connection diagrams

For Orion2 Base connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>

## Technical data

### Orion2 Base

#### Technical data

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Approvals                       |                                       |
| Conformity                      | <b>CE</b><br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>2004/108/EC - EMC<br>EN ISO 13849-1:2008, EN 62061:2005/A1:2013, EN 61496-1:2013, EN 61496-2, EN 61508-1:2010, EN 61508-2:2010, EN 61508-3:2010, EN 61508-4:2010 |
| Functional safety data          |   |
| EN 61508:2010                   | SIL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.64 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| EN 62061:2005+A1:2013           | SILCL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.64 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| EN ISO 13849-1:2008             | PL e, Cat. 4, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.64 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| Electrical data                 |   |
| Power supply                    | +24 VDC ± 20% (SELV/PELV)   |
| Power consumption, Transmitter  | 30 mA max. / 0.9 W  |
| Power consumption, Receiver     | 75 mA max. (without load) / 2.2 W   |
| Cable length (for power supply) | 50 m max with 50 nF capacitive load and +24 VDC   |
| Internal capacitance            | 23 nF (Transmitter) / 120 nF (Receiver)   |
| Outputs                         | 2 PNP   |
| Short-circuit protection        | Max 1.4 A at 55 °C, min. 1.1 A at -10 °C  |
| Output current                  | 0.5 A max / output  |
| Leakage current                 | < 1 mA  |
| Capacitive load (pure)          | 65 nF max at 25 °C  |
| Resistive load (pure)           | 56 Ω min at +24 VDC   |
| Current for external lamp       | 20 mA min, 250 mA max   |
| Connectors                      | M12-4 pole male on transmitter (compatible with M12-5 pole female)<br>M12-8 pole male on receiver   |
| Optical data                    |   |
| Light emission (λ)              | Infrared, LED (880 nm)  |
| Resolution                      | 315 - 515 mm  |
| Operating distance              | 0.5...50 m  |
| Ambient light rejection         | According to IEC-61496-2:2013   |
| Mechanical data                 |   |
| Operating temperature           | 10...+ 55 °C  |
| Storage temperature             | - 25...+ 70 °C  |
| Humidity range                  | 15...95% (no condensation)  |
| Protection class                | IP65 (EN 60529:2000)  |
| Weight                          | 1.2 kg max / meter for each single unit   |
| Housing material                | Painted aluminium (yellow RAL 1003)   |
| Front glass material            | PMMA  |
| Cap material                    | PC Lexan 943A   |

#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for:

Orion2 Base [2TLC172288M0201](#)

#### Connection diagrams

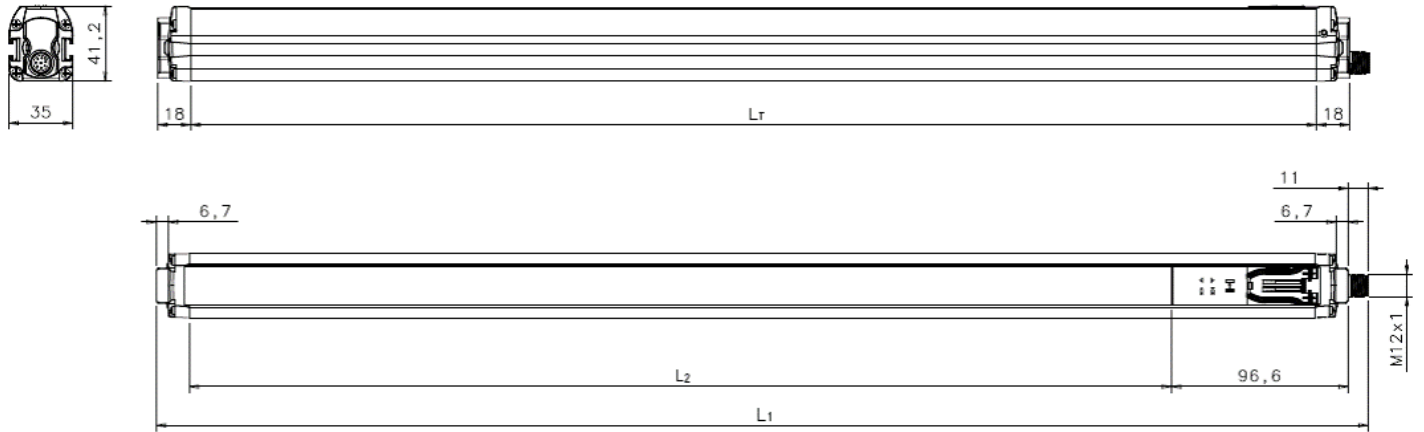
For Orion2 Base connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>



## Dimension drawings

### Orion2 Base

#### Orion2 Base



All dimensions in mm

#### Dimension

| Lr<br>mm | L1<br>mm | L2<br>mm | Type              |
|----------|----------|----------|-------------------|
| 617      | 664      | 538.4    | Orion2-4-K2-050-B |
| 917      | 964      | 838.4    | Orion2-4-K3-080-B |
| 1017     | 1064     | 938.4    | Orion2-4-K4-090-B |
| 1317     | 1364     | 1238.4   | Orion2-4-K4-120-B |

xx = Resolution

# Safety light grid

## Orion2 Extended

Orion2 Extended is a compact light grid for access protection in muting applications.

The light grid has 2-4 beams and is intended for body detection.



Cost effective solution

### Integrated muting function

Muting sensors are connected directly to the light grid, with no need for a remote muting module.

### Minimized cabling

A local reset button can be connected directly to the light grid, eliminating the need for cable between the reset button and the electrical cabinet.

### External device monitoring (EDM)

Each light grid can monitor the actuators without any extra control module.



Easy to install

### Alignment help

Alignment help and a wide angle within the limits of a Type 4 device facilitate installation.

### Easy adjustment

Rotation brackets makes alignment easy.

### Fast connection

M12 connectors speed up cabling.



Continuous operation

### Protection in harsh environments

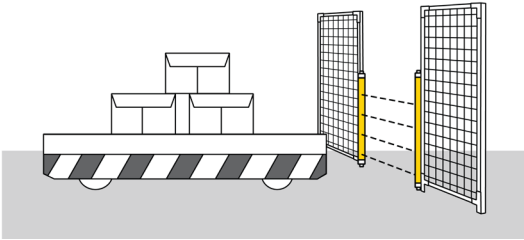
The housing is IP65 rated, and protective tubes and lens shields are available to provide further protection for the device in harsh environments.

## Features

### Orion2 Extended

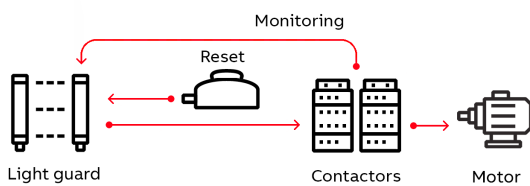
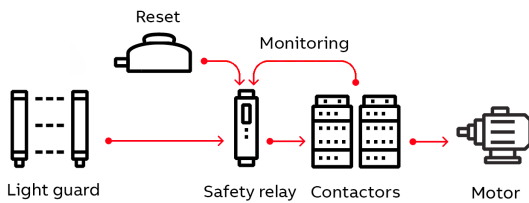
#### Muting

Orion2 Extended is intended for muting applications. By connecting muting sensors to the light guard, it can distinguish material from persons and allow the material to pass through an opening but not persons. Muting sensors and a connection box for muting are available to simplify the muting application.



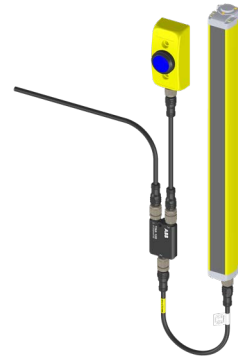
#### EDM

External Device Monitoring is a feature allowing the light guard to supervise the actuators in simpler applications, eliminating the need for a safety relay or programmable safety controller.



#### Local reset

A local reset button is connected directly to the light guard instead of to the safety control module in the electrical cabinet. This saves safety relays/PLC inputs and minimizes cabling to the electrical cabinet. Clever accessories makes the connection easier.



## Ordering information

### Orion2 Extended



Orion2 Extended

#### Ordering details

| Resolution (Detection) mm | Protected height mm | Type (Transmitter + receiver) | Order code      |
|---------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| Body                      | 500 (2 beams)       | Orion2-4-K2-050-E             | 2TLA022305R0000 |
|                           | 800 (3 beams)       | Orion2-4-K3-080-E             | 2TLA022305R0100 |
|                           | 900 (4 beams)       | Orion2-4-K4-090-E             | 2TLA022305R0200 |
|                           | 1200 (4 beams)      | Orion2-4-K4-120-E             | 2TLA022305R0300 |



JSM Orion01

#### Spare parts (included when ordering Orion)

| Description                             | Type        | Order code      |
|---|-------------|-----------------|
| 4 standard brackets for Orion1 & Orion2 | JSM Orion01 | 2TLA022310R0000 |

## Accessories

### Orion2 Extended



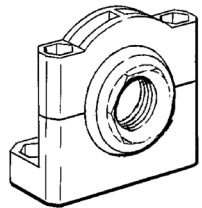
OMC1

2TLC172016V0201



Mute R2

2TLC172039V0201



JSM 64

2TLC10032F0201



Reflect 2

2TLC172093V0201



Smile 11 RB

2TLC172367F0201



Orion Laser pointer

2TLC172616F0201

#### Connection Accessories

| Description   | Type              | Order code      |
|---|-------------------|-----------------|
| Connection box for two or four muting sensors   | OMC1              | 2TLA022316R2000 |
| Retroreflex photoelectric sensor  | Mute R2           | 2TLA022044R0500 |
| Adjustable mounting bracket for M18 sensors (e.g. Mute R2).   | JSM 64            | 2TLA040007R0200 |
| Reflector diameter 63 mm  | Reflect 1         | 2TLA022044R2000 |
| Reflector diameter 82 mm  | Reflect 2         | 2TLA022044R3000 |
| Smile reset button with NO contact  | Smile 11 RA       | 2TLA030053R0000 |
| Smile reset button with NO contact for Pluto  | Smile 11 RB       | 2TLA030053R0100 |
| Smile reset button with NC contact for Orion2 Base/Extended and Orion3 Extended   | Smile 11RO2       | 2TLA022316R3100 |
| Y-connector for series connection of DYNlink devices with M12-5 connectors, e.g. Eden   | M12-RA            | 2TLA020055R0000 |
| Y-connector for connection of a Smile reset button to Orion   | M12-3R            | 2TLA022316R0000 |
| Y-connector for easy connection of a transmitter  | M12-3D            | 2TLA020055R0300 |
| Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 for DYNlink.  | Tina 10A v2       | 2TLA020054R1210 |
| Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink with possibility to connect a local reset button. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 connector for DYNlink and reset button.. | Tina 10B v2       | 2TLA020054R1310 |
| Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink with possibility to power the transmitter. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 connector for DYNlink and transmitter.          | Tina 10C v2       | 2TLA020054R1610 |
| <b>Mounting accessories</b>   |                   |                 |
| Orion Test Piece 14 mm  | Orion TP-14       | 2TLA022310R5200 |
| Orion Test Piece 30 mm  | Orion TP-30       | 2TLA022310R5300 |
| Orion Laser pointer   | Orion Laser       | 2TLA022310R5000 |
| JSM M5B special T-nut M5 to be used with M5x12 screw for mounting Orion on Quick-Guard  | T-nut JSM M5B     | 2TLA040035R0400 |
| 4 standard brackets for Orion1 & Orion2   | JSM Orion01       | 2TLA022310R0000 |
| 4 rotation brackets for Orion2  | JSM Orion04       | 2TLA022310R0200 |
| Kit for mounting of Orion1 & Orion2 in Stand (4 pieces for lengths shorter than 1200 mm)  | JSM Orion06       | 2TLA022310R0400 |
| Kit for mounting of Orion1 & Orion2 in Stand (6 pieces for lengths of 1200 mm or more)  | JSM Orion07       | 2TLA022310R0500 |
| Orion Plate kit for adjustment of protective stand  | Orion Stand Plate | 2TLA022312R5000 |
| Deviating mirror in stand for Orion 2 and 3   | Orion Mirror*     |                 |
| Protective stand  | Orion Stand*      |                 |
| Protective tube   | Orion WET*        |                 |
| Lens shield   | Orion Shield*     |                 |

\*These accessories are available in different sizes. For more information see:

Orion Mirror [2TLC172060L0201](#), Orion Stand [2TLC172059L0201](#), Orion WET [2TLC172061L0201](#), Orion Shield [2TLC172071L0201](#)

For more information about the connection accessories, please see:

Orion connection accessories [2TLC172101L0201](#)

#### How to choose correct reset button

| Local or global reset                               | Adaption to DYNlink* | Safety control module                                 | Type          | Useful connection accessories  |
|---|----------------------|---|---------------|--|
| Local reset button connected to the light guard     | Yes                  | Vital or Pluto  | Smile 11RO2   | Tina 10B: OSSD to DYNlink + local reset button<br>M12-3A: Serial connection of DYNlink |
| (Orion in manual reset mode)                        | No                   | Any safety control module compatible with light guard | Smile 11RO2   | M12-3R: Easy connection of a local reset button  |
| Global reset button connected to the control module | Yes                  | Vital   | Smile 11 RA   | Tina 10A: OSSD to DYNlink<br>Tina 10C: OSSD to DYNlink + supply to transmitter         |
| (Orion in automatic reset mode)                     |                      | Pluto   | Smile 11 RB   | Tina 10A: OSSD to DYNlink<br>Tina 10C: OSSD to DYNlink + supply to transmitter         |
|   | No                   | Any safety control module compatible with light guard | Smile 11 RA** | -  |

\* The ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink solution offers the following advantages:

- Serial connection of safety devices while maintaining PLe/cat. 4, up to 25 Tina 10 per Vital and up to 5 Tina 10 per Pluto input.
- Only one safety input of the Pluto instead of two with the standard OSSD outputs.

\*\* Smile 11 RA has one NO contact, which is the most common for reset buttons. Please check what is requested for the chosen safety control module.

## Cables

### Orion2 Extended



M12-C61

2TLC172951F0201



M12-C61HE

2TLC010003F0201



M12-C334

2TLC172931F0201

#### Cable with connectors

| Connector                 | Female/male                     | Length        | Special feature | Type                    | Order code      |                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|-------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| M12-5                     | Female                          | 3 m           |                 | M12-C31                 | 2TLA020056R0500 |                 |
|                           |                                 | 6 m           |                 | M12-C61                 | 2TLA020056R0000 |                 |
|                           | Harsh environment, halogen free |               | 10 m            |                         | M12-C101        | 2TLA020056R1000 |
|                           |                                 |               | 20 m            |                         | M12-C201        | 2TLA020056R1400 |
|                           |                                 | Female + male | 0.3 m           |                         | M12-C0312       | 2TLA020056R5800 |
|                           |                                 |               | 0.06 m          |                         | M12-C00612      | 2TLA020056R6300 |
|                           | (a)                             |               | 1 m             |                         | M12-C112        | 2TLA020056R2000 |
|                           |                                 |               | 3 m             |                         | M12-C312        | 2TLA020056R2100 |
|                           |                                 | 6 m           |                 | M12-C612                | 2TLA020056R2200 |                 |
|                           |                                 |               | 10 m            |                         | M12-C1012       | 2TLA020056R2300 |
| 16 m                      |                                 |               | M12-C1612       | 2TLA020056R5400         |                 |                 |
|                           |                                 | 20 m          |                 | M12-C2012               | 2TLA020056R2400 |                 |
| Male                      |                                 | 6 m           |                 | M12-C62                 | 2TLA020056R0200 |                 |
|                           |                                 | 10 m          |                 | M12-C102                | 2TLA020056R1200 |                 |
| M12-8                     | Female                          | 6 m           |                 | M12-C63                 | 2TLA020056R3000 |                 |
|                           |                                 | 10 m          |                 | M12-C103                | 2TLA020056R4000 |                 |
|                           |                                 | 20 m          |                 | M12-C203                | 2TLA020056R4100 |                 |
|                           | Female + male                   | 0.06 m        |                 | M12-C00634 <sup>1</sup> | 2TLA020056R6400 |                 |
|                           |                                 | 1 m           |                 | M12-C134 <sup>1</sup>   | 2TLA020056R5000 |                 |
|                           |                                 | 3 m           |                 | M12-C334 <sup>1</sup>   | 2TLA020056R5100 |                 |
| M12-8 male + female       | Female + male                   | 0.2           |                 | M12-CT132 <sup>2</sup>  | 2TLA020060R0600 |                 |
| M12-8 female - M12-5 male | Female + male                   | 1             |                 | M12-CYMUTE <sup>3</sup> | 2TLA022316R0100 |                 |

Letters (a, b, c, d, e, t<sub>3</sub>) refer to cables in connection examples, e.g:

[2TLC010002T0001 Connection diagram Orion\\_cables Tina10 M12-3A M12-3D](#)

[2TLC010003T0001 Connection diagram Orion\\_cables Smile11R Urax M12-3R](#)

1) Used for the connection to Tina 10, M12 3D and M12-3R. Tina 10 can be connected directly to the light guard without cable, but will form an angle (i.e. not be aligned) with the light guard, which might be a problem if the light guard is mounted close to a wall/aluminum profile.

2) M12-CT132 (t<sub>3</sub>) is used for the connection of Orion2 Extended to URAX-D1R.

3) M12-CYMUTE is used to simplify the connection of 2 or 4 muting sensors with the help of the OMC1 connection box.

#### Separate cables and connectors



M12-C01

2TLC172657F0201



C5 cable

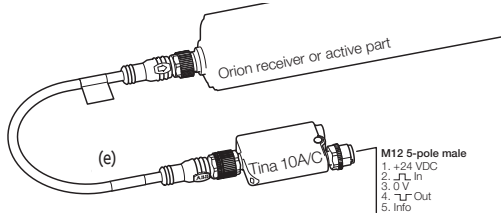
2TLC010003BF0201

| Description                                   | Type           | Order code      |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>Connectors</b>                             |                |                 |
| M12-5 pole female, straight                   | M12-C01        | 2TLA020055R1000 |
| M12-5 pole male, straight                     | M12-C02        | 2TLA020055R1100 |
| M12-8 pole female, straight                   | M12-C03        | 2TLA020055R1600 |
| M12-8 pole male, straight                     | M12-C04        | 2TLA020055R1700 |
| <b>Cable with 5 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 10 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 10 m  | 2TLA020057R0001 |
| 50 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R0005 |
| 100 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R0010 |
| 200 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R0020 |
| 500 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R0050 |
| <b>Cable with 8 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 50 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C8 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R1005 |
| 100 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R1010 |
| 200 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R1020 |
| 500 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R1050 |

## Connection examples

### Orion2 Extended

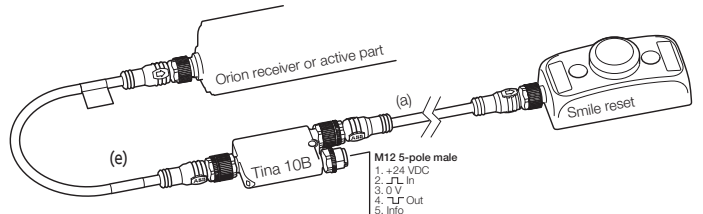
#### Orion with Tina 10A/C



Without local reset button

Connection to the ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink signal via Tina 10 A/C. To be used with Vital safety control module or Pluto programmable safety controller.

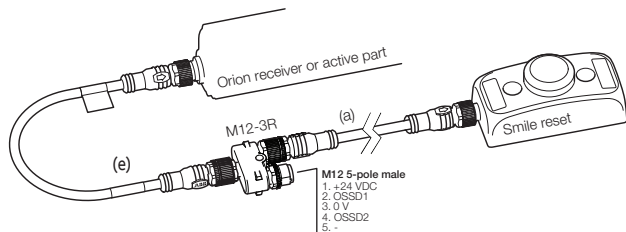
#### Reset to Orion with Tina 10B



With local reset button

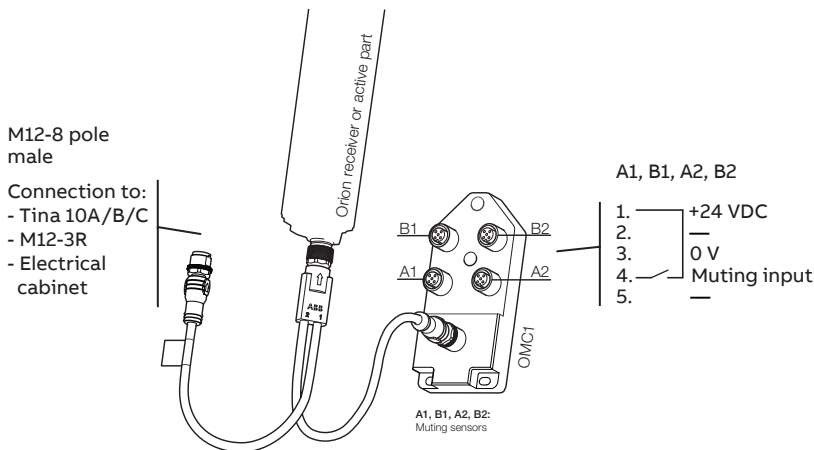
Connection to the ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink signal via Tina 10B. To be used with Vital safety control module or Pluto programmable safety controller.

#### Reset to Orion with M12-3R



Connection of a local reset button via M12-3R.

#### Connection of muting sensors with M12-CYMUTE and OMC1



NB: Cable with M12-5 male + female connectors shall be used between muting sensors and OMC1 inputs A1, B1, A2, B2.



#### Connection diagrams

For Orion2 Extended connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>

## Technical data

### Orion2 Extended

#### Technical data

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Approvals                      |                                       |
| Conformity                     | <b>CE</b><br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>2004/108/EC - EMC<br>EN ISO 13849-1:2008, EN 62061:2005/A1:2013, EN 61496-1:2013, EN 61496-2, EN 61508-1:2010, EN 61508-2:2010, EN 61508-3:2010, EN 61508-4:2010 |
| Functional safety data         |   |
| EN 61508:2010                  | SIL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.64 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| EN 62061:2005+A1:2013          | SILCL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.64 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| EN ISO 13849-1:2008            | PL e, Cat. 4, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.64 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| Electrical data                |   |
| Internal capacitance           | 23 nF (Transmitter) / 120 nF (Receiver)   |
| Power supply                   | +24 VDC ± 20% (SELV/PELV)   |
| Power consumption, Transmitter | 0.5 W during normal operation   |
| Power consumption, Receiver    | 2 W during normal operation   |
| Outputs                        | 2 PNP   |
| Short-circuit protection       | Max 1.4 A at 55 °C, min 1.1 A at -10 °C   |
| Output current                 | 0.5 A max / output  |
| Leakage current                | < 1 mA  |
| Capacitive load (pure)         | 65 nF max at 25 °C  |
| Resistive load (pure)          | 56 Ω min at +24 VDC   |
| Current for external lamp      | 20 mA min, 250 mA max   |
| Response time                  | 2 and 3 beams: 14 ms; 4 beams: 16 ms  |
| Connectors                     | M12-4 pole male on transmitter (compatible with M12-5 pole female)<br>M12-8 pole male on receiver   |
| Optical data                   |   |
| Light emission (λ)             | Infrared (880 nm)   |
| Resolution                     | 315 - 515 mm  |
| Operating distance             | 0.5...50 m  |
| Ambient light rejection        | According to IEC-61496-2:2013   |
| Mechanical data                |   |
| Operating temperature          | - 10...+ 55 °C  |
| Storage temperature            | - 25...+ 70 °C  |
| Humidity range                 | 15...95% (no condensation)  |
| Protection class               | IP65 (EN 60529:2000)  |
| Weight                         | 1.2 kg max / meter for each single unit   |
| Housing material               | PC Lexan 943A   |
| Lens material                  | PMMA  |
| Cap material                   | PC MAKROLON   |

#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see manual for:  
Orion2 Extended [2TLC172291M0201](#)

#### Connection diagrams

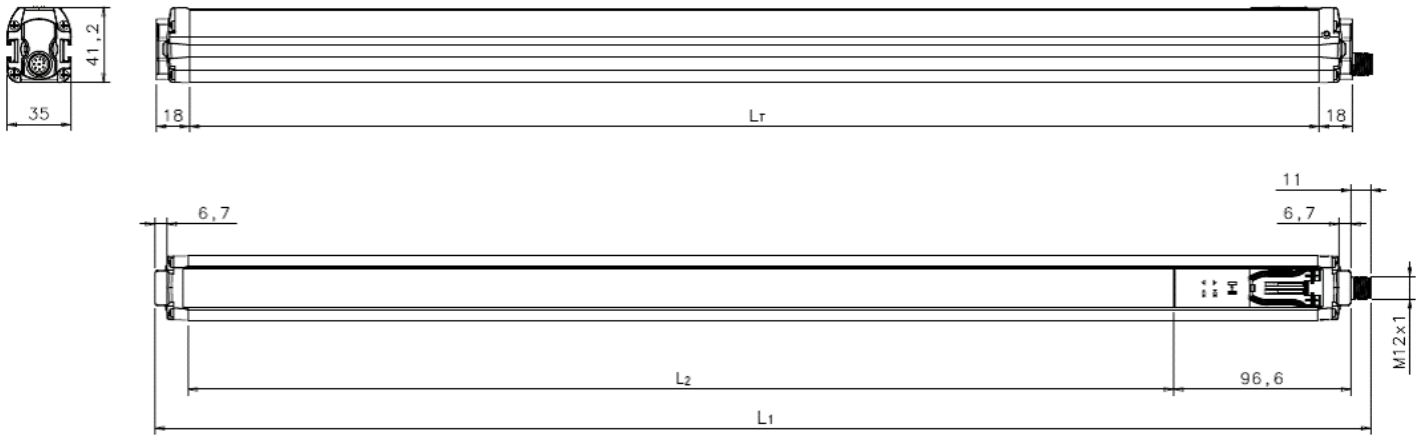
For Orion2 Extended connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>



## Dimension drawings

### Orion2 Extended

#### Orion2 Extended



All dimensions in mm

#### Dimension

| Lr<br>mm | L1<br>mm | L2<br>mm | Type              |
|----------|----------|----------|-------------------|
| 617      | 664      | 538.4    | Orion2-4-K2-050-E |
| 917      | 964      | 838.4    | Orion2-4-K3-080-E |
| 1017     | 1064     | 938.4    | Orion2-4-K4-090-E |
| 1317     | 1364     | 1238.4   | Orion2-4-K4-120-E |

# Safety light grid

## Orion3 Base

Orion3 Base is a light grid with a sturdy profile for access protection.

Only one of the parts needs power supply, since both transmitter and receiver are in the same active part. The other part is passive with mirrors to reflect the beams.

With 2-4 beams and an operating range of up to 8 m, it is intended for body detection.



Easy to install

### Alignment help

Alignment help and a wide angle within the limits of a Type 4 device facilitate installation.

### Easy adjustment

Rotation brackets makes alignment easy.

### Fast connection

M12 connectors speed up cabling.

### Less cabling

Only the active part needs connecting.



Cost effective solution

### Minimized cabling

A local reset button can be connected directly to the light grid, eliminating the need for cable between the reset button and the electrical cabinet or for an extra control module.

### External device monitoring

Each light grid can monitor the actuators without any extra control module (EDM function).



Continuous operation

### Visible alignment level

Since the alignment level is displayed, the alignment can be improved before the occurrence of an unwanted stop.

### Extensive error indication

Extensive error indication reduces troubleshooting time.

## Features

### Orion3 Base

#### Features

##### Sturdy profile for demanding applications

With its thicker and sturdier profile Orion3 is suitable for applications with tougher requirements.



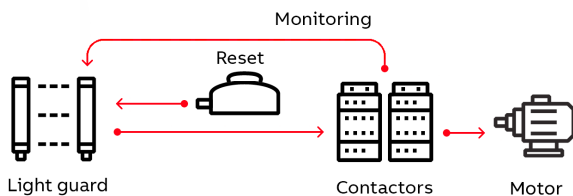
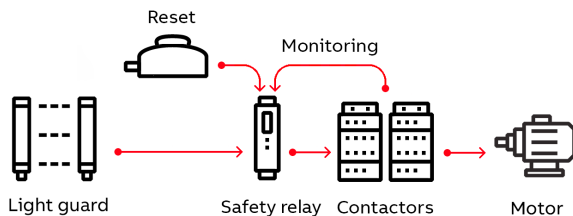
##### Power on one side

Both transmitter and receiver is in one active part, and the other part is passive containing mirrors. This simplifies installation and saves cables, making it easier to place in applications where cables needs to be avoided.



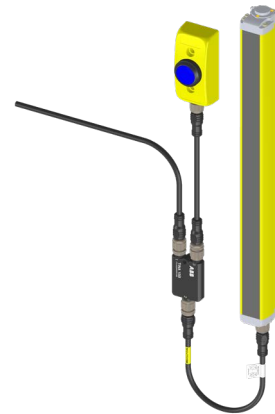
##### EDM

External Device Monitoring is a feature allowing the light guard to supervise the actuators in simpler applications, eliminating the need for a safety relay or programmable safety controller.



##### Local reset

A local reset button is connected directly to the light guard instead of to the safety control module in the electrical cabinet. This saves safety relays/PLC inputs and minimizes cabling to the electrical cabinet. Clever accessories makes the connection easier.



## Ordering information

### Orion3 Base



2TLC172804F0201

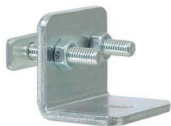
**Orion3 Base**

#### Ordering details

| Detection | Protected height mm | Active or passive part | Type               | Order code      |
|-----------|---------------------|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Body      | 500<br>(2 beams)    | Active part            | Orion3-4-K1C-050-B | 2TLA022306R0000 |
|           |                     | Passive part           | Orion3-4-M1C-050   | 2TLA022306R1000 |
|           | 800<br>(3 beams)    | Active part            | Orion3-4-K2C-080-B | 2TLA022306R0100 |
|           |                     | Passive part           | Orion3-4-M2C-080   | 2TLA022306R1100 |
|           | 900<br>(4 beams)    | Active part            | Orion3-4-K2C-090-B | 2TLA022306R0200 |
|           |                     | Passive part           | Orion3-4-M2C-090   | 2TLA022306R1300 |
|           | 1200<br>(4 beams)   | Active part            | Orion3-4-K2C-120-B | 2TLA022306R0300 |
|           |                     | Passive part           | Orion3-4-M2C-120   | 2TLA022306R1400 |

#### Spare parts (included when ordering Orion)

| Description                    | Type        | Order code      |
|--------------------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| 4 standard brackets for Orion3 | JSM Orion02 | 2TLA022310R1000 |



2TLC172779F0201

**JSM Orion02**

## Accessories

### Orion3 Base



2TLC172816F0201

Orion Laser pointer



2TLC172367F0201

Smile 11 RB



2TLC172012K0201

M12-3R



2TLC172477F0201

Tina 10C

#### Accessories

##### Mounting accessories

| Description  | Type              | Order code      |
|--|-------------------|-----------------|
| Orion Laser pointer  | Orion Laser       | 2TLA022310R5000 |
| JSM M5B special T-nut M5 to be used with M5x12 screw for mounting Orion on Quick-Guard | T-nut JSM M5B     | 2TLA040035R0400 |
| 4 standard brackets for Orion3   | JSM Orion05       | 2TLA022310R0300 |
| Kit for mounting of Orion3 in Stand (4 pieces for lengths shorter than 1200 mm)        | JSM Orion08       | 2TLA022310R0600 |
| Kit for mounting of Orion3 in Stand (6 pieces for lengths of 1200 mm or more)          | JSM Orion09       | 2TLA022310R0700 |
| Orion Plate kit for adjustment of protective stand                                     | Orion Stand Plate | 2TLA022312R5000 |
| Deviating mirror in stand for Orion 2 and 3  | Orion Mirror*     |                 |
| Protective stand   | Orion Stand*      |                 |

##### Connection accessories

|  |              |                 |
|--|--------------|-----------------|
| Smile reset button with NO contact   | Smile 11 RA  | 2TLA030053R0000 |
| Smile reset button with NO contact for Pluto   | Smile 11 RB  | 2TLA030053R0100 |
| Smile reset button with NC contact for Orion3 Base   | Smile 11 RO3 | 2TLA022316R3200 |
| Y-connector for series connection of DYNlink devices with M12-5 connectors, e.g. Eden  | M12-3A       | 2TLA020055R0000 |
| Y-connector for connection of a Smile reset button to Orion  | M12-3R       | 2TLA022316R0000 |
| Y-connector for easy connection of a transmitter   | M12-3D       | 2TLA020055R0300 |
| Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 for DYNlink.   | Tina 10A v2  | 2TLA020054R1210 |
| Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink with possibility to connect a local reset button. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 for DYNlink and reset button.   | Tina 10B v2  | 2TLA020054R1310 |
| Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink with possibility to power the transmitter. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 connector for DYNlink and transmitter. | Tina 10C v2  | 2TLA020054R1610 |

\*These accessories are available in different sizes.

For more information see:

Orion Mirror [2TLC172060L0201](#)

Orion Stand [2TLC172059L0201](#)

For more information about the connection accessories, please see:

Orion connection accessories [2TLC172101L0201](#)

#### How to choose correct reset button

| Local or global reset  | Adaption to DYNlink* | Safety control module                                 | Type          | Useful connection accessories  |
|--|----------------------|---|---------------|--|
| Local reset button connected to the light guard<br><br>(Orion in manual reset mode)        | Yes                  | Vital or Pluto  | Smile 11 RO3  | Tina 10B: OSSD to DYNlink solution + local reset button<br>M12-3A: Serial connection of the DYNlink solution |
|  | No                   | Any safety control module compatible with light guard | Smile 11 RO3  | M12-3R: Easy connection of a local reset button  |
| Global reset button connected to the control module<br><br>(Orion in automatic reset mode) | Yes                  | Vital   | Smile 11 RA   | Tina 10A: OSSD to DYNlink solution<br>Tina 10C: OSSD to DYNlink solution + supply to transmitter/active part |
|  |                      | Pluto   | Smile 11 RB   | Tina 10A: OSSD to DYNlink solution<br>Tina 10C: OSSD to DYNlink solution + supply to transmitter/active part |
|  | No                   | Any safety control module compatible with light guard | Smile 11 RA** | -  |

\* The ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink solution offers the following advantages:

- Serial connection of safety devices while maintaining PLe/cat. 4, up to 25 Tina 10 per Vital and up to 5 Tina 10 per Pluto input.
- Only one safety input of the Pluto instead of two with the standard OSSD outputs.

\*\* Smile 11 RA has one NO contact, which is the most common for reset buttons. Please check what is requested for the chosen safety control module.

# Cables

## Orion3 Base



M12-C61

2TLC172931F0201



M12-C61HE

2TLC010003F0201



M12-C334

2TLC172931F0201

### Cable with connectors

| Connector     | Female/male | Length        | Special feature             | Type                            | Order code      |                 |
|---------------|-------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| M12-5         | Female      | 3 m           |                             | M12-C31                         | 2TLA020056R0500 |                 |
|               |             | (b)           | 6 m                         | M12-C61                         | 2TLA020056R0000 |                 |
|               |             |               | 10 m                        | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C61HE       | 2TLA020056R8000 |
|               | (a)         | Female + male |                             | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C101        | 2TLA020056R1000 |
|               |             |               |                             | 20 m                            | M12-C101HE      | 2TLA020056R8100 |
|               |             |               |                             | 0.3 m                           | M12-C0312       | 2TLA020056R5800 |
|               |             |               |                             | 0.06 m                          | M12-C00612      | 2TLA020056R6300 |
|               |             |               |                             | 1 m                             | M12-C112        | 2TLA020056R2000 |
|               |             |               |                             | 3 m                             | M12-C312        | 2TLA020056R2100 |
|               |             |               |                             | 6 m                             | M12-C612        | 2TLA020056R2200 |
|               | M12-8       | Male          |                             |                                 | M12-C1012       | 2TLA020056R2300 |
|               |             |               |                             | 16 m                            | M12-C1612       | 2TLA020056R5400 |
|               |             |               |                             | 20 m                            | M12-C2012       | 2TLA020056R2400 |
| (c)           |             |               | 6 m                         | M12-C62                         | 2TLA020056R0200 |                 |
|               |             |               | 10 m                        | M12-C102                        | 2TLA020056R1200 |                 |
| Female        |             |               | 6 m                         | M12-C63                         | 2TLA020056R3000 |                 |
|               |             | (d)           |                             | 10 m                            | M12-C103        | 2TLA020056R4000 |
|               |             |               |                             | 20 m                            | M12-C203        | 2TLA020056R4100 |
| Female + male |             |               | 0.06 m                      | M12-C00634                      | 2TLA020056R6400 |                 |
|               |             |               | 1 m                         | M12-C134                        | 2TLA020056R5000 |                 |
|               |             | 3 m           | M12-C334                    | 2TLA020056R5100                 |                 |                 |
|               |             | 0,2 m         | M12-CTO3B <sup>1</sup>      | 2TLA022315R3200                 |                 |                 |
|               |             | 1 m           | M12-CTURAX-03B <sup>2</sup> | 2TLA022315R3400                 |                 |                 |

Letters (a, b, c, d, t<sub>2</sub>, t<sub>3</sub>) refer to cables in connection examples, e.g:  
 2TLC010002T0002 Connection diagram Cables Orion3 to Tina10  
 2TLC010003T0002 Connection diagram Cables Orion3 to electrical cabinet URAX

1) M12-CTO3B (t<sub>2</sub>) can be used for: - connection of Orion3 Base to Tina 10A/B/C.  
 - connection of Orion 3 Base to M12-3R.

The EDM function is deactivated in all cases

2) M12-CTURAX-03B (t<sub>3</sub>) is used for: - connection of Orion3 Base to URAX-D1R.

The light guard is automatically configured in automatic reset and the EDM function is deactivated.

### Separate cables and connectors



M12-C01

2TLC172655F0201



C5 cable

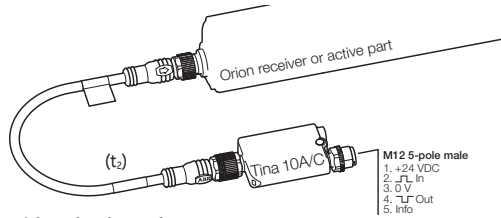
2TLC010003F0201

| Description                                   | Type           | Order code      |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>Connectors</b>                             |                |                 |
| M12-5 pole female, straight                   | M12-C01        | 2TLA020055R1000 |
| M12-5 pole male, straight                     | M12-C02        | 2TLA020055R1100 |
| M12-8 pole female, straight                   | M12-C03        | 2TLA020055R1600 |
| M12-8 pole male, straight                     | M12-C04        | 2TLA020055R1700 |
| <b>Cable with 5 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 10 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 10 m  | 2TLA020057R0001 |
| 50 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R0005 |
| 100 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R0010 |
| 200 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R0020 |
| 500 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R0050 |
| <b>Cable with 8 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 50 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C8 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R1005 |
| 100 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R1010 |
| 200 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R1020 |
| 500 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R1050 |

## Connection examples

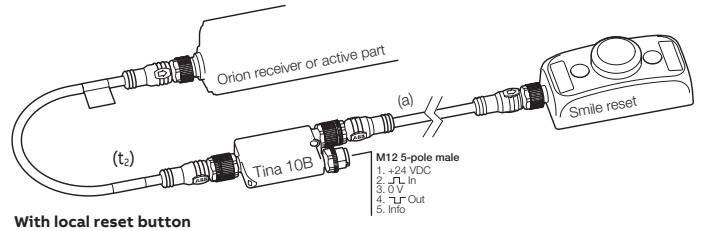
### Orion3 Base

#### Orion with Tina 10A/C



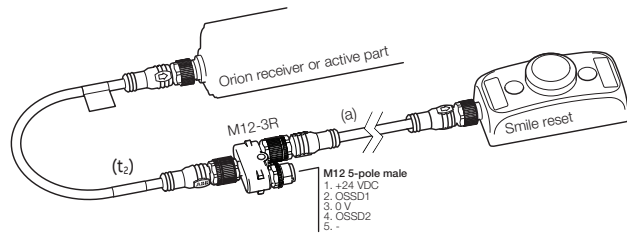
Connection to the ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink signal via Tina 10 A/C. To be used with Vital safety control module or Pluto programmable safety controller.

#### Reset to Orion with Tina 10B



Connection to the ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink signal via Tina 10B. To be used with Vital safety control module or Pluto programmable safety controller.

#### Reset to Orion with M12-3R



Connection of a local reset button via M12-3R.



#### Connection diagrams

For Orion3 Base connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>

## Technical data

### Orion3 Base

#### Technical data

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Approvals                       |                                       |
| Conformity                      | <b>CE</b><br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>2004/108/EC - EMC<br>EN ISO 13849-1:2008, EN 62061:2005/A1:2013, EN 61496-1:2013, EN 61496-2, EN 61508-1:2010, EN 61508-2:2010, EN 61508-3:2010, EN 61508-4:2010 |
| Functional safety data          |   |
| EN 61508:2010                   | SIL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 9.28 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| EN 62061:2005+A1:2013           | SILCL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 9.28 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| EN ISO 13849-1:2008             | PL e, Cat. 4, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 9.28 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| Electrical data                 |   |
| Power supply                    | +24 VDC ±20 %   |
| Power consumption, Active unit  | 6.5 W max (without load)  |
| Cable length (for power supply) | 70 m max  |
| Outputs                         | 2 PNP   |
| Short-circuit protection        | 1.4 A max   |
| Output current                  | 0.5 A max / output  |
| Output voltage – ON             | Power supply value less 1 V (min)   |
| Output voltage – OFF            | 0.2 V max   |
| Capacitive load                 | 2.2 µF at +24 VDC max   |
| Cable length (for power supply) | 70 m max  |
| Connectors                      | M12-8 pole male on receiver   |
| Optical data                    |   |
| Light emission (λ)              | Infrared, LED (950 nm)  |
| Resolution                      | 319.75 - 519.75 mm  |
| Operating distance              | 0.5...8 m except K2C-090: 0.5...6.5 m   |
| Ambient light rejection         | According to IEC-61496-2:2013   |
| Mechanical data                 |   |
| Operating temperature           | 0...+ 55 °C   |
| Storage temperature             | - 25...+ 70 °C  |
| Humidity range                  | 15...95% (no condensation)  |
| Protection class                | IP65 (EN 60529:2000)  |
| Weight                          |   |
| Orion3-4-K1C-050-B              | 1.3 kg  |
| Orion3-4-K2C-080-B              | 1.8 kg  |
| Orion3-4-K2C-090-B              | 2.1 kg  |
| Orion3-4-K2C-120-B              | 2.6 kg  |
| Orion3-4-M1C-050 (passive)      | 1.2 kg  |
| Orion3-4-M2C-080 (passive)      | 1.7 kg  |
| Orion3-4-M2C-090 (passive)      | 1.9 kg  |
| Orion3-4-M2C-120 (passive)      | 2.5 kg  |
| Housing material                | Painted aluminium (yellow RAL 1003)   |
| Cap material                    | PBT Valox 508   |
| Lens material                   | PMMA  |

#### More Information

For more information about the connection accessories, see manual for:  
Orion3 Base [2TLC172289M0201](#)

#### Connection diagrams

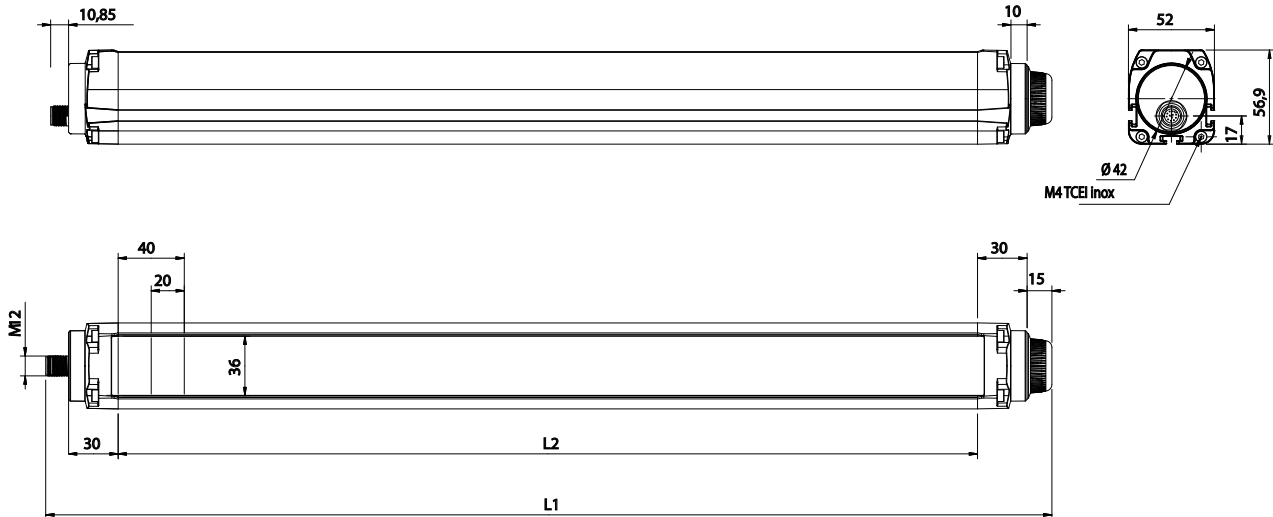
For Orion3 Base connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>



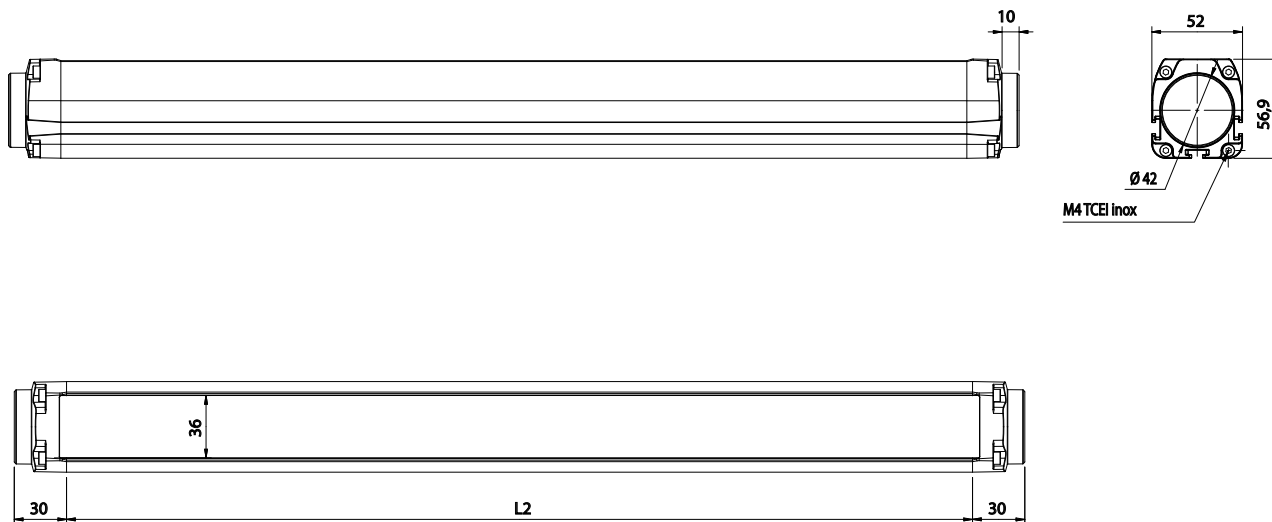
## Dimension drawings

### Orion3 Base

#### Orion3 Base



#### Active part – All dimensions in mm



#### Passive part – All dimensions in mm

#### Dimensions

| L1<br>mm | L2<br>mm | Type                             |
|----------|----------|----------------------------------|
| 606.4    | 520.5    | Orion3-4-K1C-050-B (active part) |
| 906.4    | 820.5    | Orion3-4-K2C-080-B (active part) |
| 1006.4   | 920.5    | Orion3-4-K2C-090-B (active part) |
| 1306.4   | 1220.5   | Orion3-4-K2C-120-B (active part) |
| 580.5    | 520.5    | Orion3-4-M1C-050 (passive part)  |
| 880.5    | 820.5    | Orion3-4-M2C-080 (passive part)  |
| 980.5    | 920.5    | Orion3-4-M2C-090 (passive part)  |
| 1280.5   | 1220.5   | Orion3-4-M2C-090 (passive part)  |

xx = Resolution

# Safety light grid

## Orion3 Extended

Orion3 Extended is a sturdy light grid for access protection in muting applications.

Only one of the parts needs power supply, since both transmitter and receiver are in the same active part. The other part is passive and contains mirrors to reflect the beams.

With 2-4 beams and an operating range of up to 8 m, it is intended for body detection.



Cost effective solution

### Integrated muting function

Muting sensors are connected directly to the light grid, with no need for a remote muting module.

### Minimized cabling

A local reset button can be connected directly to the light grid, eliminating the need for cable between the reset button and the electrical cabinet.

### External device monitoring (EDM)

Each light grid can monitor the actuators without any extra control module.



Easy to install

### Alignment help

Alignment help and a wide angle within the limits of a Type 4 device facilitate installation.

### Easy adjustment

Rotation brackets makes alignment easy.

### Fast connection

M12 connectors speed up cabling.

### Less cabling

Only the active part needs connecting.



Continuous operation

### Visible alignment level

Since the alignment level is displayed, the alignment can be improved before the occurrence of an unwanted stop.

### Extensive error indication

Extensive error indication reduces troubleshooting time.

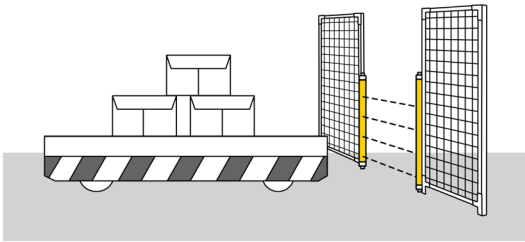
## Applications and features

### Orion3 Extended

#### Application

##### Muting

Orion2 Extended is intended for muting applications. By connecting muting sensors to the light guard, it can distinguish material from persons and allow the material to pass through an opening but not persons. Muting sensors and a connection box for muting are available to simplify the muting application.



#### Features

##### Power on one side

Both transmitter and receiver are in one active part, and the other part is passive and contains mirrors. This simplifies installation and saves cables, making it easier to place in applications where cables need to be avoided.



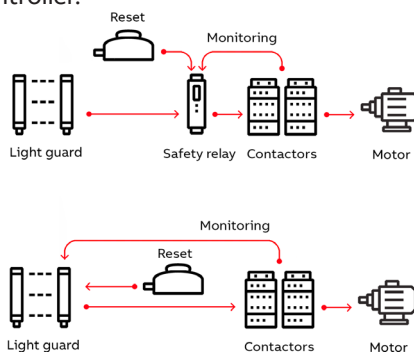
##### Sturdy profile for demanding applications

With its thicker and sturdier profile Orion3 is suitable for applications with tougher requirements.



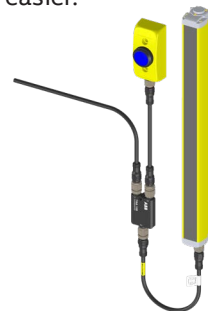
##### EDM

External Device Monitoring is a feature allowing the light guard to supervise the actuators in simpler applications, eliminating the need for a safety relay or programmable safety controller.



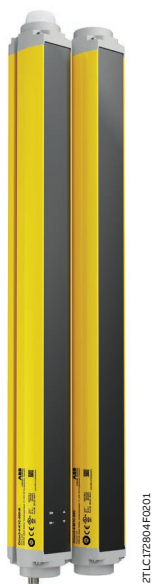
##### Local reset

A local reset button is connected directly to the light guard instead of to the safety control module in the electrical cabinet. This saves safety relays/PLC inputs and minimizes cabling to the electrical cabinet. Clever accessories make the connection easier.



## Ordering information

### Orion3 Extended



Orion3 Extended

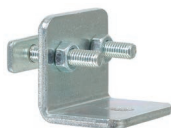
#### Ordering details

| Detection | Protected height mm | Active or passive part | Type               | Order code      |
|-----------|---------------------|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Body      | 500 (2 beams)       | Active part            | Orion3-4-K1C-050-E | 2TLA022307R0000 |
|           |                     | Passive part           | Orion3-4-M1C-050   | 2TLA022306R1000 |
|           | 800 (3 beams)       | Active part            | Orion3-4-K2C-080-E | 2TLA022307R0100 |
|           |                     | Passive part           | Orion3-4-M2C-080   | 2TLA022306R1100 |
|           | 900 (4 beams)       | Active part            | Orion3-4-K2C-090-E | 2TLA022307R0200 |
|           |                     | Passive part           | Orion3-4-M2C-090   | 2TLA022306R1300 |
|           | 1200 (4 beams)      | Active part            | Orion3-4-K2C-120-E | 2TLA022307R0300 |
|           |                     | Passive part           | Orion3-4-M2C-120   | 2TLA022306R1400 |

Please note that active and passive parts are ordered separately and both are necessary for Orion3 Extended to function.

#### Spare parts (included when ordering Orion)

| Description                    | Type        | Order code      |
|--------------------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| 4 standard brackets for Orion3 | JSM Orion02 | 2TLA022310R1000 |



JSM Orion02

## Accessories

### Orion3 Extended



OMC1

2TLC172016V0201



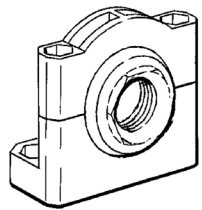
Mute R2

2TLC172031V0201



Reflect 2

2TLC172033V0201



JSM 64

2TLC010033F02011



Smile 11 RB

2TLC172316F0201



Tina 10B

2TLC172476F0201



Orion Laser pointer

2TLC172516F0201

### Accessories

#### Connection accessories

| Description  | Type        | Order code      |
|--|-------------|-----------------|
| Connection box for two or four muting sensors  | OMC1        | 2TLA022316R2000 |
| Retroreflex photoelectric sensor   | Mute R2     | 2TLA022044R0500 |
| Adjustable mounting bracket for M18 sensors (e.g. Mute R2).  | JSM 64      | 2TLA040007R0200 |
| Reflector diameter 63 mm   | Reflect 1   | 2TLA022044R2000 |
| Reflector diameter 82 mm   | Reflect 2   | 2TLA022044R3000 |
| Smile reset button with NO contact   | Smile 11 RA | 2TLA030053R0000 |
| Smile reset button with NO contact for Pluto   | Smile 11 RB | 2TLA030053R0100 |
| Smile reset button with NC contact for Orion2 Base/Extended and Orion3 Extended  | Smile 11RO2 | 2TLA022316R3100 |
| Y-connector for series connection of DYNlink devices with M12-5 connectors, e.g. Eden  | M12-3A      | 2TLA020055R0000 |
| Y-connector for connection of a Smile reset button to Orion  | M12-3R      | 2TLA022316R0000 |
| Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 for DYNlink.   | Tina 10A v2 | 2TLA020054R1210 |
| Adaptation of OSSD to DYNlink with possibility to connect a local reset button. M12-8 connector for OSSD and M12-5 for DYNlink and reset button. | Tina 10B v2 | 2TLA020054R1310 |

#### Mounting accessories

|  |                   |                 |
|--|-------------------|-----------------|
| Orion Laser pointer  | Orion Laser       | 2TLA022310R5000 |
| JSM M5B Special T-nut M5 to be used with screw M5x12 screw for mounting Orion on QuickGuard                      | T-nut JSM M5B     | 2TLA040035R0400 |
| 4 rotation brackets for Orion3   | JSM Orion05       | 2TLA022310R0300 |
| Kit for mounting of Orion3 in Stand (4 pieces)<br>- For a pair Orion3 - 050 / 080 / 090 (active + passive units) | JSM Orion08       | 2TLA022310R0600 |
| For a pair Orion3 - 120 (Orion3-4-K2C-120 + Orion3-4-M2C-120)  | JSM Orion09       | 2TLA022310R0700 |
| Orion Plate kit for adjustment of protective stand   | Orion Stand Plate | 2TLA022312R5000 |
| Deviating mirror in stand for Orion 2 and 3  | Orion Mirror*     |                 |
| Protective stand   | Orion Stand*      |                 |
| Protective tube  | Orion WET*        |                 |
| Lens shield  | Orion Shield*     |                 |

\*These accessories are available in different sizes.

For more information see:

Orion Mirror [2TLC172060L0201](#), Orion Stand [2TLC172059L0201](#), Orion WET [2TLC172061L0201](#), Orion Shield [2TLC172071L0201](#)

For more information about the connection accessories, please see:

Orion connection accessories [2TLC172101L0201](#)

### How to choose correct reset button

| Local or global reset  | Adaption to the DYNlink solution* | Safety control module                                 | Type          | Suitable connection accessories  |
|--|-----------------------------------|---|---------------|--|
| Local reset button connected to the light guard<br>(Orion in manual reset mode)        | Yes                               | Vital or Pluto  | Smile 11RO2   | Tina 10B: OSSD to DYNlink + local reset button<br>M12-3A: serial connection of DYNlink |
|  | No                                | Any safety control module compatible with light guard | Smile 11RO2   | M12-3R: Easy connection of a local reset button  |
| Global reset button connected to the control module<br>(Orion in automatic reset mode) | Yes                               | Vital   | Smile 11 RA   | Tina 10A: OSSD to DYNlink<br>Tina 10C: OSSD to DYNlink + supply to transmitter         |
|  |                                   | Pluto   | Smile 11 RB   | Tina 10A: OSSD to DYNlink<br>Tina 10C: OSSD to DYNlink + supply to transmitter         |
|  | No                                | Any safety control module compatible with light guard | Smile 11 RA** | -  |

\* The ABB Jokab safety DYNlink solution offers the following advantages:

- Serial connection of safety devices while maintaining PLe/cat. 4, up to 25 Tina 10 per Vital and up to 5 Tina 10 per Pluto input.
- Only one safety input of the Pluto instead of two with the standard OSSD outputs.

\*\* Smile 11RA has one NO contact, which is the most common for reset buttons. Please check what is requested for the chosen safety control module.

# Cables

## Orion3 Extended



M12-C61

2TLC17295F0201



M12-C61HE

2TLC010003F0201



M12-C334

2TLC172931F0201

### Cable with connectors

| Connector | Female/male   | Length | Special feature                 | Type            | Order code              |                 |
|-----------|---------------|--------|---------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| M12-5     | Female        | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C31         | 2TLA020056R0500         |                 |
|           |               | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C61         | 2TLA020056R0000         |                 |
|           | (b)           | 10 m   | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C61HE       | 2TLA020056R8000         |                 |
|           |               | 10 m   |                                 | M12-C101        | 2TLA020056R1000         |                 |
|           |               | 10 m   | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C101HE      | 2TLA020056R8100         |                 |
|           |               | 20 m   |                                 | M12-C201        | 2TLA020056R1400         |                 |
|           | Female + male | (a)    | 0.3 m                           |                 | M12-C0312               | 2TLA020056R5800 |
|           |               |        | 0.06 m                          |                 | M12-C00612              | 2TLA020056R6300 |
|           |               | 1 m    |                                 | M12-C112        | 2TLA020056R2000         |                 |
|           |               | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C312        | 2TLA020056R2100         |                 |
| 6 m       |               |        | M12-C612                        | 2TLA020056R2200 |                         |                 |
| 10 m      |               |        | M12-C1012                       | 2TLA020056R2300 |                         |                 |
| 16 m      |               |        | M12-C1612                       | 2TLA020056R5400 |                         |                 |
| 20 m      |               |        | M12-C2012                       | 2TLA020056R2400 |                         |                 |
| Male      |               | (c)    | 6 m                             |                 | M12-C62                 | 2TLA020056R0200 |
|           |               |        | 10 m                            |                 | M12-C102                | 2TLA020056R1200 |
|           | M12-8         | Female | 6 m                             |                 | M12-C63                 | 2TLA020056R3000 |
|           |               |        | 10 m                            |                 | M12-C103                | 2TLA020056R4000 |
|           |               | 20 m   |                                 | M12-C203        | 2TLA020056R4100         |                 |
|           | Female + male | (d)    | 0.06 m                          |                 | M12-C00634 <sup>1</sup> | 2TLA020056R6400 |
|           |               |        | 1 m                             |                 | M12-C134 <sup>1</sup>   | 2TLA020056R5000 |
|           |               |        | 3 m                             |                 | M12-C334 <sup>1</sup>   | 2TLA020056R5100 |
|           |               |        | 0.2                             |                 | M12-CT132 <sup>2</sup>  | 2TLA020060R0600 |
|           |               |        | 1                               |                 | M12-CYMUTE <sup>3</sup> | 2TLA022316R0100 |

Letters (a, b, c, d, t<sub>1</sub>, t<sub>2</sub>) refer to cables in connection examples, e.g:  
 2TLC010002T0002 Connection diagram Cables Orion3 to Tina10  
 2TLC010003T0002 Connection diagram Cables Orion3 to electrical cabinet URAX

- 1) These cables (t<sub>2</sub>) are used for the connection to Tina 10, M12 3D and M12-3R. Tina 10 can be connected directly to the light guard without cable, but will form an angle (i.e. not be aligned) with the light guard, which might be a problem if the light guard is mounted close to a wall/aluminum profile.
- 2) M12-CT132 (t<sub>3</sub>) is used for the connection of Orion3 Extended to URAX-D1R.
- 3) M12-CYMUTE is used to simplify the connection of 2 or 4 muting sensors with the help of the OMC1 connection box.

### Separate cables and connectors



M12-C01

2TLC17265F0301



C5 cable

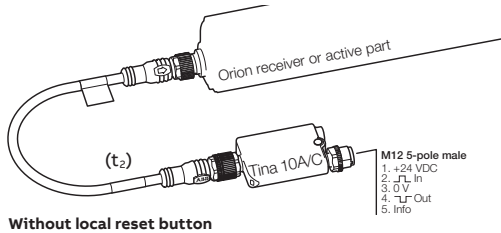
2TLC0100038F0201

| Description                                   | Type           | Order code      |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>Connectors</b>                             |                |                 |
| M12-5 pole female, straight                   | M12-C01        | 2TLA020055R1000 |
| M12-5 pole male, straight                     | M12-C02        | 2TLA020055R1100 |
| M12-8 pole female, straight                   | M12-C03        | 2TLA020055R1600 |
| M12-8 pole male, straight                     | M12-C04        | 2TLA020055R1700 |
| <b>Cable with 5 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 10 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 10 m  | 2TLA020057R0001 |
| 50 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R0005 |
| 100 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R0010 |
| 200 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R0020 |
| 500 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R0050 |
| <b>Cable with 8 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 50 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C8 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R1005 |
| 100 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R1010 |
| 200 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R1020 |
| 500 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R1050 |

## Connection examples

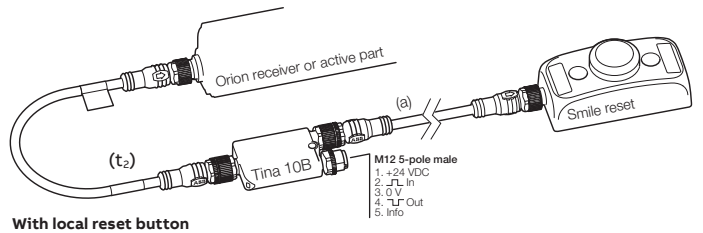
### Orion3 Extended

#### Orion with Tina 10A/C



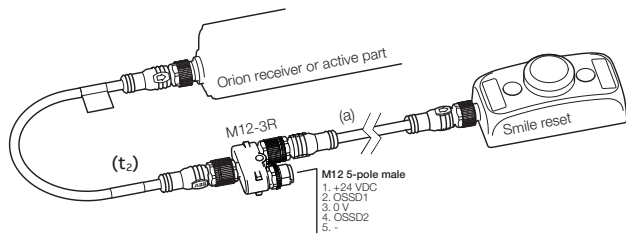
Connection to the ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink signal via Tina 10 A/C. To be used with Vital safety control module or Pluto programmable safety controller.

#### Reset to Orion with Tina 10B



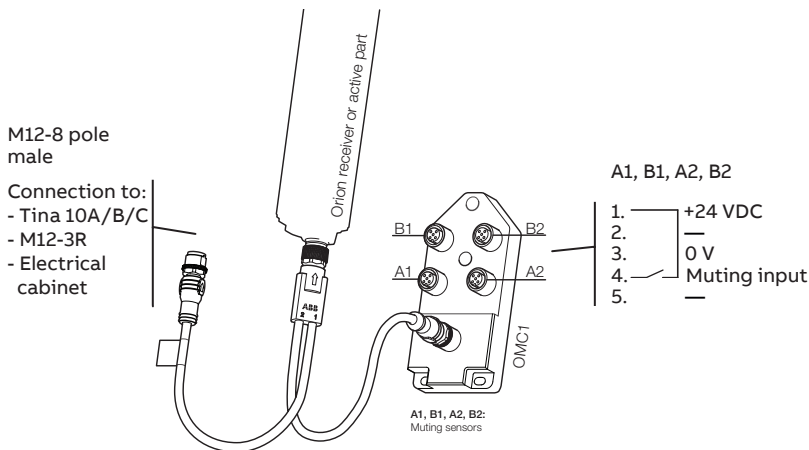
Connection to the ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink signal via Tina 10B. To be used with Vital safety control module or Pluto programmable safety controller.

#### Reset to Orion with M12-3R



Connection of a local reset button via M12-3R.

#### Connection of muting sensors with M12-CYMUTE and OMC1



NB: Cable with M12-5 male + female connectors shall be used between muting sensors and OMC1 inputs A1, B1, A2, B2.



#### Connection diagrams

For Orion3 Extended connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>

## Technical data

### Orion3 Extended

#### Technical data

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Approvals                       |                                       |
| Conformity                      | <b>CE</b><br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>2004/108/EC - EMC<br>EN ISO 13849-1:2008, EN 62061:2005/A1:2013, EN 61496-1:2013, EN 61496-2, EN 61508-1:2010, EN 61508-2:2010, EN 61508-3:2010, EN 61508-4:2010 |
| Functional safety data          |   |
| EN 61508:2010                   | SIL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 8.57 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| EN 62061:2005+A1:2013           | SILCL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 8.57 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| EN ISO 13849-1:2008             | PL e, Cat. 4, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 8.57 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>  |
| Electrical data                 |   |
| Power supply                    | +24 VDC ± 20%   |
| Power consumption, Active unit  | 2.5 W max (without load)  |
| Cable length (for power supply) | 70 m max  |
| Outputs                         | 2 PNP   |
| Short-circuit protection        | 1.4 A at 55 °C  |
| Output current                  | 0.5 A max / output  |
| Output voltage – ON             | Power supply value less 1 V (min)   |
| Output voltage – OFF            | 0.2 V max   |
| Capacitive load                 | 2.2 µF at +24 VDC max   |
| Current for external lamp       | 20 mA min, 250 mA max   |
| Response time                   | K1C-050: 11 ms, others: 12 ms   |
| Connectors                      | M12-4 pole male on transmitter (compatible with M12-5 pole female)  |
| Optical data                    |   |
| Light emission (λ)              | Infrared (860 nm)   |
| Resolution                      | 319.75 - 519.75 mm  |
| Operating distance              | 0.5...8 m except K2C-090: 0.5...6.5 m   |
| Ambient light rejection         | According to IEC-61496-2:2013   |
| Mechanical data                 |   |
| Operating temperature           | 0...+ 55 °C   |
| Storage temperature             | - 25...+ 70 °C  |
| Humidity range                  | 15...95% (no condensation)  |
| Protection class                | IP65 (EN 60529:2000)  |
| Housing material                | Painted aluminium   |
| Lens material                   | PMMA  |
| Cap material                    | PBT Valox 508   |
| Weight                          |   |
| Orion3-4-K1C-050-E              | 1.3 kg  |
| Orion3-4-K2C-080-E              | 1.8 kg  |
| Orion3-4-K2C-090-E              | 2.1 kg  |
| Orion3-4-K2C-120-E              | 2.6 kg  |
| Orion3-4-M1C-050 (passive)      | 1.2 kg  |
| Orion3-4-M2C-080 (passive)      | 1.7 kg  |
| Orion3-4-M2C-090 (passive)      | 1.9 kg  |
| Orion3-4-M2C-120 (passive)      | 2.5 kg  |

#### More information

For more information about the connection accessories, see manual for:  
Orion3 Extended [2TLC172292M0201](#)

#### Connection diagrams

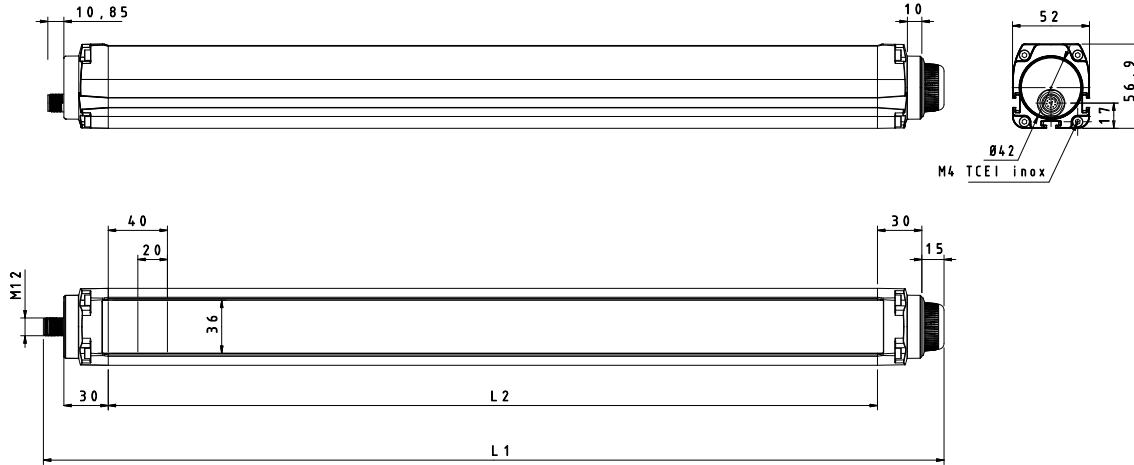
For Orion3 Extended connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>



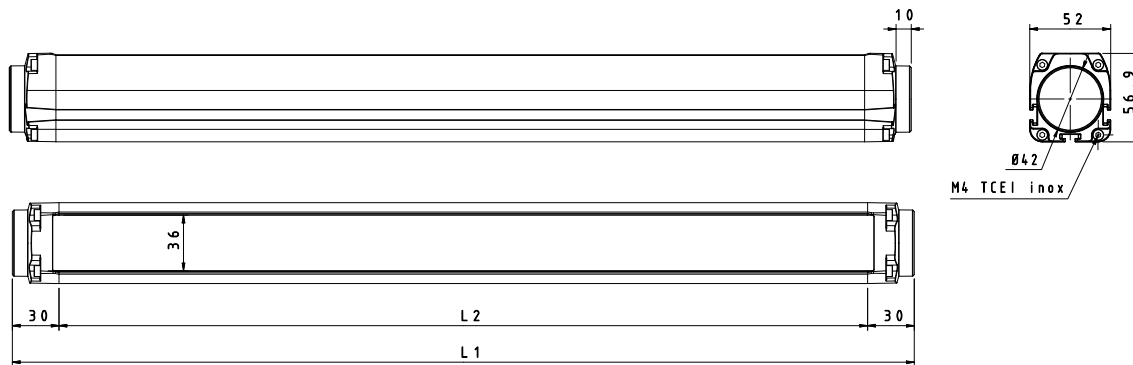
## Dimension drawings

### Orion3 Extended

#### Orion3 Extended



Active part - All dimensions in mm



Passive part - All dimensions in mm

#### Dimensions

| L1<br>mm | L2<br>mm | Type                             |
|----------|----------|----------------------------------|
| 606.4    | 520.5    | Orion3-4-K1C-050-E (active part) |
| 906.4    | 820.5    | Orion3-4-K2C-080-E (active part) |
| 1006.4   | 920.5    | Orion3-4-K2C-090-E (active part) |
| 1306.4   | 1220.5   | Orion3-4-K2C-120-E (active part) |
| 580.5    | 520.5    | Orion3-4-M1C-050 (passive part)  |
| 880.5    | 820.5    | Orion3-4-M2C-080 (passive part)  |
| 980.5    | 920.5    | Orion3-4-M2C-090 (passive part)  |
| 1280.5   | 1220.5   | Orion3-4-M2C-090 (passive part)  |



---




# Sensors and locks



- 4-2      **Introduction and overview**
- 4-6      **Non-contact safety sensor**  
**Eden**
- 4-16     **Safety magnetic switch**  
**Sense**
- 4-20     **Safety interlock switch**  
**MKey**
- 4-28     **Electromagnetic process lock**  
**Magne**
- 4-34     **Safety lock**  
**GKey**

# Introduction and overview

## Selection guide

ABB has a full range of switches for monitoring doors and hatches, both with and without locking function.

|                     | Eden   | Sense   | MKey  |
|---------------------|--|---|---|
| <b>Image</b>        |    |    |                   |
| <b>Function</b>     | Interlock  | Interlock   | Interlock and process/safety lock   |
| <b>Type</b>         | Non-contact switch   | Magnetic non-contact switch   | Mechanical switch   |
| <b>Description</b>  | The original non-contact sensor with unique fault-detection capabilities.  | Coded magnetic switch in stainless steel for harsh environments.  | A classic and well-tried solution.  |
| <b>Applications</b> | Monitoring doors and hatches. Ideal for use in harsh environments. Also for monitoring of end positions of e.g. an overhead crane.   | Monitoring doors and hatches in applications where a stainless steel product is required.   | Monitoring doors and hatches. Also available with safe locking.                                       |
| <b>Advantage</b>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Flexible mounting</li> <li>- M12 connectors</li> <li>- IP69K for harsh environments</li> <li>- One switch to reach Cat. 4</li> <li>- Unique coding to prevent defeat</li> <li>- Local reset minimizes cabling</li> <li>- Non-contact eliminates wear</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Stainless steel</li> <li>- IP69K for harsh environments</li> <li>- Extreme temperature range</li> <li>- Coded sensor</li> <li>- Non-contact eliminates wear</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Holds the door closed</li> <li>- Possible to lock</li> </ul> |

|              | Magne  | GKey   |
|--------------|--|--|
| Image        |                                   |   |
| Function     | Interlock and process lock   | Interlock and safety lock  |
| Type         | Electromagnetic lock   | Mechanical safety lock   |
| Description  | A robust magnetic lock with strong holding force.  | A robust safety lock with die cast housing.  |
| Applications | Locking doors and hatches to prevent interruption of machines with short stopping time e.g. robotics applications. | Safe locking of hinged and sliding doors for machines with a long stopping time.   |
| Advantage    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Robust design</li> <li>- M12 connectors.</li> </ul>                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Safe locking</li> <li>- Robust design</li> <li>- Room to integrate 22 mm pilot devices</li> <li>- Rear escape release</li> <li>- High level coding</li> <li>- Lockout function</li> <li>- Manual unlocking (auxiliary release)</li> </ul> |

## Introduction and overview

### Selection orientation

## The difference between locking and interlocking functions

### Interlocking function

An interlocking function indicates if a door is open or closed. When the door is open the interlocking function also prevents dangerous machine functions, but it does not prevent the door from being opened.



Interlocking function e.g. Eden

### Locking function

A locking function prevents the door from being opened until an unlocking signal has been sent.



Locking function e.g. Magne

### When to use interlocking and locking functions

An interlocking function is required if the dangerous machine functions needs to be stopped when someone enters the dangerous area.

A locking function is required if a user can open a door/hatch and reach the dangerous machine parts before the dangerous machine functions have ceased. It is also required if the process needs to be protected from unwanted stops that would occur if a person could open a door in the middle of a critical stage of the process..

## The difference between a process lock and a safety lock

All locks of the ABB Jokab Safety range can be used as process locks but only GKey and the models of MKey that uses power to unlock can be used as safety locks. Here is why:

A **process lock** protects the process. One example of an application is a lock on a door giving access to a machine with short stopping time, e.g. a welding machine. The door should not be unlocked before the end of the welding cycle. Should the door be unlocked before the end of the cycle (as a consequence of a fault in the installation like a loss of power or a short-circuit) the door could be opened, which would result in a process stop. It might take a long time to restart the process, but no person would have had time to come close to the danger or get injured. Since the lock only protects the process there is no need for a safe locking signal.



Process lock e.g. Magne

A **safety lock** protects people. One example of an application is a lock on a door giving access to a dangerous machine with a long stopping time, e.g. a circular saw. The door should never be unlocked before the dangerous movement has stopped, not even as a consequence of a fault in the installation like a loss of power or a short-circuit. Should the door be unlocked before the machine has stopped, a person could open the door and have time to get close to the dangerous movement and get injured. Since the lock is protecting the person, the unlocking signal should be safe.

Since a loss of power should not unlock a safety lock, only locks that require power to unlock (e.g. +24 VDC) can be used as safety locks.



Safety lock e.g. GKey



# Non-contact safety sensor

## Eden

Eden is a non-contact safety sensor used as interlocking device for e.g. doors and safe position monitoring.

Eden consists of two parts: Adam and Eva. Adam senses the presence of Eva without mechanical contact and therefore without any wear. The compact size of Eden and its 360° mounting possibility make it easy to use in most applications.

Different models of Eden are available for different types of control modules. All Eden models make it very easy to reach PL e, often using fewer components than other solutions.

All Eden models have an IP67/IP69K sealing.



Continuous operation



Affordable range



Easy to install

### Easier troubleshooting

Extensive LED indication and status information reduce downtime.

### Suitable in harsh environments

IP67/IP69K and a temperature range of -40 to +70°C offer an excellent resistance in demanding environments.

### No wear, no mechanical breakage

Non-contact sensing means no mechanical wear and the large sensing tolerance gives a better tolerance to vibrations, resulting in fewer unwanted process stops.

### Local reset function

The integrated reset function reduces the number of cables and PLC inputs.

### PL e with fewer components

Series connection with PL e, local reset and DYNlink signal allow to considerably reduce the number of components needed to reach PL e.

### Large mounting tolerance

A 360° mounting possibility with generous tolerances facilitates mounting.

### Fast connection

M12 connectors, local reset and accessories speed up installation.



---

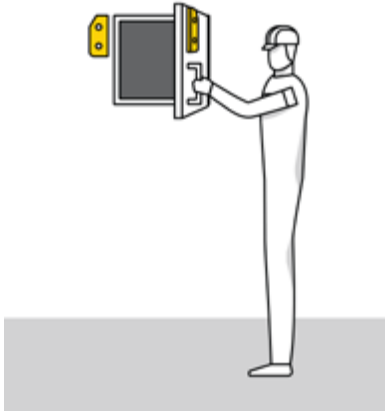
## Applications

Eden

### Applications

#### Doors and hatches

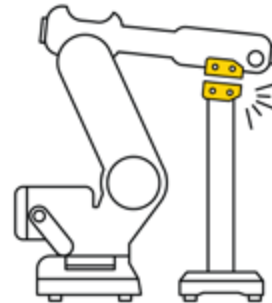
Eden monitors whether the hatch is open or closed. The dangerous movement is stopped as soon as the hatch is opened.



#### Position control

Eden can be used to monitor the position of a machine when someone is in the work area. This can be useful when removing power to the machine causes problems like a long restart time.

As long as the machine remains in the safe position monitored by Eden, a person can be allowed to enter the hazardous area even though the machine is still powered. If the machine leaves the safe position while the person is still in the hazardous area, power is removed from the machine.



## Features

### Eden

#### Features

##### Easy PL e with Eden safety sensor

- Eden sensors can be connected in series while maintaining Cat. 4.
- Only one Eden per guard is necessary to reach PL e (instead of two key switches).
- Eden reaches PL e without any need for periodic checks (see ISO/TR 24119).



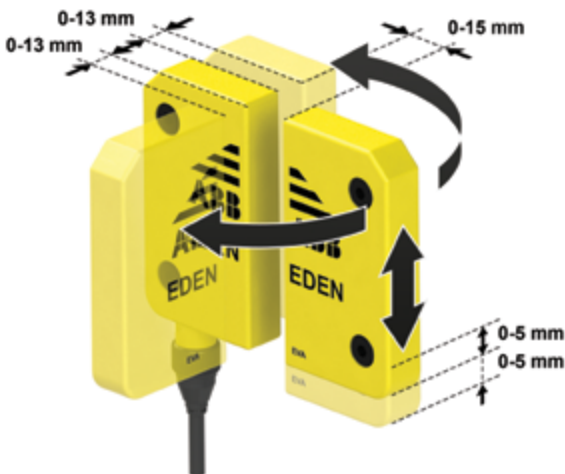
##### Low or high level coded sensor

Eva is available with General code or Unique code. If a new Adam is paired with an Eva general code at start up, Adam will accept all Eva with general code as a valid actuator. Eden will then classify as a low level coded sensor.

If a new Adam is paired with an Eva Unique code at startup, Adam will only accept this specific Eva as a valid actuator. In this case Eden is classified as a high level coded sensor. A high level coded sensor should be used when the motivation to defeat a sensor cannot be eliminated (see EN ISO 14119:2013).

##### 360° mounting possibility

Eden offers 360° mounting possibility with generous tolerances.



##### Local reset button

A local reset button with integrated LED can be connected directly to Adam Reset instead of to the safety control module. In this way, each Eden can easily have its own reset button, which saves cable length and safety relays/PLC inputs. Adam Reset monitors the reset function and manages the LED in the reset button in the following way:

- on** - Adam and Eva are not in contact
- flashing** - Adam and Eva in contact, waiting for reset
- off** - Adam and Eva in contact and reset

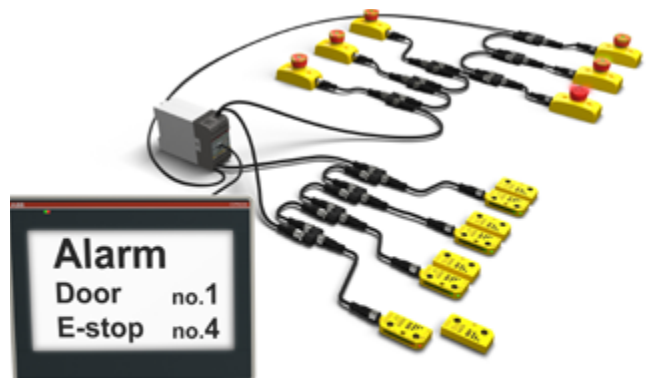
##### Info signal and extensive indication facilitate troubleshooting

All Eden models offer extensive LED indication to help troubleshooting and localizing which doors/hatches are opened. The LED on Adam lights in green or red depending on status:

- green** - valid Eva within range
- red** - valid Eva out of range
- flashing red/green** - valid Eva within range, but no valid safety signal received (loop broken “upstream”)

##### Simple status information with StatusBus

StatusBus is a simple and cost effective way to collect the status information of safety sensors. The StatusBus functionality is available with some DYNlink devices and allows to collect the status of each individual safety device, even when connected in series. A single input on Pluto safety PLC can collect the status of up to 30 safety devices. The devices are connected using standard cable and M12-5 connectors. No specific bus cable or extra communication module is necessary.



## Models

### Eden

#### Models

##### Eden DYN

Eden DYN consists of an Adam DYN and an Eva (general or unique code).

Adam DYN uses the ABB Jokab Safety DYNlink signal that allows to connect several safety products in series while maintaining PL e using only one channel. DYNlink signals must be used with Vital safety controller or Pluto safety PLC.

Up to 30 Adam DYN can be connected in series to Vital and up to 10 Adam DYN can be connected in series to one input of Pluto.

All products using the DYNlink signal can easily be connected in series and mixed in the same loop with a maintained PL e. Tina adapters allow to use other products in a DYNlink loop, and a wide range of connection accessories simplifies the cabling.



Eden DYN

##### Eden OSSD

Eden OSSD consists of an Adam OSSD and an Eva (general or unique code).

Adam OSSD can be used with all safety relays and safety PLCs compatible with OSSD signals (commonly used for light guards). Up to 30 Adam OSSD can be connected in series, and since OSSD devices monitor their own outputs for short circuits, a Cat. 4/PL e can still be reached.



Eden OSSD

## Ordering information

### Eden



2TLC010045V0201

Adam DYN-Info M12-5

#### Adam

| Type of safety controller                | StatusBus | Info signal     | Local reset | Series connection | Connector male | Type                  | Order code      |
|--|-----------|-----------------|-------------|-------------------|----------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| Pluto                                    | x         | x <sup>1)</sup> |             | x                 | M12-5          | Adam DYN-Status M12-5 | 2TLA020051R5200 |
| Pluto or Vital                           |           | x               |             | x                 | M12-5          | Adam DYN-Info M12-5   | 2TLA020051R5100 |
|  |           |                 | x           | x                 | M12-5          | Adam DYN-Reset M12-5  | 2TLA020051R5300 |
| OSSD compatible (incl. Pluto and Sentry) |           | x               |             |                   | M12-5          | Adam OSSD-Info M12-5  | 2TLA020051R5400 |
|  |           |                 | x           | x                 | M12-8          | Adam OSSD-Info M12-8  | 2TLA020051R5700 |
|  |           |                 |             | x                 | M12-5          | Adam OSSD-Reset M12-5 | 2TLA020051R5600 |
|  |           |                 | x           | x                 | M12-8          | Adam OSSD-Reset M12-8 | 2TLA020051R5900 |

1) Pin 5 can be used as a standard info signal or StatusBus.

#### Eva

| Code description                       | Code level | Type             | Order code      |
|--|------------|------------------|-----------------|
| General code. (Eva is interchangeable) | Low level  | Eva General code | 2TLA020046R0800 |
| Unique code. (Prevents defeat/fraud)   | High level | Eva Unique code  | 2TLA020046R0900 |

#### Accessories

| Description   | Type              | Order code      |
|---|-------------------|-----------------|
| Mounting plate for conventional door/hatch and folding door. Two pieces are needed for a complete set.                                  | JSM D4H           | 2TLA040033R3600 |
| Mounting plate for folding doors. Used together with one piece of JSM D4H.  | JSM D4J           | 2TLA042020R4000 |
| Sliding lock for Eden on conventional doors. (Eden is not included.)  | JSM D20           | 2TLA020302R1000 |
| Mounting converting plate from Eden E to Eden OSSD or Eden DYN  | DA 3A             | 2TLA020053R0600 |
| Heat shrinking tubes for M12 connectors. Protects M12 connectors in harsh environments and provides extra protection against tampering. | M12 Safety seal   | 2TLA020053R0800 |
| Wrench for tightening of M12 connectors according to specified torque: 0.6 Nm.  | M12 Torque wrench | 2TLA020053R0900 |
| Handheld terminal for addressing, configuration and testing of StatusBus devices, DYN-link devices and conventional PNP devices.        | FIXA              | 2TLA020072R2000 |

#### Spare parts (included with main product on delivery)

| Description  | Type  | Order code      |
|--|-------|-----------------|
| Distance plate in yellow PBT (4 pcs).                                      | DA 1B | 2TLA020053R0700 |
| Black distance rings to be mounted in Adam and Eva mounting holes (4 pcs). | DA 2B | 2TLA020053R0300 |

#### Reset buttons for local reset

| Description                       | Type       | Order code      |
|-----------------------------------|------------|-----------------|
| Reset button for Adam with 5 pins | Smile 12RF | 2TLA030053R2600 |
| Reset button for Adam with 8 pins | Smile 12RG | 2TLA030053R2700 |



2TLC010040F0201

JSM D20 Eden slide lock



2TLC010040F0201

FIXA



2TLC12727F0201

Distance plate



2TLC12727F0201

Smile 12RG Reset button

## Cables and connectors

### Eden



M12-C61

2TLC12951F0201



M12-C61HE

2TLC010009F0201



M12-C334

2TLC12931F0201



M12-C01

2TLC12657F0201



C5 cable

2TLC010038F0201

#### Cable with connectors

| Connector | Female/male   | Length | Special feature                 | Type            | Order code      |
|-----------|---------------|--------|---------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| M12-5     | Female        | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C31         | 2TLA020056R0500 |
|           |               | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C61         | 2TLA020056R0000 |
|           |               | 10 m   | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C61HE       | 2TLA020056R8000 |
|           |               | 20 m   |                                 | M12-C101        | 2TLA020056R1000 |
|           |               | 20 m   | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C101HE      | 2TLA020056R8100 |
|           |               | 20 m   |                                 | M12-C201        | 2TLA020056R1400 |
|           | Female + male | 0.3 m  |                                 | M12-C0312       | 2TLA020056R5800 |
|           |               | 0.06 m |                                 | M12-C00612      | 2TLA020056R6300 |
|           |               | 1 m    |                                 | M12-C112        | 2TLA020056R2000 |
|           |               | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C312        | 2TLA020056R2100 |
|           |               | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C612        | 2TLA020056R2200 |
|           |               | 10 m   |                                 | M12-C1012       | 2TLA020056R2300 |
|           |               | 16 m   | Angled female connector         | M12-C1012V2     | 2TLA020056R6700 |
|           |               | 20 m   |                                 | M12-C1612       | 2TLA020056R5400 |
| Male      | 6 m           |        | M12-C62                         | 2TLA020056R0200 |                 |
|           | 10 m          |        | M12-C102                        | 2TLA020056R1200 |                 |
| M12-8     | Female        | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C63         | 2TLA020056R3000 |
|           |               | 10 m   |                                 | M12-C103        | 2TLA020056R4000 |
|           |               | 20 m   |                                 | M12-C203        | 2TLA020056R4100 |
|           | Female + male | 0.06 m |                                 | M12-C00634      | 2TLA020056R6400 |
|           |               | 1 m    |                                 | M12-C134        | 2TLA020056R5000 |
|           |               | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C334        | 2TLA020056R5100 |

#### Separate cables and connectors

| Description                                   | Type           | Order code      |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>Connectors</b>                             |                |                 |
| M12-5 pole female, straight                   | M12-C01        | 2TLA020055R1000 |
| M12-5 pole male, straight                     | M12-C02        | 2TLA020055R1100 |
| M12-8 pole female, straight                   | M12-C03        | 2TLA020055R1600 |
| M12-8 pole male, straight                     | M12-C04        | 2TLA020055R1700 |
| <b>Cable with 5 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 10 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 10 m  | 2TLA020057R0001 |
| 50 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R0005 |
| 100 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R0010 |
| 200 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R0020 |
| 500 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R0050 |
| <b>Cable with 8 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 50 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C8 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R1005 |
| 100 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R1010 |
| 200 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R1020 |
| 500 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R1050 |

## Connection Accessories

### Eden



2TLA020053R7100

**JSOP-2 Terminator**




#### Connection accessories

| Description  | Type              | Order code      |
|--|-------------------|-----------------|
| Y-connector for series connection of DYNlink devices with M12-5 connectors, e.g. Eden. | M12-3A            | 2TLA020055R0000 |
| Y-connector for series connection of DYNlink devices with the StatusBus function.      | M12-3S            | 2TLA020055R0600 |
| Y-connector for series connection of Adam OSSD M12-8 with M12-8 cables                 | M12-3G            | 2TLA020055R0700 |
| Y-connector for series connection of Adam OSSD M12-8 with M12-5 cables                 | M12-3H            | 2TLA020055R0800 |
| Termination plug M12-5. For Adam OSSD with M12-3H. Connects pin 1 with pin 2 and 4.    | JSOP-1 Terminator | 2TLA020053R7000 |
| Termination plug M12-8. For Adam OSSD with M12-3G. Connects pin 2 with pin 3 and 4.    | JSOP-2 Terminator | 2TLA020053R7100 |

## Technical data

### Eden

#### Technical data

|   | Eden DYN  | Eden OSSD   |
|---|---|---|
| <b>Approvals</b>                              |    |   |
| <b>Conformity</b>                             | <br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>2014/30/EU - EMC<br>2011/65/EU - RoHS<br><br>EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13849-1:2015,<br>EN 62061:2005/A2:2015, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009, EN 60664-1:2007, EN 61000-6-2:2005, EN 61000-6-4:2007, EN 60947-5-3:2013, EN ISO 14119:2013, EN 61508:2010 | EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13849-1:2015, EN 62061:2005/A2:2015,<br>EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009,<br>EN 60664-1:2007, EN 61000-6-2:2005, EN 61000-6-4:2007, EN 60947-5-3:2013,<br>EN ISO 14119:2013, EN 61508:2010 |
| <b>Functional safety data</b>                 |   |   |
| EN/IEC 61508:2010                             | SIL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 4.5 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>   | SIL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 4.5 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>   |
| EN/IEC 62061:2005+A1:2013                     | SILCL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 4.5 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>   | SILCL3, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 4.5 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>   |
| EN ISO 13849-1:2008                           | PL e, Cat. 4, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 4.5 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>   | PL e, Cat. 4, PFH <sub>D</sub> = 4.5 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>   |
| <b>Electrical data</b>                        | +24 VDC<br>Tolerance: +14.4...+27.6 VDC   | +24 VDC<br>Tolerance: +14.4...+27.6 VDC   |
| <b>Mechanical data</b>                        |   |   |
| Operating temperature                         | -40 °C...+70 °C (storage/operation)   | -40 °C...+70 °C (storage/operation)   |
| Protection class                              | IP67 and IP69K  |   |
| Humidity range                                | 35 to 85% (no icing, no condensation)   |   |
| <b>Material</b>                               |   |   |
| Housing                                       | Polybutylene terephthalate (PBT)  |   |
| Moulding                                      | Epoxy   |   |
| Weight  | Eva: 70 g, Adam: 80 g   |   |
| Assured release distance (S <sub>ar</sub> )   | 25 mm   | 25 mm   |
| Assured operating distance (S <sub>ao</sub> ) | 10 mm   | 10 mm   |
| Rated operating distance (S <sub>n</sub> )    | 15 ± 2mm  |   |
| Recommended distance between Adam and Eva     | 7 mm  |   |
| Min distance between two Eden                 | 100 mm  |   |

#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for:

Eden DYN [2TLC172271M0201](#)

Eden OSSD [2TLC172272M0201](#)

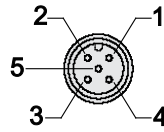
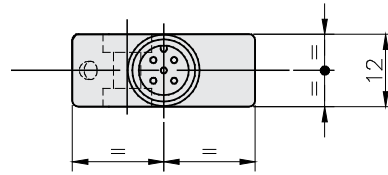
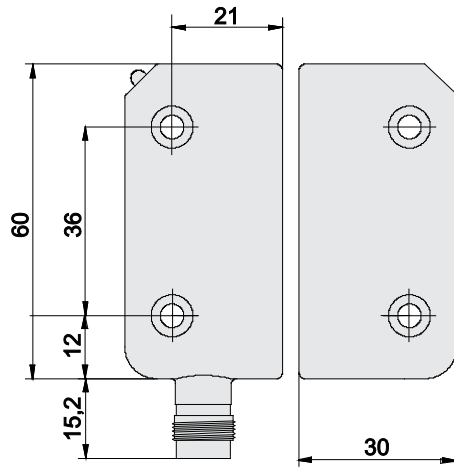
#### Connection diagrams

For Eden connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>

## Dimension drawings

Eden

### Dimension drawings



Adam M12-5 male connector.  
(Note that some models have 8 pins instead.)

All dimensions in mm





# Safety magnetic switch

## Sense7

Sense7 is a coded magnetic non-contact switch for interlocking gates and hatches.

Sense7 has a stainless steel housing that is designed for harsh environments and extreme temperatures.

Sense7 offers an interlocking function reaching PL e/SIL3 with low level coding.



### Safety and protection

#### High safety level

Sense7 has two closing and one opening solid state contacts. Two of these needs to be monitored to achieve PL e/SIL3.

#### LED indication

An integrated LED shows the status of the sensor.



### Easy to install

#### Compact size

Sense7 is compact in size to make it easy to position and hide on gates and hatches.

#### Large sensing distance

With a large sensing distance and a high tolerance for misalignment Sense7 is easy to install.



### Reliable in extreme conditions

#### Stainless steel

With a stainless steel 316 body and a IP67/IP69K rating, Sense7 is resistant to harsh environments with both dirt and water.

#### Hygienic design

Sense7 has no dust collecting cavities, and the stainless steel has a mirror polished finish (Ra4) suitable for CIP cleaning - food splash zones according to EHEDG guidelines.

#### High temperatures

Sense7 can be used at temperatures from -25 °C up to 105 °C.

## Ordering details

### Sense7



Sense7Z 2M



Sense7Z Key SS

#### Ordering details

Sense7 is always delivered with both switch and actuator.

| Description            | Connector  | Cable length (m) | Contacts | Type        | Order code      |
|------------------------|------------|------------------|----------|-------------|-----------------|
| Safety magnetic switch | M12-8 male | 0,25             | 2NC+1NO  | Sense7Z M12 | 2TLA050056R2120 |
| Safety magnetic switch | -          | 2                | 2NC+1NO  | Sense7Z 2M  | 2TLA050056R4120 |
| Safety magnetic switch | -          | 5                | 2NC+1NO  | Sense7Z 5M  | 2TLA050056R5120 |
| Safety magnetic switch | -          | 10               | 2NC+1NO  | Sense7Z 10M | 2TLA050056R6120 |

#### Spare part

| Type of handle   | Type           | Order code      |
|--|----------------|-----------------|
| Actuator to safety magnetic switch Sense7Z, stainless steel. | Sense7Z Key SS | 2TLA050040R0212 |

## Technical data

### Sense7

#### Technical data

##### Approvals



##### Conformity



2006/42/EC  
2014/30/EU  
2011/65/EU  
EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 14119:2013, EN ISO 13849-1:2008+AC:2009, EN 60947-5-3:1999+A1:2005, EN 60947-5-2:1998+A1:1999+A2:2004

##### Functional safety data

|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <b>EN/IEC 61508:2010</b>         | Up to SIL3 (depending on system architecture)<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.52 x 10 <sup>-8</sup>   |
| <b>EN/IEC 62061:2005+A1:2013</b> | Up to SILCL3 (depending on system architecture)<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.52 x 10 <sup>-8</sup><br>Proof test interval T <sub>1</sub> = 47 a<br>MTTF <sub>d</sub> = 470 a (8 cycles per hour/24 hours per day/365 days)<br>B <sub>10d</sub> = 3 300 000 operations at 100 mA load |
| <b>EN ISO 13849-1:2008</b>       | Up to PL e, Cat 4 (depending on system architecture)<br>PFH <sub>D</sub> = 2.52 x 10 <sup>-8</sup>  |

If the product usage differs from these assumptions (different load, operating frequency, etc.) the values must be adjusted accordingly.

##### Electrical data

|                                      |                          |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>Operating voltage</b>             | +24 VDC ± 10%            |
| <b>Minimum switched current</b>      | 10 VDC 1 mA              |
| <b>Safety channel output (NC/NO)</b> | 24 VDC 0.2 A max. rating |

##### Mechanical data

|  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| <b>Material</b>                                    | Stainless steel 316 |
| <b>Protection class</b>                            | IP67 and IP69K      |
| <b>Operating temperature</b>                       | -25 °C ... + 105 °C |
| <b>Cable type</b>                                  | PVC 8 core 6 mm     |
| <b>Mounting bolts (tightening torque)</b>          | 2 x M4 (1.0 Nm)     |
| <b>Assured release distance (S<sub>ar</sub>)</b>   | 10 mm               |
| <b>Assured operating distance (S<sub>or</sub>)</b> | 20 mm               |
| <b>Recommended distance</b>                        | 5 mm                |

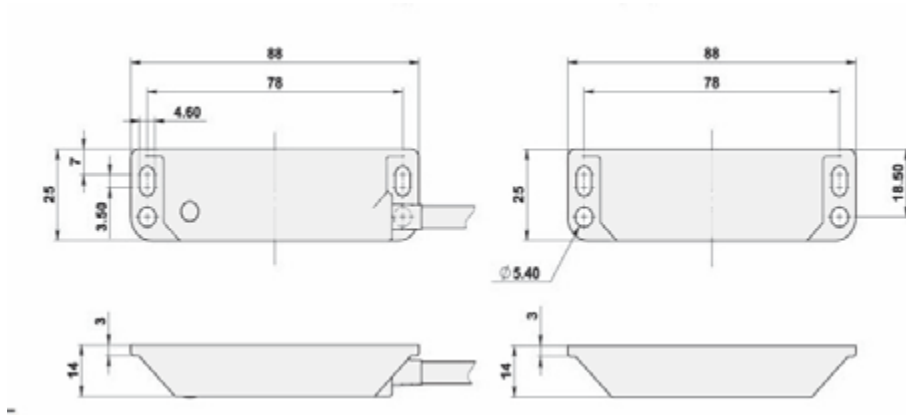
##### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual:  
Sense [2TLC172249M0201](#)

## Dimension drawings

### Sense7

#### Dimensions - Sense7Z



All dimensions in mm

# Safety interlock switch

## MKey

MKey are mechanical safety switches used for monitoring doors and hatches. The switch is mounted on the frame and the actuator key on the moving part of the guard.

All MKey models have a safe interlocking function. Some MKey models can be locked and depending on the locking signal they can be used either as process locks or safety locks (with a safe unlocking function).

MKey switches are available in different material and sizes in order to meet the requirements of different applications.



Safety and protection

### Highest level of safety

PL e/SIL3 can be reached when using two switches on a door.

### Safety lock

Models that use power to unlock can be used as safety locks.

### Emergency escape button

Using MKey8ER with an integrated emergency escape button, it is always possible to open the door from inside the dangerous zone.



Continuous operation

### Strong holding force

A holding force of up to 2000 N prevents unwanted process stops.

### Robust design

Models are available with full stainless steel housing with IP69K, suitable for most applications in food processing and chemical industries.

### Status information

Auxiliary contacts give status information.



Easy to install

### Easy mounting with rotating head

The head of the switch can be mounted in up to 8 actuating positions to allow different mounting positions.

### Flexible keys

Flexible keys are available to minimize mechanical wear and allow a smaller movement radius and use in reduced spaces.

## Applications

### MKey

#### Doors and hatches

MKey is used to monitor the position of doors and hatches.

The models with locking function are usually used for:

- Processes which should not be interrupted, such as welding.
- Machinery with a long stopping procedure, such as paper machinery that requires a long braking operation.
- Prevention of unauthorized access to a particular area.

Please note that all safety key switches (including MKey) normally need two switches per door/hatch in order to reach PL e/SIL3. (See EN ISO 13849 and EN ISO 14119.)



#### Locking and interlocking

An interlocking function indicates if a door is open or closed and prevents movement when the door is open, but it does not prevent the door from being opened. A locking function makes sure the door is kept closed.

#### Process lock with safe interlocking

All MKey models offer a safe interlocking function that will stop the process if the door/hatch is opened. All lockable models of MKey can also be used as a process lock to prevent the process from being interrupted.

An example of an application where a process lock could be used is a welding robot where the stopping time is short, but the welding should not be interrupted once it has started.

#### Safety lock with safe interlocking and safe unlocking

The MKey models that uses power to unlock can be used as safety locks. They have a safe unlocking function, which means that the loss of power for these locks will not result in the release of the locking element, and the door will remain locked even during a power failure.

An example of an application where a safety lock should be used is a circular saw that would have a long stopping time after a power failure.

## Features

### MKey

#### Different models

MKey5 are simple mechanical interlocks while MKey8 and MKey9 also have locking functions.

- MKey5: plastic body with plastic or stainless steel head, or full stainless steel body and head. Holding force 12 N or 40 N.
- MKey8: robust design in die cast metal or stainless steel body and head. Holding force of 2000 N.
- MKey9: plastic body with stainless steel head. Holding force of 1800 N.

#### Different materials and protection classes

The housing and head of the key switches are available in different material in order to meet the requirements of different applications. Metal heads are more resistant to mechanical wear. The choice between plastic, die cast or stainless steel depends on the environment and the chemicals used. Models ending with -Z are completely made of stainless steel 316 and offers an IP69K protection class. They can be high pressure hosed with detergent at high temperature and can be used in harsh applications, e.g. the food processing and chemical industries. All other models offer IP67.

#### Emergency escape button

MKey8ER has a manual release button at the rear of the housing. It is used for emergency exit by a person locked inside the dangerous zone by mistake. It is a non-latching manual escape, and can be used when the risk assessment requires it. The switch must be mounted so that the release button is reachable from inside the dangerous zone, but not reachable from outside. Pressing and holding the button will release the locking mechanism allowing to open the door/guard.



#### Power to lock or power to unlock

Two different types of locking function are available:

- Spring lock (power to unlock) models are automatically locked when closing the door. An active signal (+24 VDC) must be supplied to unlock the switch, which makes these models suitable as safe locks.
- Electro-magnetic lock (power to lock) models are locked when an active signal (+24 VDC) is supplied, which makes these models suitable only as process locks.

#### Rotatable head

Depending on model, the head of MKey can be set in two or four directions with two entrance holes each, thus providing four or eight different mounting positions. The leading edges of the actuator key are reinforced and beveled in order to guide it properly into the hole.



#### Constructed for safety

All MKey switches have double positively operated forced-guided contacts controlled by the actuator key. This means that the contacts that are closed when the actuator key is in the switch will be forced to open, and the ones that are opened will be forced to close, when the actuator key is removed. It also means that it is not possible to have, e.g. NO and NC contacts opened at the same time due to a fault like one welded contact.

The actuator key is designed to prevent tampering with the safety switch using a tool, a magnet or any similar object. The lockable models also have forced-guided contacts controlled by the locking mechanism.

MKey8 and MKey9 have auxiliary contacts giving status information (not MKey5, MKey8M or MKey9M).



## Ordering information

### MKey



2TLCT2403F0201

**MKey5**



2TLCT2405F0201

**MKey5 SSH**



2TLCT2503F0201

**MKey5Z**



2TLCT2423F0201

**MKey9**



2TLCT2417F0201

**MKey8ER**



2TLCT2415F0201

**MKey8Z**

### MKey ordering information

| Locking function              | Material housing | Material head   | Holding force | Special feature            | Type                | Order code      |
|-------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| —                             | Plastic          | Plastic         | 12 N          |                            | MKey5               | 2TLA050003R0100 |
|                               |                  |                 | 40 N          |                            | MKey5+              | 2TLA050003R0101 |
|                               | Stainless steel  | Stainless steel | 12 N          |                            | MKey5 SSH           | 2TLA050003R0110 |
|                               |                  |                 | 40 N          |                            | MKey5+ SSH          | 2TLA050003R0111 |
|                               | Stainless steel  | Stainless steel | 12 N          | IP69K                      | MKey5Z              | 2TLA050003R0120 |
|                               |                  |                 | 40 N          | IP69K                      | MKey5+Z             | 2TLA050003R0121 |
| Process lock (power to lock)  | Plastic          | Stainless steel | 1800 N        |                            | MKey9M 24VDC        | 2TLA050009R0112 |
|                               | Die cast         | Die cast        | 2000 N        |                            | MKey8M 24VDC        | 2TLA050013R0132 |
| Safety lock (power to unlock) | Plastic          | Stainless steel | 1800 N        |                            | MKey9 24VDC         | 2TLA050007R0112 |
|                               |                  |                 |               | No key supplied            | MKey9 24VDC, No Key | 2TLA050007R0012 |
|                               | Die cast         | Die cast        | 2000 N        |                            | MKey8 24VDC         | 2TLA050011R0132 |
|                               |                  |                 |               | With escape release button | MKey8ER 24VDC       | 2TLA050015R0132 |
| Stainless steel               | Stainless steel  | 2000 N          | IP69K         | MKey8Z 24VDC               | 2TLA050011R0122     |                 |

## Accessories

### MKey



MKey Key 2

2TLA050040R0201



MKey Key 3

2TLA050040R0201



MKey Key 4

2TLA050040R0201



MKey Key 6



MKey slide lock left



MKey slide lock right

#### Actuator keys

All MKey safety switches are supplied with the appropriate standard key, except MKey9 24VDC, No key. Choose standard key or flat key depending on suitable mounting direction, e.g. standard door or sliding door. Flexible keys are suitable for doors/hatches with a smaller opening radius (i.e. 100-175 mm).

| Type of key  | Compatible MKey models   | Key housing     | Description   | Type       | Order code      |
|--------------|--|-----------------|---|------------|-----------------|
| Standard key | MKey5<br>MKey5+  | None            | Standard key for MKey safety switches with plastic head. Stainless steel key.                 | MKey Key 1 | 2TLA050040R0201 |
|              | MKey5 SSH<br>MKey5+ SSH<br>MKey5Z<br>MKey5+Z<br>All MKey8<br>All MKey9 | None            | Standard key for MKey safety switches with metal head. Stainless steel key.                   | MKey Key 2 | 2TLA050040R0202 |
| Flat key     | All  | Plastic shroud  | Flat key for MKey safety switches. Stainless steel key with plastic shroud.                   | MKey Key 3 | 2TLA050040R0220 |
| Flexible key | All MKey5  | Plastic         | Flexible key for MKey5 safety switches. Stainless steel key with plastic housing.             | MKey Key 4 | 2TLA050040R0221 |
|              | All  | Die cast        | Flexible key for MKey safety switches. Stainless steel key with black die cast metal housing. | MKey Key 5 | 2TLA050040R0203 |
|              | All  | Stainless steel | Flexible key for MKey safety switches. Stainless steel key with stainless steel housing.      | MKey Key 6 | 2TLA050040R0204 |



#### Other accessories

| Description   | Type                  | Order code      |
|---|-----------------------|-----------------|
| Bit for manual unlocking of MKey8Z. Stainless steel.  | MKey8Z Manual release | 2TLA050040R0400 |
| Maintenance lockout actuator key. Compatible with all MKey switches.                        | MKey Lockout key      | 2TLA050040R0401 |
| Slide Lock for MKey8 and MKey9, left.   | MKey slide lock left  | 2TLA050040R0500 |
| Slide Lock for MKey8 and MKey9, right.  | MKey slide lock right | 2TLA050040R0501 |
| Fitting in stainless steel for mounting MKey5 on a Quick-Guard conventional door.           | JSM D29A              | 2TLA040033R6000 |
| Fitting in stainless steel for mounting MKey5 on a Quick-Guard sliding door.                | JSM D29B              | 2TLA040033R6100 |
| Fitting in stainless steel for mounting MKey8 and MKey9 on a Quick-Guard conventional door. | JSM D29C              | 2TLA040033R6200 |
| Fitting in stainless steel for mounting MKey8 and MKey9 on a Quick-Guard sliding door.      | JSM D29D              | 2TLA040033R6300 |
| Spacer in stainless steel for flexible keys. Required when using JSM D29A and JSM D29C.     | JSM D29E              | 2TLA040033R6400 |
| Rear handle for sliding doors.  | RHS GKey MKey         | 2TLA050040R0510 |
| Spring loaded catch for sliding doors.  | SCS GKey MKey         | 2TLA050040R0511 |

## Technical data

### MKey

#### Technical data

|   | MKey5  | MKey8  | MKey9   |
|---|--|--|---|
| <b>Approvals</b>  |   |  |   |
| <b>Conformity</b>   | <br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>2014/30/EU - EMC<br>2011/65/EU - RoHS<br>EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 14119:2013, EN 60204-1:2006:+A1:2009, EN 60947-1:2007:+A1:2011, EN 60947-5-1:2004:+A1:2009 |  |   |
| <b>Functional safety data</b>                                   |  |  |   |
| <b>B<sub>10d</sub></b>  | 2,500,000 operations at 100 mA load  |  |   |
| <b>EN/IEC 62061</b>   | Up to SILCL3 (depending on system architecture) <sup>1)</sup>  |  |   |
| <b>EN ISO 13849-1</b>   | Up to PL e (depending on system architecture) <sup>1)</sup>  |  |   |
| <b>Electrical data</b>  |  |  |   |
| <b>Contact block configuration with guard open and unlocked</b> |  |  |   |
| <b>For actuator key</b>   | 2 NO + 1 NC  | MKey8, MKey8Z, MKey8ER: 2 NO + 1 NC<br>MKey8M: 1 NO + 1 NC                     | MKey9: 2 NO + 1 NC <sup>2)</sup><br>1 NO + 1 NC           |
| <b>For solenoid/locking</b>                                     | -  | MKey8, MKey8Z, MKey8ER: 2NO + 1NC<br>MKey8M: 2 NO                              | MKey9: 2 NO + 1 NC <sup>2)</sup><br>MKey9M: 2 NO          |
| <b>Solenoid voltage</b>   | -  | +24 VDC ± 10%  | +24 VDC ± 10%   |
| <b>DC-13</b>  | +24 VDC / 3 A  |  |   |
| <b>AC-15</b>  | 230 VAC / 3 A  |  |   |
| <b>Mechanical data</b>  |  |  |   |
| <b>Travel for positive opening</b>                              | 6 mm   | 10 mm  | 10 mm   |
| <b>Actuator key entry minimum radius</b>                        | 175 mm Standard Key, 100 mm Flexible Key   |  |   |
| <b>Material</b>   | Body: Polyester or stainless steel 316<br>Head: Polyester or stainless steel 316   | MKey8, MKey8M, MKey8ER:<br>Die cast painted red<br>MKey8Z: Stainless steel 316 | Body: Glass filled polyester<br>Head: Stainless steel 316 |
| <b>Conduit entries</b>  | 3 x M20 x 1.5  | 3 x M20 x 1.5  | 1 x M20 x 1.5   |
| <b>Operating temperature</b>                                    | -25...+80 °C   | -25...+40 °C   | -25...+40 °C  |
| <b>Protection class</b>   | MKey5, MKey5+, MKey5 SSH, MKey5+<br>SSH: IP67<br>MKey5Z, MKey5+Z: IP67, IP69K  | MKey8, MKey8M, MKey8ER: IP67<br>MKey8Z: IP67, IP69K                            | IP67  |

1) Please see EN/IEC 62061, EN ISO 13849, EN ISO 14119 and ISO/TR 24119 to see how fault exclusions and serial connection impacts the reliability of the safety related parts of control systems.

2) For MKey9, the pair of contacts for the actuator key and the pair of contacts for the locking cannot be used independently of each other. See the manual for more information.

#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual:

MKey5 [2TLC172244M0201](#)

MKey8 [2TLC172245M0201](#)

MKey9 [2TLC172246M0201](#)

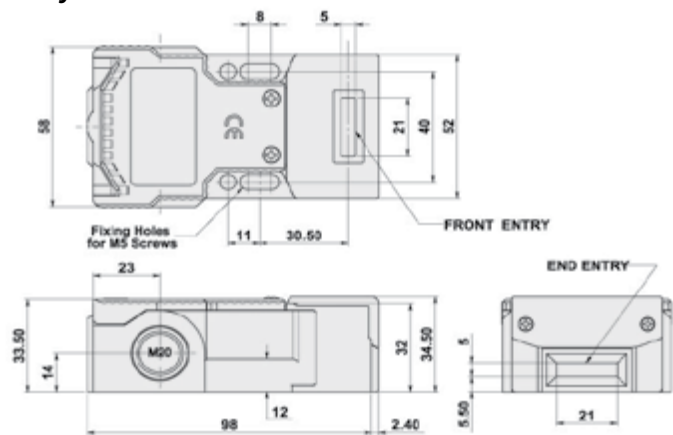
#### Connection diagrams

For MKey connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>

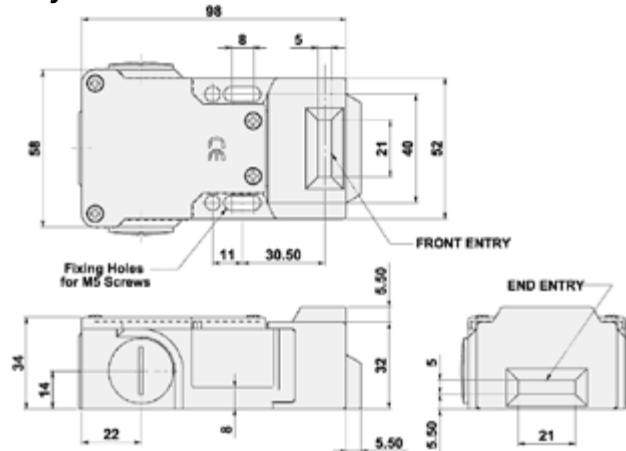
## Dimension drawings

### MKey

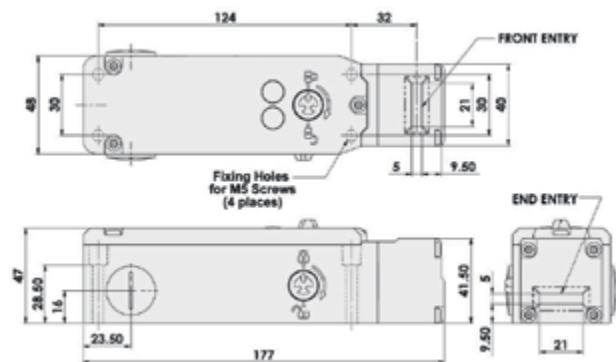
#### MKey5



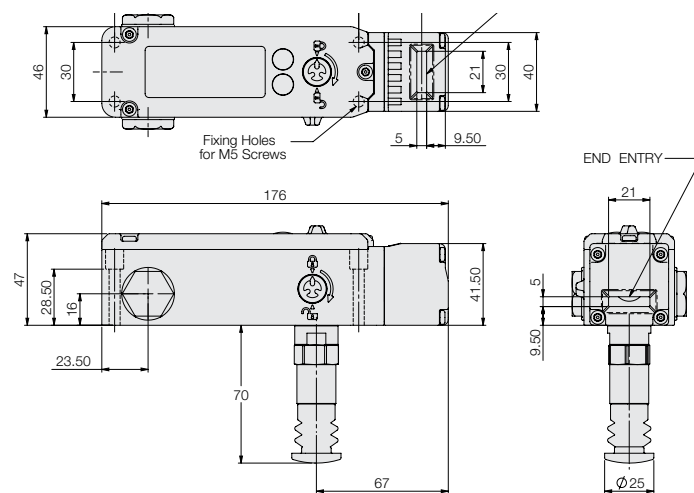
#### MKey5Z



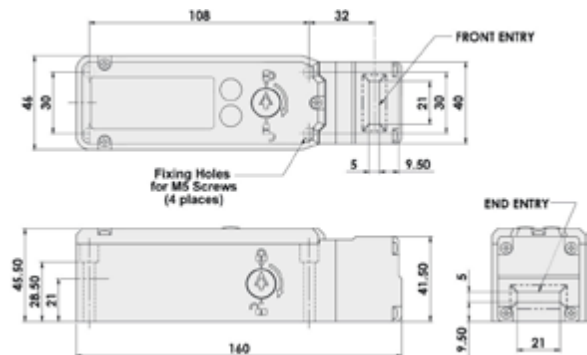
#### MKey8 and MKey8M



#### MKey8ER



#### MKey9 and MKey9M



All dimensions in mm



# Electromagnetic process lock

## Magne

Magne is an electromagnetic process lock intended for locking doors and hatches.

Magne is usually used to prevent unwanted process interruptions, e.g. during a welding operation.

Magne models with integrated Adam safety sensor make it easy to achieve the highest safety level for the interlocking function.



Reliable in extreme conditions

### Sealed aluminium housing

IP67 sealing gives Magne good protection.

### Robust design

The electromagnetic lock without mechanical moving parts is a robust design with fewer parts that are subject to wear.



Easy to install

### M12 connectors

Quick and easy cabling with M12 connectors.

### Magnets simplify installation

Electromagnets offer larger mounting tolerances than mechanical locks.



Continuous operation

### LED diagnostics

Integrated LED diagnostics that are easy to see reduce down time when troubleshooting.

### Strong holding force

A holding force of up to 1500 N prevents unwanted process stops.

## Applications and features

### Magne

#### Applications

##### Protect the process

Magne 4 associated with an Eva actuator is a process lock with a safe interlocking function. This means that the interlocking function reaches PL e/SIL3 but the unlocking signal is not a safe signal.

A typical application for Magne 4 is to prevent unintentional/unnecessary interruptions of a sensitive process when the dangerous movement has a very short stop time.

Magne 3 is a simple lock without any interlocking function/safety function.



#### Features

##### PL e in a simple and cost effective way

Magne 4 has an integrated Adam sensor which provides the interlocking function when it is associated with an Eva actuator: when the door is opened, a safety signal is sent to the safety control unit.

Magne 4 makes it easy to reach PL e/SIL3 for the interlocking function.

The Eva actuator is ordered and installed separately. Eva is available with a general or a unique code.

Magne 4 is available with integrated Adam DYN (DYNlink signal) or Adam OSSD (OSSD signal). Both enable serial connection of several Magne 4 locks using only one input for Magne DYN and two for Magne OSSD.



##### Optional permanent magnet

Anchor plates for Magne are ordered separately and are available with or without permanent magnet. A permanent magnet holds the door closed when Magne is unlocked, or if there is a power loss. Without the permanent magnet, Magne has no magnetic field when unlocked, which avoids the accumulation of metallic particles on the magnet.

##### M12 connectors

With Magne 4, only one cable is necessary for both the locking and the interlocking.

The M12 connectors speed up connection and reduce the risk of connection errors.

Several Y-connectors and connection accessories are available to facilitate connection in series.



##### Status indication

Most models offer an info signal indicating whether Magne is locked or not, which simplifies troubleshooting and improves user friendliness. This signal should not be used for safety.

##### Locking and interlocking

An interlocking function indicates if a door is open or closed and prevents movement when the door is open. But it does not prevent the door from being opened. A locking function makes sure the door is kept closed.

## Ordering information

### Magne



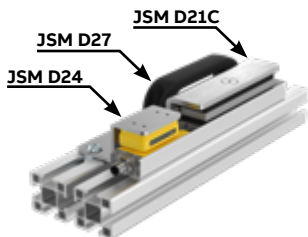
Magne 3



Magne 4



JSM D28



JSM D23C



Tina 12A



Magne rubber 1B



Magne Anchor 32E

#### Ordering details

For a complete Magne lock both door part and frame parts are necessary. Magne 4 also requires a separate Eva sensor.

| Safe interlocking with integrated Adam | Safety signal  | Extra function                                      | Connector         | Type               | Order code      |
|--|--|---|-------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| No                                     | -  | -   | M12-5 male        | Magne 3X M12-5     | 2TLA042022R2700 |
| Yes                                    | DYNlink  | -   | M12-5 male        | Magne 4X DYN M12-5 | 2TLA042022R3000 |
|  |  | One combined "locked and closed" information output | M12-8 male        | Magne 4 DYN-Info   | 2TLA042022R3400 |
|  | Two separate "locked" and "closed" information outputs | M12-8 male  | Magne 4 DYN-2Info | 2TLA042022R3410    |                 |
|  | OSSD   | One combined "locked and closed" information output | M12-8 male        | Magne 4 OSSD-Info  | 2TLA042022R4600 |

#### Accessories

| Description   | Type            | Order code      |
|---|-----------------|-----------------|
| Aluminium profile for door handle that completely covers a Magne unit when the door is closed. For conventional door (5-15 mm door gap) | JSM D28         | 2TLA042023R0100 |
| Mounting kit for Magne. For conventional door (5-15 mm door gap) *  | JSM D21C        | 2TLA042023R0510 |
| Mounting kit for Magne. For sliding door *  | JSM D23C        | 2TLA042023R0210 |
| Mounting kit for Eva. For conventional door*  | JSM D24         | 2TLA042023R0300 |
| Door handle for JSM D21C  | JSM D27         | 2TLA042023R1000 |
| Connection block for serial connection of two Magne (M12-8)   | Tina 12A        | 2TLA020054R1800 |
| Cellular rubber, 10 mm thick. Spare part for Magne Anchor plate.  | Magne rubber 1B | 2TLA042023R3610 |

\* All mounting kits include the bolts and nuts necessary to mount Magne on ABB Quick-Guard® fencing system

#### Door part

| Description   | Type             | Order code      |
|---|------------------|-----------------|
| Anchor plate with permanent magnet. Delivered with Magne rubber.    | Magne Anchor 32E | 2TLA042023R0420 |
| Anchor plate without permanent magnet. Delivered with Magne rubber. | Magne Anchor 32D | 2TLA042023R0410 |

#### Eva sensor for Magne 4 models

| Compatible Adam   | Code description                       | Code level | Type             | Order code      |
|-------------------|--|------------|------------------|-----------------|
| Adam DYN and OSSD | General code. (Eva is interchangeable) | Low level  | Eva General code | 2TLA020046R0800 |
|                   | Unique code. (Prevents defeat/fraud)   | High level | Eva Unique code  | 2TLA020046R0900 |



## Cables and connectors

### Magne



M12-C61

2TLC172951F0201



M12-C61HE

2TLC010039F0201



M12-C334

2TLC172931F0201

#### Cable with connectors

| Connector     | Female/male   | Length | Special feature                 | Type            | Order code      |
|---------------|---------------|--------|---------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| M12-5         | Female        | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C31         | 2TLA020056R0500 |
|               |               | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C61         | 2TLA020056R0000 |
|               |               |        | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C61HE       | 2TLA020056R8000 |
|               |               | 10 m   |                                 | M12-C101        | 2TLA020056R1000 |
|               |               |        | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C101HE      | 2TLA020056R8100 |
|               |               | 20 m   |                                 | M12-C201        | 2TLA020056R1400 |
|               | Female + male | 0.3 m  |                                 | M12-C0312       | 2TLA020056R5800 |
|               |               | 0.06 m |                                 | M12-C00612      | 2TLA020056R6300 |
|               |               | 1 m    |                                 | M12-C112        | 2TLA020056R2000 |
|               |               | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C312        | 2TLA020056R2100 |
|               |               | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C612        | 2TLA020056R2200 |
|               |               | 10 m   |                                 | M12-C1012       | 2TLA020056R2300 |
|               |               |        | Angled female connector         | M12-C1012V2     | 2TLA020056R6700 |
|               |               | 16 m   |                                 | M12-C1612       | 2TLA020056R5400 |
| 20 m          |               |        | M12-C2012                       | 2TLA020056R2400 |                 |
| Male          |               | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C62         | 2TLA020056R0200 |
|               | 10 m          |        | M12-C102                        | 2TLA020056R1200 |                 |
|               | M12-8         | Female | 6 m                             | M12-C63         | 2TLA020056R3000 |
|               |               |        | 10 m                            | M12-C103        | 2TLA020056R4000 |
| 20 m          |               |        | M12-C203                        | 2TLA020056R4100 |                 |
| Female + male | 0.06 m        |        | M12-C00634                      | 2TLA020056R6400 |                 |
|               | 1 m           |        | M12-C134                        | 2TLA020056R5000 |                 |
|               | 3 m           |        | M12-C334                        | 2TLA020056R5100 |                 |

#### Separate cables and connectors



M12-C01

2TLC172657F0201



C5 cable



2TLC010039F0201

| Description                                   | Type           | Order code      |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>Connectors</b>                             |                |                 |
| M12-5 pole female, straight                   | M12-C01        | 2TLA020055R1000 |
| M12-5 pole male, straight                     | M12-C02        | 2TLA020055R1100 |
| M12-8 pole female, straight                   | M12-C03        | 2TLA020055R1600 |
| M12-8 pole male, straight                     | M12-C04        | 2TLA020055R1700 |
| <b>Cable with 5 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 10 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 10 m  | 2TLA020057R0001 |
| 50 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R0005 |
| 100 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R0010 |
| 200 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R0020 |
| 500 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R0050 |
| <b>Cable with 8 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 50 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C8 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R1005 |
| 100 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R1010 |
| 200 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R1020 |
| 500 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R1050 |

## Technical data

### Magne

#### Technical data

|   | Magne 3  | Magne 4   |
|---|--|---|
| Approvals                                     |   |   |
| Conformity                                    | CE<br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>2014/30/EU - EMC<br>2011/65/EU - RoHS<br>2015/863 - RoHS3<br>EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009, EN 60664-1:2007,<br>EN 60947-5-2:2007+A1:2012, EN 60947-5-3:2013 | CE<br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>2014/30/EU - EMC<br>2011/65/EU - RoHS<br>2015/863 - RoHS3<br>EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13849-1:2015, EN ISO 13849-2:2012,<br>EN 62061:2005+A1:2012+A2:2015, EN 61508:2010,<br>EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009, EN 60664-1:2007,<br>EN 60947-5-2:2007+A1:2012, EN 60947-5-3:2013 |
| Functional safety data                        |  |   |
| EN 61508:2010                                 |  | Interlocking function: SIL3, PFH <sub>0</sub> = 4.50 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>   |
| EN 62061:2005                                 |  | Interlocking function: SILCL3, PFH <sub>0</sub> = 4.50 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>   |
| EN ISO 13849-1:2015                           |  | Interlocking function: PL e, Cat. 4, PFH <sub>0</sub> = 4.50 x 10 <sup>-9</sup>   |
| Electrical data                               |  |   |
| Operating voltage                             | +24 VDC ± 15%  |   |
| Holding force                                 |  |   |
| +24 VDC                                       | Up to 1500 N   |   |
| 0 V, Anchor plate 32D                         | 0 N  |   |
| 0 V, Anchor plate 32E                         | 30 N   |   |
| Assured release distance (S <sub>ar</sub> )   |  | 25 mm   |
| Assured operating distance (S <sub>ao</sub> ) |  | 10 mm   |
| Mechanical data                               |  |   |
| Operating temperature                         | -20...+50 °C   |   |
| Humidity range                                | 35 to 85% (with no icing or condensation)  |   |
| Protection class                              | IP67   |   |
| Weight  |  |   |
|   | 700 g  | 700 g   |
| Anchor plate 32D/E                            | 290 g  |   |
| Material                                      |  |   |
| Anchor plate                                  | Iron with nickel coating   |   |
| Electromagnet                                 | Iron with zinc coating   |   |
| Housing                                       | Anodized aluminum with parts in polycarbonate  |   |
| Potting                                       | PUR, epoxy   |   |

#### More information

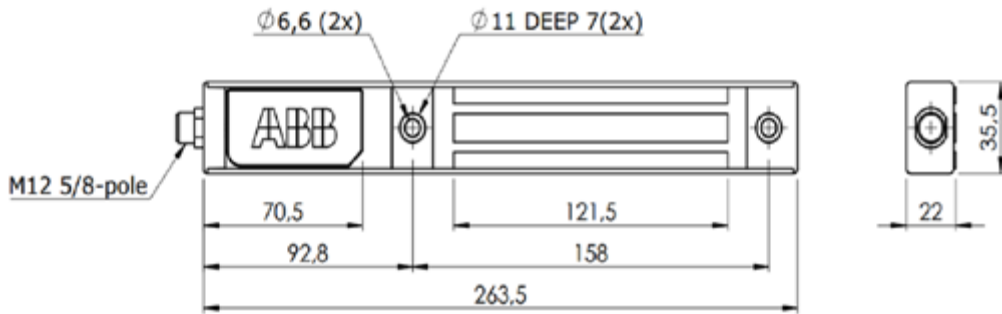
For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for:

Magne [2TLC172315M0201](#)

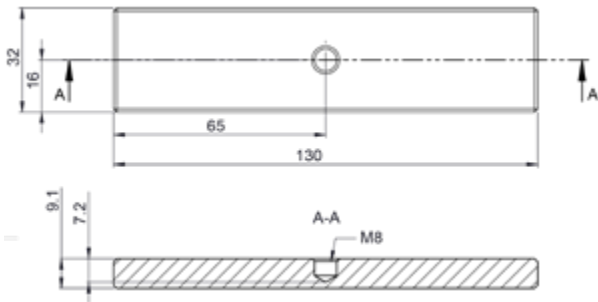
## Dimension drawings

### Magne

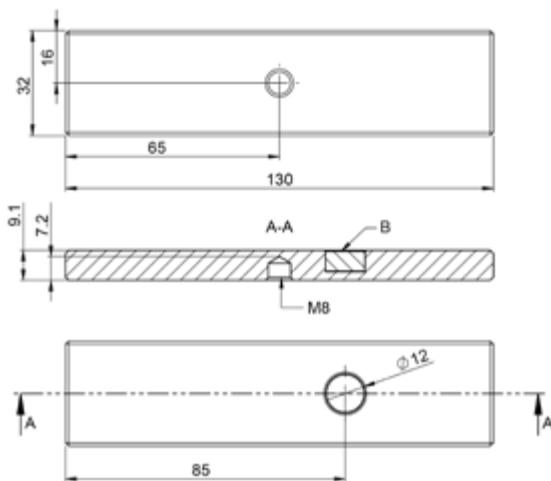
#### Magne



#### Anchor plate 32D



#### Anchor plate 32E



All dimensions in mm

# Safety lock

## GKey

**GKey is a robust safety lock with a die cast housing for hinged and sliding doors.**

**GKey offers an interlocking function reaching PL e/SIL 3 with high level coding. Power is needed to unlock GKey which makes GKey a safety lock.**

**GKey is fitted with a rear escape release button and manual unlocking (auxiliary release).**

**GKey offers four positions for 22 mm pilot devices.**



Safety and protection

### Escape release

The door can always be opened from inside the danger zone using the escape release button.

### High level coding

A standard mechanical interlock combined with RFID coding offers high level coding.

### Lockout function

GKey can be padlocked off for safe working.



Easy to install

### Integrated buttons

There are four positions in the key housing that can be used for integrating push buttons, switches or pilot lights.



Reliable in extreme conditions

### Robust design

Made of die cast aluminum alloy with a robust construction, GKey is ideal for use in mechanically demanding environments.

## Ordering details

### GKey



GKey4 RU



FHS GKey4



RHS GKey MKey



SCS GKey MKey



CE3P-10R-02



C2SS1-10B-20



CP1-11C-10



MA1-8130



KA1-8120

#### Ordering Details

For a complete safety lock, a switch and a mounting plate with front handle must be ordered separately. Rear handle, spring catch, pilot devices and blanking plugs for the unused positions are available and also ordered separately.

#### Switches

All models are fitted with an escape release button and delivered with a high level coded RFID actuator.

| Material (body) | Positions for pilot devices | Manual unlock | Type     | Order code      |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|---------------|----------|-----------------|
| Die cast        | 4                           | Yes           | GKey4 RU | 2TLA050304R0002 |

#### Mounting plate with front handle

The handle can be mounted on hinged doors and sliding doors, on the left or on the right. Note that door and frame must be aligned when the door is closed. Each order code includes a mounting plate for the switch and a front handle.

| Type of handle | Material (mounting plates and sliding bolt) | Type      | Order code      |
|----------------|---|-----------|-----------------|
| Sliding        | Die cast                                    | FHS GKey4 | 2TLA050310R0032 |

#### Accessories - Rear handle and spring loaded catch

The spring loaded catch prevents from closing the door by mistake. When the sliding handle is in open position, the catch must be pulled in order to be able to push back the handle to closed position.

| Type of handle | Material | Description  | Type          | Order code      |
|----------------|----------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Sliding        | Die cast | Rear handle  | RHS GKey MKey | 2TLA050040R0510 |
|                |          | Spring catch | SCS GKey MKey | 2TLA050040R0511 |

#### Accessories - Pilot devices

Pilot devices and blanking plugs must be ordered separately. Make sure that the total amount is 4, so that all holes in GKey4 are covered.

| Description                          | Contacts | Illuminated | Voltage    | Type         | Order code      |
|--------------------------------------|----------|-------------|------------|--------------|-----------------|
| Emergency stop button                | 2NC      | No          | 24 V AC/DC | CE3P-10R-02  | 1SFA619501R1051 |
| Selector switch                      | 2NO      | No          | 24 V AC/DC | C2SS1-10B-20 | 1SFA619200R1026 |
| Push button Green                    | 1NO      | Yes         | 24 V AC/DC | CP1-11G-10   | 1SFA619100R1112 |
| Push button Yellow                   | 1NO      | Yes         | 24 V AC/DC | CP1-11Y-10   | 1SFA619100R1113 |
| Push button Blue                     | 1NO      | Yes         | 24 V AC/DC | CP1-11L-10   | 1SFA619100R1114 |
| Push button White/Clear              | 1NO      | Yes         | 24 V AC/DC | CP1-11C-10   | 1SFA619100R1118 |
| Push button Black                    | 1NO      | No          | 24 V AC/DC | CP2-10B-10   | 1SFA619101R1016 |
| Blanking plug Black                  |          |             |            | MA1-8130     | 1SFA611920R8130 |
| Legend plate holder (without insert) |          |             |            | KA1-8120     | 1SFA616920R8120 |

#### More information

For more optional pilot devices, pre-printed legend plate inserts and other accessories, please see the Compact range of ABB pilot devices:

<http://new.abb.com/low-voltage/products/pilot-devices>

#### Accessories for cable holes

| Description            | Type              | Order code      |
|------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| Cable gland M20 x 1.5  | Gland M20x1.5     | 2TLA050040R0002 |
| Conduit plug M20 x 1.5 | Cond.Plug M20x1.5 | 2TLA050040R0004 |

## Technical data

### GKey

#### Technical data

**Approvals**



**Conformity**



2006/42/EC – Machinery  
 2014/53/EU – RED  
 2011/65/EU – RoHS2  
 2015/863 – RoHS3  
 EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 14119:2013, EN ISO 13849-1:2015, IEC 62061:2005+A2:2015, IEC 60947-5-3:2013, IEC 60947-1:2014, EN 60204-1:2018, EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1, EN 301 489-3 V1.6.1

**Functional safety data**

**EN 62061:2005+A1:2013**

SIL3  
 PFH =  $4.77 \times 10^{-10}$  (corresponds to 4.8% of SIL3),  
 PFD =  $4.18 \times 10^{-5}$  (corresponds to 4.2% of SIL3)  
 Proof test interval  $T_1 = 20$  a

**EN ISO 13849-1:2008**

PL e (if both channels are used in conjunction with a SIL3/PL e control device),  
 Category 4,  $MTTF_d = 1100$  a, DC high

**Assumptions**

$d_{op} = 365d, h_{op} = 24h$

If the product usage differs from these assumptions (different load, operating frequency, etc.) the values must be adjusted accordingly.

**Electrical data**

**Operating voltage** +24 VDC  $\pm 10\%$

**Holding force** 3000 N

**Mechanical data**

**Connection** M20 (x3)

**Operating temperature** -25 °C ... +40 °C

**Protection class** IP65.

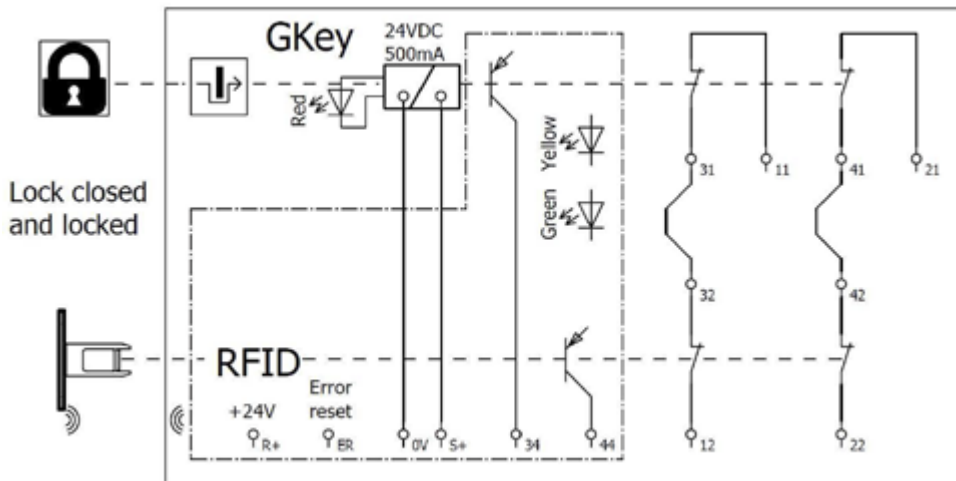
**More information**

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual:  
 GKey [2TLC010048M0201](https://library.abb.com/)

**Connection diagrams**

For GKey connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>

**Electrical connection**

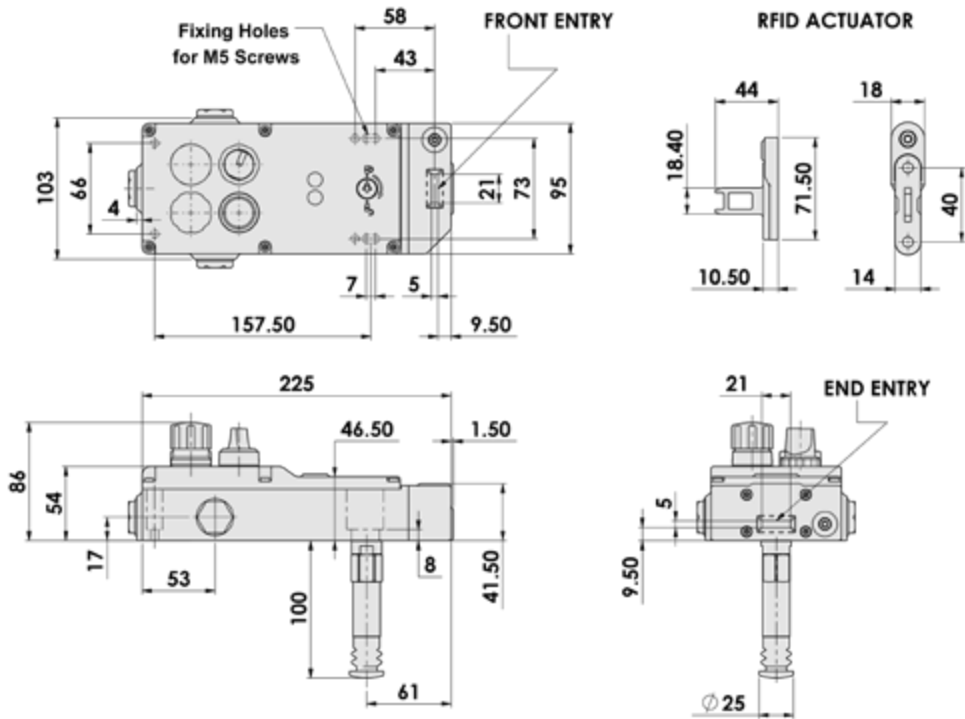


Actuator must be in place and RFID coding verified for the safety contacts to close.

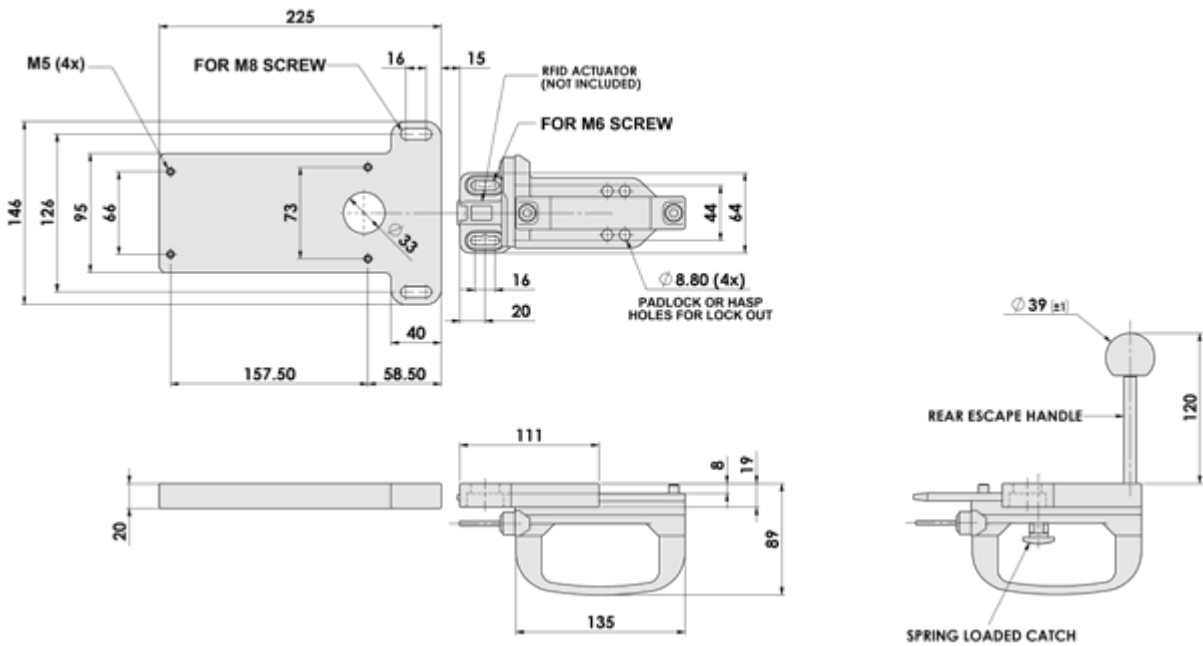
## Dimension drawings

### GKey

#### Dimensions - GKey4 switch and actuator



#### Dimensions - FHS GKey4 with rear handle and spring loaded catch



All dimensions in mm



5



---




# Control devices

- 5-2**      **Introduction and overview**
- 5-4**      **One- and two-hand devices**  
**Safeball™**
- 5-10**     **Three-position device**  
**JSHD4**
- 5-20**     **Three-position device**  
**HD5**

# Introduction and overview

## Selection guide

ABB offers ergonomic control devices that allow operators to safely control dangerous machinery.

|                    | Safeball   | JSHD4  | HD5   |
|--------------------|--|--|---|
| <b>Image</b>       |    |    |   |
| <b>Type</b>        | One or two-hand control device   | Tree-position device   | Tree-position device  |
| <b>Description</b> | Ergonomic and unique machine control   | Ergonomic hold-to-run device with extra control buttons  | Ergonomic hold-to-run device for food and beverage applications   |
| <b>Application</b> | Mainly used in pairs as a two-hand control in applications where it must be ensured that the operator has his hands outside the hazardous area, e.g. for starting a press cycle.                           | Used during e.g. troubleshooting, test running and programming, in order to allow the operator to be inside the hazardous area without stopping the machine, while ensuring limited movement and stop in case of danger.   |   |
| <b>Advantages</b>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Ergonomic design</li> <li>- Several grip possibilities</li> <li>- Flexible mounting</li> <li>- Two opposing buttons minimize the possibility to defeat</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Ergonomic shape and operation</li> <li>- Hand recognition prevents defeat</li> <li>- Easy connection with M12 connectors</li> <li>- Several models to suit multiple applications</li> <li>- Extra buttons for e.g. machine control</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Adapted and approved for use in food and beverage applications</li> <li>- Ergonomic shape and operation</li> <li>- Flashlight for inspection</li> <li>- Integrated emergency stop</li> <li>- Extra buttons for e.g. machine control</li> </ul> |

## Introduction and overview

### Selection orientation

#### Different types of control devices

##### When to use a two-hand or one-hand control device

A two-hand control device is often used for machines with manual loading or unloading. The operator uses the two-hand control device to safely start a machine cycle. A two-hand control must be used with a safety control device that supervises that both buttons are pressed simultaneously, i.e. both hands are on the control and therefore outside the dangerous zone, in order to start the dangerous movement. An one-hand control device can be used in applications when the operator cannot reach the hazardous area with his/her free hand, or on less dangerous machines.



##### When to use a three-position device

A three-position device (or hold-to-run device) is used to allow a limited movement of the machine when the operator needs to be in the dangerous area without stopping the dangerous machine, for example during troubleshooting, test running or programming.

The operator pushes the larger black button to a middle position in order to allow a movement. In case of danger, the operator will either release the button or squeeze it to its bottom position and the machine will stop.



##### Standards

The safety distance of two-hand control devices should be calculated using EN ISO 13855.

When constructing a two-hand station for a machine, the standard EN 574 about functional aspects and principles for design needs to be followed.

# One- and two-hand devices

## Safeball™

Safeball™ is an ergonomic control device used for safe start and stop of machine cycles. Usually two Safeball™ are used together to form a two-hand control.

Safeball™ consists of a spherical ball containing two embedded push button switches, one on each side of the ball. Both buttons must be pressed in order to start and operate the machine. The risk of unintentional activation is thereby minimized and the device is simple and ergonomic to use.

When two Safeball™ are used in a two-hand device application, the operator must press all four push buttons simultaneously in order to operate the machine. If one or more of the buttons are released, a stop signal is given to the machine.



Optimum interface



Safety and protection

### Ergonomic design

The design of Safeball™ allows for comfort of use for all hand sizes and a great variety in gripping positions. And there is no need for shrouding top covers to prevent defeat, as there is for two-hand devices with standard push buttons.

### Flexible mounting

With the JSM C5 mounting bracket, Safeball™ can be orientated in the most ergonomic position for the operator.

### Unique design

The unique design of Safeball™ combines the highest level of safety with the best ergonomics.

### Highest safety level

Safeball™ provides the operator with a dual switching function and short-circuit supervision in each hand.

## Applications and features

### Safeball™

#### Applications

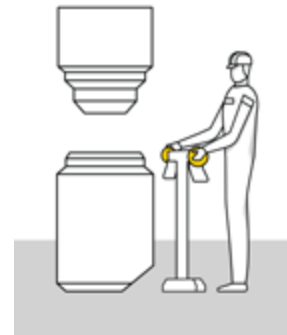
##### One-hand control device

One Safeball™ can be used as an ergonomic “hold to run” button, i.e. the movement is allowed as long as both push buttons on Safeball™ are pressed, usually when the operator cannot reach the hazardous area with his/her free hand, or on less dangerous machines. Safeball™ is a very practical one-hand control device since it is very easy to locate and activate.



##### Two-hand control device

A two-hand control device is often used for machines with manual loading or unloading. The operator uses the two-hand control device to safely start a machine cycle. A two-hand control must be used with a safety control device that makes sure that both buttons are pressed simultaneously, i.e. both hands are on the control and therefore outside the dangerous zone, in order to start the dangerous movement. Using two Safeball™, it is easy to realize a custom two-hand device.



#### Features

##### Mounting methods

Safeball™ can be mounted in many different ways. It can be mounted on a table, on the machine, on a support or wherever suitable for ergonomic reasons. Safeball™ can be mounted in a fixed position or on a tilting and/or rotating support when used with a JSM C5. This flexibility in mounting enhances ergonomics and minimizes work-related musculoskeletal disorders.

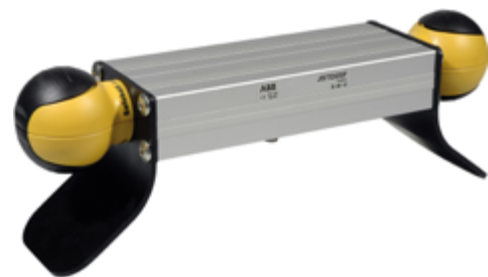
When two Safeball™ are used as a two-hand device, no shrouding top cover is necessary to prevent defeat, as it is for two-hand devices with push buttons, since it is very difficult to push all 4 push buttons of the two Safeball™ with e.g. a hand and an elbow.

##### Highest level of safety

When used as a two-hand control device, a safety controller for two-hand devices must be used, like an appropriate Sentry safety relay or a Pluto programmable safety controller. The safety controller monitors that all four push buttons (i.e. on each side of both Safeball™) are pressed within 0.5 second, in order to detect e.g. a short circuit or fraud, like a rubber band around one device. Safeball™ is certified to comply with type III C according to EN 574+A1:2008.

##### JSTD25

The JSTD25 control stations are pre-built two-hand devices utilizing the good ergonomics of Safeball™. They can be used as fixed devices that are easy to install, or as mobile devices. All models are equipped with shields to protect the buttons from accidental operation, and also protect from damage if the device is dropped on the floor when used as mobile device. All versions meet EN 574 and EN ISO 13849-1.



## Ordering information

### Safeball™



2TLC00041F0201

Safeball™



2TLC172096F0201

JSTD25F



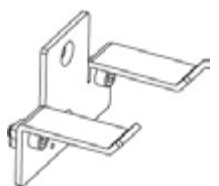
2TLC172618F0201

JSTD25K



2TLC172949F0201

JSMC5



2TLC172959F0201

JSMC7

#### Safeball™ JSTD1

| Types of switches | Cable length | Type    | Order code      |
|-------------------|--------------|---------|-----------------|
| 1 NO + 1 NC       | 2 m          | JSTD1-A | 2TLA020007R3000 |
|                   | 0.2 m        | JSTD1-B | 2TLA020007R3100 |
|                   | 10 m         | JSTD1-C | 2TLA020007R3200 |
| 2 NO              | 0.2 m        | JSTD1-E | 2TLA020007R3400 |

#### Two-hand control devices JSTD25

| Extra feature                                 | Connector male | Type    | Order code      |
|---|----------------|---------|-----------------|
| None  | M12-5          | JSTD25F | 2TLA020007R6000 |
|   | M12-8          | JSTD25H | 2TLA020007R6300 |
| Pre-mounted Smile 10 EK emergency stop button | M12-8          | JSTD25K | 2TLA020007R6900 |

#### Accessories

| Description  | Type          | Order code      |
|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Mounting bracket for JSTD1 with orientation possibility (ball joint) | JSM C5        | 2TLA020007R0900 |
| Suspension shelf for JSTD25F/H/K                                     | JSM C7        | 2TLA020007R1200 |
| Protection coat for Safeball   | Safeball coat | 2TLA020007R1900 |

## Cables and connectors

Safeball™



M12-C61

2TLC172851F0201



M12-C61HE

2TLC00009F0201



M12-C334

2TLC172831F0201

### Cable with connectors

| Connector | Female/male   | Length | Special feature                 | Type            | Order code      |
|-----------|---------------|--------|---------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| M12-5     | Female        | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C31         | 2TLA020056R0500 |
|           |               | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C61         | 2TLA020056R0000 |
|           |               | 10 m   | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C61HE       | 2TLA020056R8000 |
|           |               | 20 m   | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C101HE      | 2TLA020056R8100 |
|           | Female + male | 0.3 m  |                                 | M12-C201        | 2TLA020056R1400 |
|           |               | 0.06 m |                                 | M12-C0312       | 2TLA020056R5800 |
|           |               | 1 m    |                                 | M12-C00612      | 2TLA020056R6300 |
|           |               | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C112        | 2TLA020056R2000 |
|           |               | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C312        | 2TLA020056R2100 |
|           |               | 10 m   |                                 | M12-C612        | 2TLA020056R2200 |
|           |               | 16 m   | Angled female connector         | M12-C1012V2     | 2TLA020056R6700 |
|           |               | 20 m   |                                 | M12-C1612       | 2TLA020056R5400 |
|           |               | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C2012       | 2TLA020056R2400 |
|           |               | 10 m   |                                 | M12-C62         | 2TLA020056R0200 |
| M12-8     | Female        | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C102        | 2TLA020056R1200 |
|           |               | 10 m   |                                 | M12-C63         | 2TLA020056R3000 |
|           |               | 20 m   |                                 | M12-C103        | 2TLA020056R4000 |
|           | Female + male | 0.06 m |                                 | M12-C203        | 2TLA020056R4100 |
|           |               | 1 m    |                                 | M12-C00634      | 2TLA020056R6400 |
|           |               | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C134        | 2TLA020056R5000 |
|           |               |        | M12-C334                        | 2TLA020056R5100 |                 |

### Separate cables and connectors



M12-C01

2TLC172851F0201



C5 cable


2TLC000098F0201

| Description                                   | Type           | Order code      |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>Connectors</b>                             |                |                 |
| M12-5 pole female, straight                   | M12-C01        | 2TLA020055R1000 |
| M12-5 pole male, straight                     | M12-C02        | 2TLA020055R1100 |
| M12-8 pole female, straight                   | M12-C03        | 2TLA020055R1600 |
| M12-8 pole male, straight                     | M12-C04        | 2TLA020055R1700 |
| <b>Cable with 5 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 10 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 10 m  | 2TLA020057R0001 |
| 50 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R0005 |
| 100 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R0010 |
| 200 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R0020 |
| 500 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R0050 |
| <b>Cable with 8 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 50 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C8 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R1005 |
| 100 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R1010 |
| 200 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R1020 |
| 500 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R1050 |

## Technical data

### Safeball™

#### Technical data

|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <b>Approvals</b>                 | <b>Inspecta</b>  |
| <b>Conformity</b>                | <b>CE</b><br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>EN ISO 12100:2010, EN 574+A1:2008                          |
| <b>Functional safety data</b>    |   |
| <b>EN/IEC 61508:2010</b>         | Up to SIL3, depending on system architecture  |
| <b>EN/IEC 62061:2005+A1:2013</b> | Up to SILCL3, depending on system architecture  |
| <b>EN ISO 13849-1:2008</b>       | Up to Cat. 4, PL e, depending on system   |
| <b>Mechanical data</b>           |   |
| <b>Operating force</b>           | Approx. 2N  |
| <b>Life, mechanical</b>          | > 1 x 10 <sup>6</sup> operations at max 1 Hz  |
| <b>Connection cable</b>          |   |
| <b>JSTD1-A</b>                   | PVC-cable, 4 x 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> , L = 2 m   |
| <b>JSTD1-B, JSTD1-E</b>          | Wires, 4 x 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> , L = approx. 0.2 m   |
| <b>JSTD1-C</b>                   | PVC-cable, 4 x 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup> , L = 10 m  |
| <b>Protection class</b>          | IP67. Not intended for use under water  |
| <b>Ambient temperature</b>       | -25 °C to +50 °C (operating)  |
| <b>Material JSTD1</b>            | Polypropylene   |
| <b>Weight JSTD1</b>              |   |
| <b>With 2 m cable</b>            | 0.2 kg  |
| <b>With 10 m cable</b>           | 0.7 kg  |
| <b>With 4 x 0.2 m wires</b>      | 0.1 kg  |

#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for: Safeball [2TLC172182M0201](#)

#### Connection diagrams

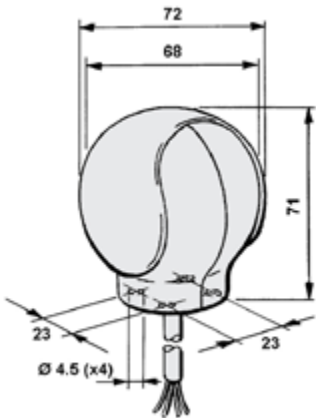
For Safeball connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>



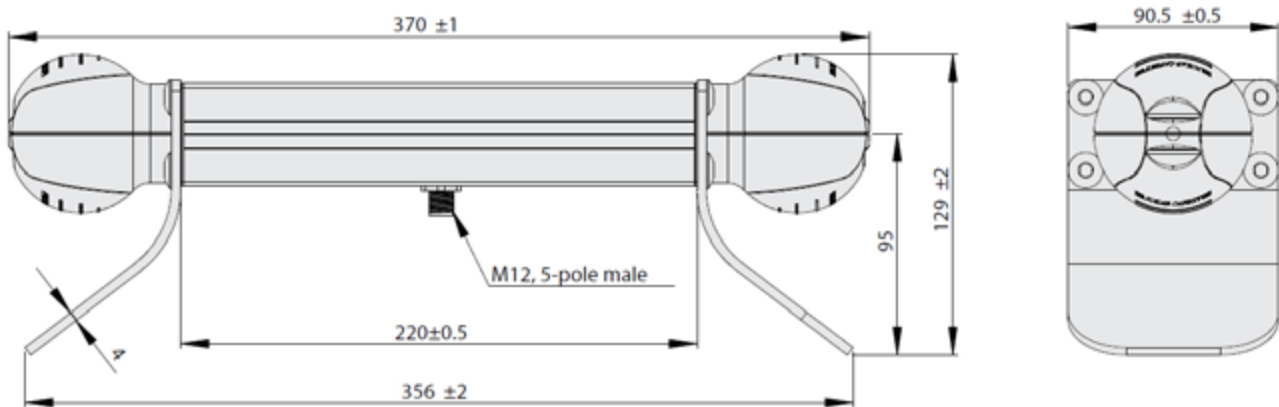
## Dimension drawings

### Safeball™

#### Safeball™



#### JSTD25F



All dimensions in mm

# Three-position device

## JSHD4

JSHD4 is a three-position device used to allow a limited movement of the machine when the operator is in the dangerous area, for example during troubleshooting, test running and programming.

The operator pushes the larger black button to a middle position in order to allow a movement. In case of danger, the operator will either release the button or squeeze it to its bottom position and the machine will stop.

JSHD4 is available with different types of connectors for an optimal adaptation to the application. Some models offer additional top and front button to control a non-safe signal, for ex. move forward and/or backward.



Safety and protection

### Cheat-safe hand recognition

All JSHD4 models comply with PL e/ Cat 4. Some models offer an “anti-tamper” function: an extra signal indicate if the JSHD4 is held in the middle position by a human hand. A machine movement will be authorized only in presence of this signal and not if the device is held in run position by any other (fraudulent) mean.



Optimum interface

### Ergonomic shape and operation

JSHD4 is ergonomic, both in respect of its shape, fitting to the hand, and the way the buttons are operated. JSHD4 is easy to operate using just the fingers (even with gloves), and the middle position provides a safe resting position.



Continuous operation

### Safely inspect a running machine

JSHD4 allows the operators to safely inspect the manufacturing process without completely stopping the machine.

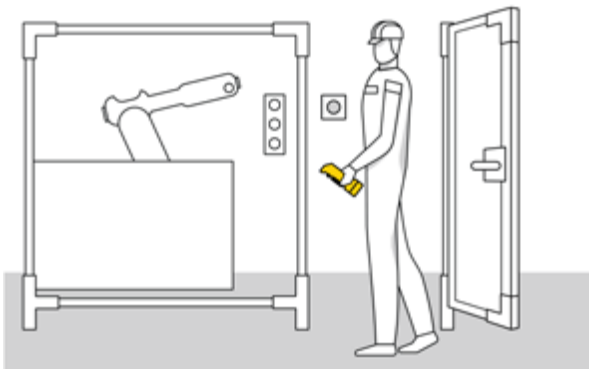
## Applications and features

### JSHD4

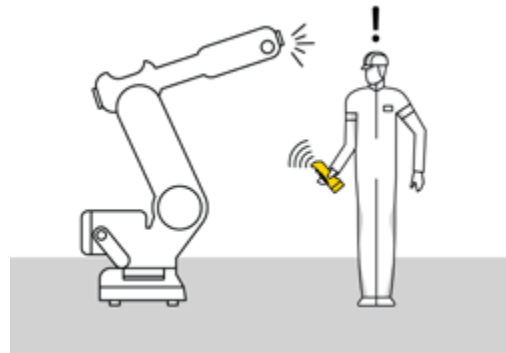
#### Applications

##### Safe troubleshooting, programming and testing

If the operator has to enter a risk area for troubleshooting or test running, it is extremely important that he/she is able to stop the machinery without having to rely on someone else pushing a stop button. In addition, no-one else should be able to start the machinery after it has been stopped by the operator. An operator who is under pressure must also be able to give a stop signal, whether in panic he/she pushes harder on the button or just releases it.



JSJD4 three-position control device can be used for troubleshooting, programming and test running in situations where no other protection is available or feasible. JSJD4 allows the operator to safely inspect the process without completely stopping the machine. The big black button has 3 distinct positions: released, pressed gently and pressed hard. The middle position allows the machine to run with limited speed or range, but when released or pressed hard the machine stops.



#### Features

##### Hand recognition for protection against tampering

An optional “anti-tamper” function sends an extra signal to indicate if the JSJD4 is held by a human hand or not. By using this, the safety level is increased, and the risk of manipulation or bypass of the safety function is reduced. It is no longer possible to expose the operator to danger by trying to lock the three-position control device in run mode.

##### Ergonomic design

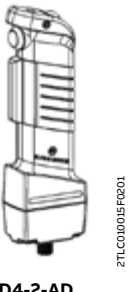
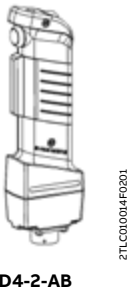
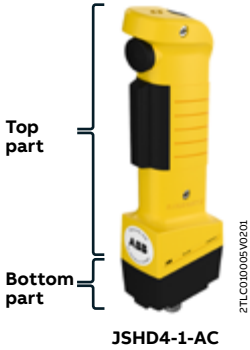
JSJD4 is ergonomic, both in respect of its shape, fitting to the hand and the way the buttons are operated. It is easy to operate the device by using just the fingers (even with gloves), and the middle position provides a secure resting position.

##### Additional top and front buttons for non-safe signals

The two additional buttons can be used for e.g. start/stop, up/down or forward/ back. These buttons should not be used for safety related functions.

# Ordering information

## JSHD4



### Complete list of JSHD4 models

This list shows the possible combination of features. Some combinations can be ordered pre-assembled with a single order code. Other combinations need to be ordered in separate parts (see next page).

| Top part                                      | Bottom part                               | Anti-tamper               | Type                                 | Order code                             |
|---|---|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| Buttons and LEDs                              | Feature                                   | ID                        | Connection                           |  |
| JSHD4-1<br>No LEDs<br>No buttons              | Use your own cable                        | AA                        | Cable gland and 5 screw connections  | JSHD4-1-AA<br>2TLA019995R0000          |
|   | Cost effective and quick connection       | AC                        | M12-5 male                           | JSHD4-1-AC<br>2TLA019995R0100          |
|   | Holder for Eva (used with JSM54)          | AL                        | Cable gland and 10 screw connections | JSHD4-1-AL<br>Order separate parts     |
| JSHD4-2<br>LEDs<br>Front button<br>Top button | Cost effective and robust                 | AB                        | Cannon 12 male pins                  | JSHD4-2-AB<br>2TLA019995R0200          |
|   | Cost effective and quick connection       | AD                        | M12-8 male                           | • JSHD4-2-AB-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   |   |                           |                                      | • JSHD4-2-AD-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   | Use your own cable, simplified connection | AH                        | Cable gland and 10 screw connections | JSHD4-2-AH<br>2TLA019995R0800          |
|   | Use your own cable, full pin connection   | AJ                        | Cable gland and 16 screw connections | • JSHD4-2-AH-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   |   |                           |                                      | • JSHD4-2-AJ-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   | Replacement of old units*                 | AK                        | Cannon 12 male pins                  | JSHD4-2-AK<br>2TLA019995R4800          |
|   | Holder for Eva (used with JSM54)          | AL                        | Cable gland and 10 screw connections | • JSHD4-2-AL-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   |   |                           |                                      | • JSHD4-2-AL-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   | JSHD4-3<br>LEDs<br>No buttons             | Cost effective and robust | AB                                   | Cannon 12 male pins                    |
| Cost effective and quick connection           |   | AD                        | M12-8 male                           | • JSHD4-3-AB-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   |   |                           |                                      | • JSHD4-3-AD-A<br>Order separate parts |
| E-stop  |   | AE                        | M12-8 male                           | JSHD4-3-AE<br>Order separate parts     |
| Use your own cable, simplified connection     |   | AH                        | Cable gland and 10 screw connections | JSHD4-3-AH<br>2TLA019995R2000          |
| Use your own cable, full pin connection       |   | AJ                        | Cable gland and 16 screw connections | • JSHD4-3-AH-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   |   |                           |                                      | • JSHD4-3-AJ-A<br>Order separate parts |
| Replacement of old units*                     |   | AK                        | Cannon 12 male pins                  | JSHD4-3-AK<br>Order separate parts     |
| Holder for Eva (used with JSM54)              |   | AL                        | Cable gland and 10 screw connections | • JSHD4-3-AL-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   |   |                           |                                      | • JSHD4-3-AL-A<br>Order separate parts |
| JSHD4-4<br>LEDs<br>Front button               | Cost effective and robust                 | AB                        | Cannon 12 male pins                  | JSHD4-4-AB<br>Order separate parts     |
|   | Cost effective and quick connection       | AD                        | M12-8 male                           | • JSHD4-4-AB-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   |   |                           |                                      | • JSHD4-4-AD-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   | Use your own cable, simplified connection | AH                        | Cable gland and 10 screw connections | JSHD4-4-AH<br>Order separate parts     |
|   | Use your own cable, full pin connection   | AJ                        | Cable gland and 16 screw connections | • JSHD4-4-AH-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   |   |                           |                                      | • JSHD4-4-AJ-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   | Replacement of old units*                 | AK                        | Cannon 12 male pins                  | JSHD4-4-AK<br>Order separate parts     |
|   | Holder for Eva (used with JSM54)          | AL                        | Cable gland and 10 screw connections | • JSHD4-4-AL-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   |   |                           |                                      | • JSHD4-4-AL-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   | JSHD4-5<br>LEDs<br>Top button             | Cost effective and robust | AB                                   | Cannon 12 male pins                    |
| Cost effective and quick connection           |   | AD                        | M12-8 male                           | • JSHD4-5-AB-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   |   |                           |                                      | • JSHD4-5-AD-A<br>Order separate parts |
| Use your own cable, simplified connection     |   | AH                        | Cable gland and 10 screw connections | JSHD4-5-AH<br>Order separate parts     |
| Use your own cable, full pin connection       |   | AJ                        | Cable gland and 16 screw connections | • JSHD4-5-AH-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   |   |                           |                                      | • JSHD4-5-AJ-A<br>Order separate parts |
| Replacement of old units*                     |   | AK                        | Cannon 12 male pins                  | JSHD4-5-AK<br>Order separate parts     |
| Holder for Eva (used with JSM54)              |   | AL                        | Cable gland and 10 screw connections | • JSHD4-5-AL-A<br>Order separate parts |
|   |   |                           |                                      | • JSHD4-5-AL-A<br>Order separate parts |

\* See document 2TLC010007L0201 for information about replacement

## Ordering information

### JSHD4



JSHD4-2 Top part



2TLC1Z156F001

AA, AH, AJ - Cable gland



2TLC1Z157F001

AB, AK - Cannon connection



2TLC1Z158F001

AC, AD - M12 connection



2TLC1Z159F002

AE - M12 with E-stop



2TLC1Z160F001

AL - Cable gland and holder for Eva (used with JSM54)



2TLC1Z161F001

Anti-tamper PCB

#### Top parts, bottom parts and anti-tamper

To order a complete JSHD4, a top part and a bottom part must be included. Don't forget the anti-tamper PCB if required.

For example, if you want to order a JSHD4-3-AB-A, please order

- JSHD4-3 top part
- JSHD4 AB bottom part
- Anti-tamper PCB (the "-A" at the end of the designation stands for Anti-tamper)

Please note that all combinations are not compatible. See previous page for possible combinations.

| Description   | Type              | Order code      |
|---|-------------------|-----------------|
| <b>Top parts</b>  |                   |                 |
| Top part with no LEDs, no buttons                               | JSHD4-1 Top part  | 2TLA020006R2100 |
| Top part with LEDs, front and top buttons                       | JSHD4-2 Top part  | 2TLA020006R2200 |
| Top part with LEDs, no buttons                                  | JSHD4-3 Top part  | 2TLA020006R2300 |
| Top part with LEDs, front button                                | JSHD4-4 Top part  | 2TLA020006R2400 |
| Top part with LEDs, top button                                  | JSHD4-5 Top part  | 2TLA020006R2500 |
| <b>Bottom parts</b>   |                   |                 |
| Bottom part with cable gland                                    | JSHD4 AA          | 2TLA020005R1000 |
| Bottom part with Cannon connector                               | JSHD4 AB          | 2TLA020005R1100 |
| Bottom part with M12-5 connector                                | JSHD4 AC          | 2TLA020005R1200 |
| Bottom part with M12-8 connector                                | JSHD4 AD          | 2TLA020005R1300 |
| Bottom part with M12-8 connector and E-stop button              | JSHD4 AE          | 2TLA020005R1400 |
| Bottom part with cable gland and PCB with 10 screws             | JSHD4 AH          | 2TLA020005R1700 |
| Bottom part with cable gland and PCB with 16 screws             | JSHD4 AJ          | 2TLA020005R1800 |
| Bottom part with cannon connector (replacement of former JSHD4) | JSHD4 AK          | 2TLA020005R1900 |
| Bottom part with cable gland and holder for Eva                 | JSHD4 AL          | 2TLA020005R2000 |
| <b>Anti tamper</b>  |                   |                 |
| Anti-tamper PCB   | JSHD4 Anti-tamper | 2TLA020005R0900 |

## Cables and connectors

### JSHD4



M12-C61

2TLCT295FP0201



M12-C61HE



M12-C334

2TLCT2931FP001



HK20S4



M12-C01

2TLCT295FP0201



C5 cable

2TLCO0038FP0201

#### Cable with connectors

| Connector | Female/male   | Length | Special feature                 | Type       | Order code      |                 |
|-----------|---------------|--------|---------------------------------|------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| M12-5     | Female        | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C31    | 2TLA020056R0500 |                 |
|           |               | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C61    | 2TLA020056R0000 |                 |
|           |               | 10 m   | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C61HE  | 2TLA020056R8000 |                 |
|           |               | 20 m   | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C101HE | 2TLA020056R8100 |                 |
|           | Female + male | 0.3 m  |                                 | M12-C0312  | 2TLA020056R5800 |                 |
|           |               | 0.06 m |                                 | M12-C00612 | 2TLA020056R6300 |                 |
|           |               | 1 m    |                                 | M12-C112   | 2TLA020056R2000 |                 |
|           |               | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C312   | 2TLA020056R2100 |                 |
|           |               | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C612   | 2TLA020056R2200 |                 |
|           |               | 10 m   |                                 | M12-C1012  | 2TLA020056R2300 |                 |
|           |               | 16 m   |                                 | M12-C1612  | 2TLA020056R5400 |                 |
|           |               | 20 m   |                                 | M12-C2012  | 2TLA020056R2400 |                 |
|           |               | Male   | 6 m                             |            | M12-C62         | 2TLA020056R0200 |
|           |               |        | 10 m                            |            | M12-C102        | 2TLA020056R1200 |
| M12-8     | Female        | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C63    | 2TLA020056R3000 |                 |
|           |               | 10 m   |                                 | M12-C103   | 2TLA020056R4000 |                 |
|           |               | 20 m   |                                 | M12-C203   | 2TLA020056R4100 |                 |
|           | Female + male | 0.06 m |                                 | M12-C00634 | 2TLA020056R6400 |                 |
|           |               | 1 m    |                                 | M12-C134   | 2TLA020056R5000 |                 |
|           |               | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C334   | 2TLA020056R5100 |                 |
| Cannon    | Female        | 5 m    |                                 | HK5        | 2TLA020003R4700 |                 |
|           |               | 10 m   |                                 | HK10       | 2TLA020003R4800 |                 |
|           |               | 20 m   |                                 | HK20       | 2TLA020003R4900 |                 |
|           |               | 1.6 m  | Spiral cable                    | HK16S4     | 2TLA020003R5000 |                 |
|           |               | 2 m    | Spiral cable                    | HK20S4     | 2TLA020003R5100 |                 |
|           |               | 3.2 m  | Spiral cable                    | HK32S4     | 2TLA020003R5200 |                 |
|           |               | 4 m    | Spiral cable                    | HK40S4     | 2TLA020003R3500 |                 |
|           |               | 6 m    | Spiral cable                    | HK60S4     | 2TLA020003R3600 |                 |
|           |               | 8 m    | Spiral cable                    | HK80S4     | 2TLA020003R5300 |                 |

#### Separate cables and connectors

| Description                               | Type    | Order code      |
|---|---------|-----------------|
| <b>Connectors</b>                         |         |                 |
| M12-5 pole female, straight               | M12-C01 | 2TLA020055R1000 |
| M12-5 pole male, straight                 | M12-C02 | 2TLA020055R1100 |
| M12-8 pole female, straight               | M12-C03 | 2TLA020055R1600 |
| M12-8 pole male, straight                 | M12-C04 | 2TLA020055R1700 |
| 12-pole female cannon connector for JSHD4 | JSHK0   | 2TLA020003R0300 |

#### Cable with 5 conductors

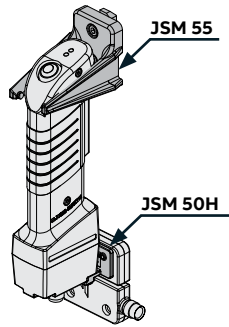
|   |                |                 |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| 10 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 10 m  | 2TLA020057R0001 |
| 50 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R0005 |
| 100 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R0010 |
| 200 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R0020 |
| 500 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R0050 |

#### Cable with 8 conductors

|   |                |                 |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| 50 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C8 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R1005 |
| 100 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R1010 |
| 200 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R1020 |
| 500 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R1050 |

## Accessories

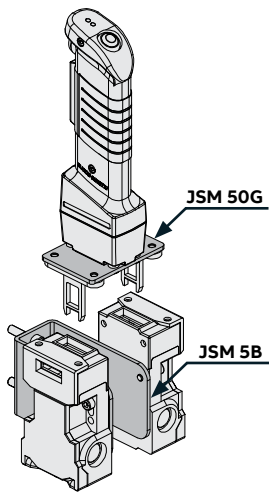
### JSHD4



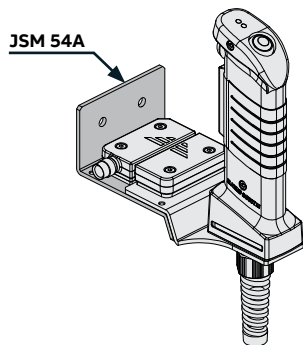
**JSM 55 wall bracket and JSM 50H bracket for Eden**

#### Accessories

| Description   | Type       | Order code      |
|---|------------|-----------------|
| <b>Brackets and bottom plates</b>   |            |                 |
| JSM 55 Wall bracket for three position device                                     | JSM 55     | 2TLA040005R0500 |
| JSM 5B Wall bracket for 2 pcs MKey5 interlock switches                            | JSM 5B     | 2TLA040005R0700 |
| JSM 54A Wall bracket for Adam. Used with AL bottom part that has a holder for Eva | JSM 54A    | 2TLA020205R2800 |
| JSM 50G Bracket for key switches  | JSM 50G    | 2TLA020205R6300 |
| JSM 50H Bracket for Eden sensor   | JSM 50H    | 2TLA020205R6400 |
| <b>Others</b>   |            |                 |
| JSHD4 protection coat   | JSHD4 Coat | 2TLA020200R4600 |



**JSM 50G bracket for key switches and JSM 5B wall bracket for 2 pcs MKey5**



**JSM 54A wall bracket for Adam (and AL bottom part that has a holder for Eva)**



**JSHD4 protection coat**

## Accessories

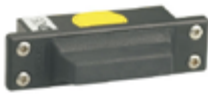
### JSHD4



JSHD4H2A



JSHD4H2B



JSHD4H2

#### JSHD4H2

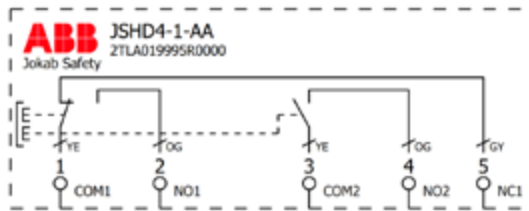
The three-position button of JSHD4 is available as a separate part for either external mounting or panel mounting. JSHD4H2A/B are intended for mounting on the back side of a handheld teaching pendant or similar. JSHD4H2 can be mounted in a panel hole.

| Mounting                | Leads       | Hand  | Type           | Order code      |
|-------------------------|-------------|-------|----------------|-----------------|
| External mounting       | 6 x 150 mm  | Left  | JSHD4H2A       | 2TLA020002R0200 |
|                         |             | Right | JSHD4H2B       | 2TLA020002R0210 |
| Internal panel mounting | 6 x 150 mm  | -     | JSHD4H2 0.15 m | 2TLA020002R3100 |
|                         | 6 x 1200 mm | -     | JSHD4H2 1.2 m  | 2TLA020002R4500 |

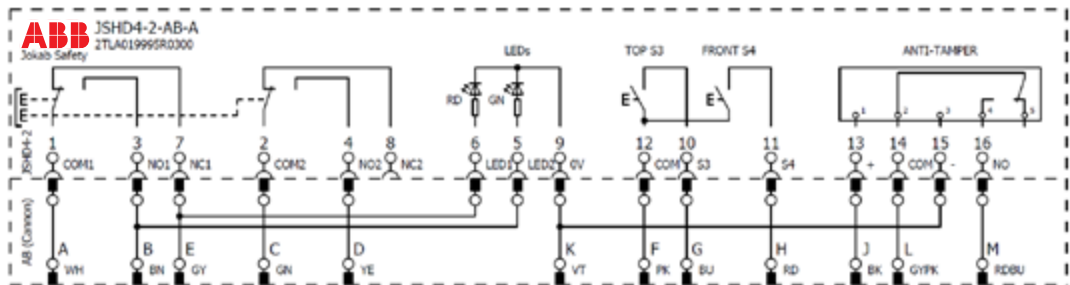
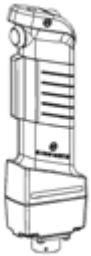


## Electrical wiring diagrams

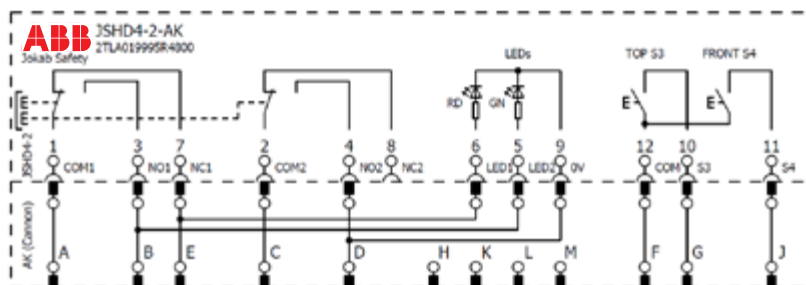
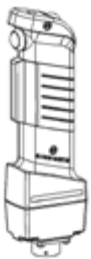
Examples with JSHD4-1 and JSHD4-2 models



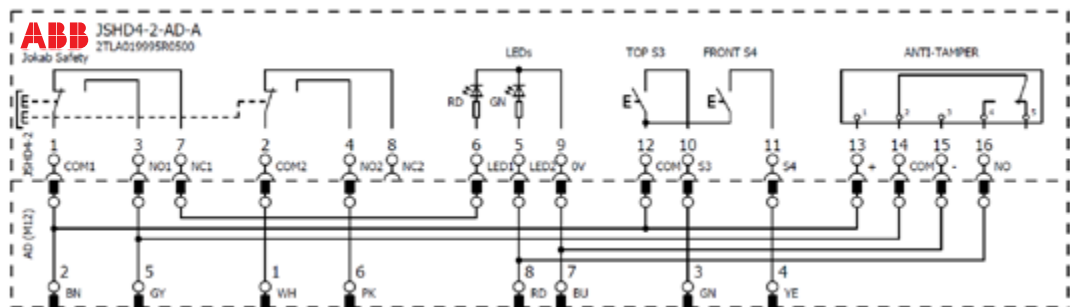
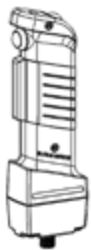
JSHD4-1-AA, cable gland and 5 screw connections on JSHD4-1



JSHD4-2-AB-A, Cannon 12 pins



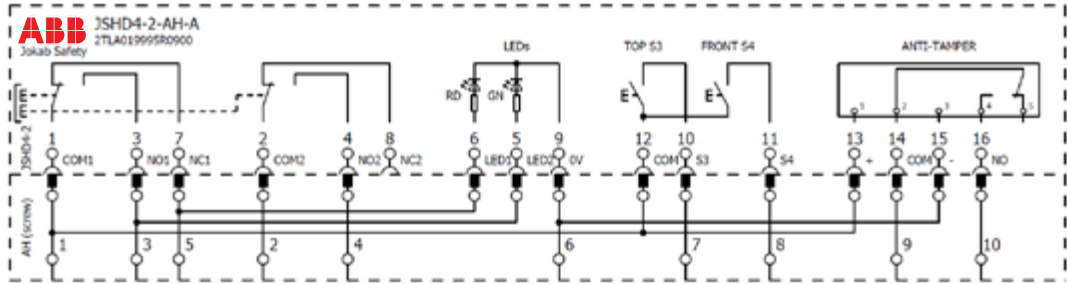
JSHD4-2-AK, Cannon 12 pins



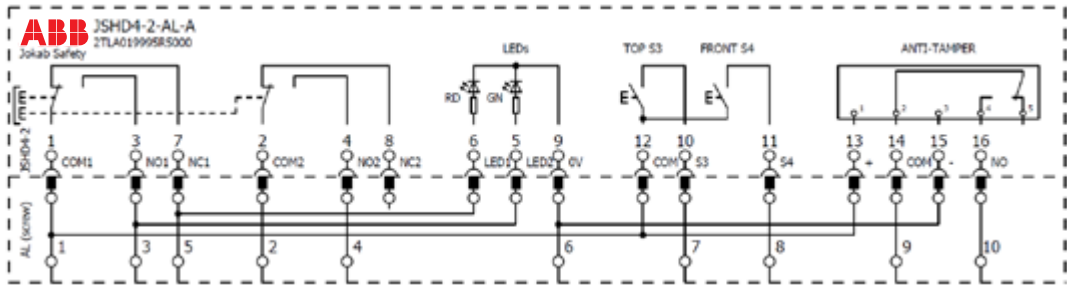
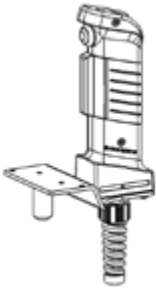
JSHD4-2-AD-A, M12-8

# Electrical wiring diagrams

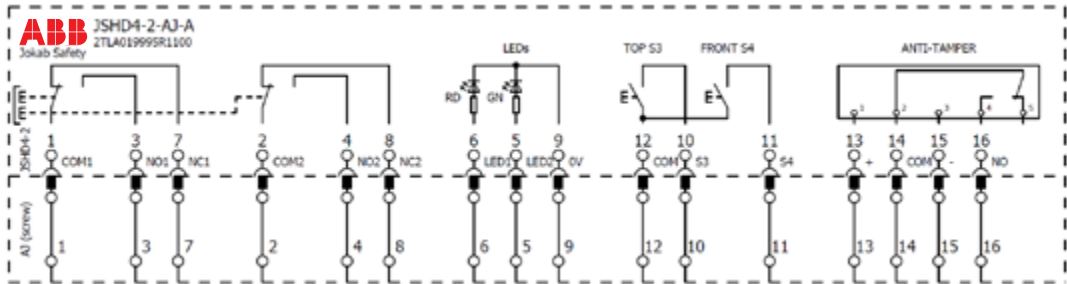
Examples with JSHD4-2 models



JSHD4-2-AH-A, cable gland and 10 screw connection



JSHD4-2-AL-A, cable gland and 10 screw connection






JSHD4-2-AJ-A, cable gland and 16 screw connection

## Technical data and dimension drawings

JSHD4

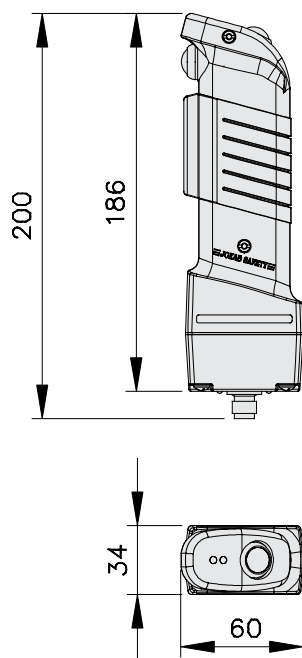
### Technical data

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Approvals                              | Inspecta    |
| Conformity                             | <br>2006/42/EC - Machines<br>2014/30/EU - EMC<br>2011/65/EU - RoHS<br>EN ISO 12100-1:2010, EN ISO 13849-1:2015, EN ISO 13849-2:2012, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009, EN 61000-6-2:2005, EN 61000-6-3:2007 |
| Functional safety data                 |   |
| EN ISO 13849-1:2016                    | Up to PL e (depending on number of operations per year)<br>B <sub>10d</sub> : 2 000 000 to middle position, 968 000 to bottom position  |
| Electrical data                        |   |
| Current allowed, three-position button | Per channel: Maximum +30 VDC, 20 mA, (Minimum +10 VDC, 8 mA)  |
| Current allowed, extra button          | Maximum 500 mA  |
| Operation force                        | Approx. 15 N for three-position buttons (ON)<br>Approx. 45 N for three-position buttons (OFF)<br>Approx. 2.5 N for top/front push button  |
| Mechanical data                        |   |
| Operating temperature                  | -10 ... +50 °C  |
| Protection class                       | IP65  |
| Mechanical life                        | 1 000 000 cycles to middle position   |
| Weight                                 | Approx. 0.2 kg without cable  |

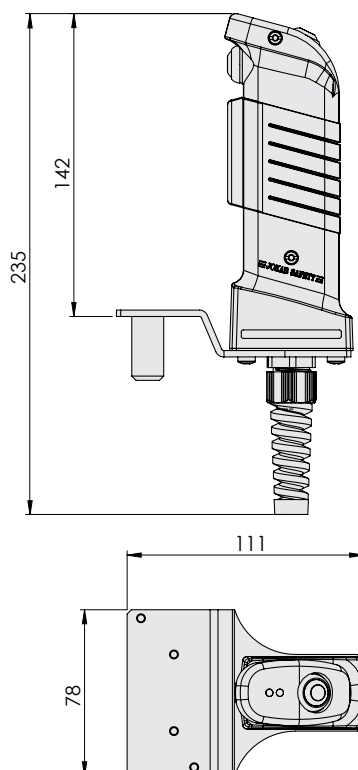
### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for: [JSHD4\\_2TLC172072M0201](#)

### Dimension drawings



JSHD4-2-AD



JSHD4-2-AL

All dimensions in mm

# Three-position device

## HD5

HD5 is a three-position device developed to meet most demands of the Food and Beverage industry.

A three-position device is used to allow a limited movement of the machine when the operator is in the dangerous area, for example during troubleshooting, test running and programming. The operator pushes the larger black button to a middle position in order to allow a movement. In case of danger, the operator will either release the button or squeeze it to its bottom position and the machine will stop.

The housing of the HD5 is made of PPh, that not only is approved for contact with foodstuff, but also resists the most commonly used chemicals during cleaning in the Food and Beverage industry. Without sharp edges, there are no places where dirt and bacteria can be accumulated. The construction of the HD5 prevents condensation inside the product when subject to temperature changes in a wet environment. The PPh used is fiberglass reinforced to prevent breakage and minimize risk of small broken bits falling in the foodstuff.



### Safety and protection

#### Safe inspection

Up to PL e/Cat 4, with TÜV and cULus approval.

Home position sensor to detect when the device is out of its holder.



### Optimum interface

#### Ergonomic, flexible and suitable for Food and Beverage

HD5 is easy to operate with additional buttons, integrated emergency stop button and flash-light.

Housing material minimizes risk of breakage and is approved for contact with foodstuff.

No places where dirt and bacteria can be accumulated.



### Continuous operation

#### Avoid unnecessary process stops

HD5 allows the operators to safely inspect the manufacturing process without completely stopping the machine. Resistant to most cleaning fluids and chemicals in Food and Beverage.

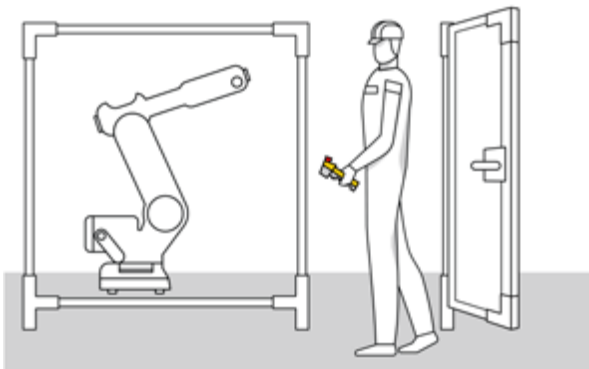
## Applications and features

### HD5

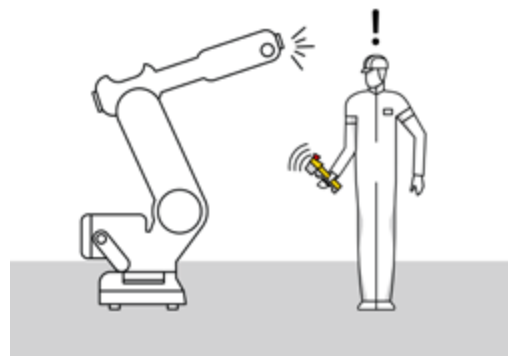
#### Applications

##### Safe troubleshooting, programming and testing

If the operator has to enter a risk area for troubleshooting or test running, it is extremely important that he/she is able to stop the machinery without having to rely on someone else pushing a stop button. In addition, no-one else should be able to start the machinery after it has been stopped by the operator. An operator who is under pressure must also be able to give a stop signal, whether in panic he/she pushes harder on the button or just releases it.



HD5 three-position control device can be used for troubleshooting, programming and test running in situations where no other protection is available or feasible. HD5 allows the operator to safely inspect the process without completely stopping the machine. The big black button has 3 distinct positions: released, pressed gently and pressed hard. The middle position allows the machine to run with limited speed or range, but when released or pressed hard the machine stops.



#### Features

##### Indication LEDs

Green and a red high intensity LEDs are integrated in the top of the housing. Their function is user-defined and they can be used, e.g. to indicate whether the three-position device is in the middle position or not.

##### Front button and top buttons

The function of the additional buttons is user-defined. They can be used, e.g. for a start/stop function for individual movements etc.

##### Flashlight

An integrated flashlight can be used to help e.g. troubleshooting in dark spaces.

##### Home position sensor

Used with an active holder, this sensor detects whether the HD5 is in place in its holder.

##### Emergency stop button with integrated LED in housing

Some models are fitted with an emergency stop button and two rows of LEDs are integrated into the housing of the HD5, below the emergency stop button, one green and one red.

##### Adapted to food and beverage

HD5 is specifically developed with focus on the requirements in food and beverage applications.

- It has a hygienic design with rounded edges and leaning surfaces to prevent collection of water and dirt.
- The operating surfaces of the buttons are directly injected in the housing.
- The plastics used are approved for food and beverage industry (PHH G30).
- The markings are laser permanent in order not to contaminate any food.
- An anti-condensation membrane prevents moist from building up inside.

## Ordering information

### HD5



HD5-S-102



HD5-S-104



HD5-S-111



HD5-M-001

#### HD5 ordering information

| Emergency stop with LED | Home position sensor | Motion sensor | LED flashlight | Connector | Two top buttons | Type      | Order code      |
|-------------------------|----------------------|---------------|----------------|-----------|-----------------|-----------|-----------------|
| No                      | No                   | No            | No             | M23-12    | No              | HD5-S-102 | 2TLA023001R0000 |
|                         |                      |               |                |           | Yes             | HD5-S-104 | 2TLA023001R0200 |
| Yes                     | Yes                  | Yes           | Yes            | M23-19    | Yes             | HD5-S-111 | 2TLA023001R0100 |



#### HD5 accessories

| Description                                    | Suitable for  | Type          | Order code      |
|--|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Active holder (for home position sensor)       | All models    | HD5-M-001     | 2TLA920509R0001 |
| Passive holder                                 | All models    | HD5-M-002     | 2TLA920509R0002 |
| 10 m cable with M23-12 female connector        | HD5-S-102/104 | JSD-TK10-12   | 2TLA930051R0000 |
| 5 m cable with M23-12 female connector         | HD5-S-102/104 | JSD-TK5-12    | 2TLA930050R0000 |
| 10 m spiral cable with M23-12 female connector | HD5-S-102/104 | JSD-TK100S-12 | 2TLA930034R0000 |

## Technical data

### HD5

#### Technical data

|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <b>Approvals</b>                 |    |
| <b>Conformity</b>                | <br>2006/42/EC - Machines<br>2014/30/EU - EMC<br>2011/65/EU - RoHS 2<br>2015/863/EU - RoHS 3<br>EN ISO 12100-1:2010, EN ISO 13849-1:2015, EN 62061:2015, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009 |
| <b>Functional safety data</b>    |   |
| <b>Three-position switches</b>   | Up to PL e, category 4, SILCL3  |
| <b>Emergency stop button</b>     | B <sub>10d</sub> : 2 000 000 released to middle to released position<br>B <sub>10d</sub> : 968 000 middle to end to middle position   |
| <b>EN ISO 13849-1:2016</b>       | B <sub>10d</sub> : 250 000  |
| <b>Electrical data</b>           |   |
| <b>Operational voltage</b>       | 24 VDC, tolerance 20.4 - 27.6 VDC   |
| <b>Overall power consumption</b> | < 150 mA  |
| <b>Connection</b>                | M23 male connector, 12 or 19 pin  |
| <b>Actuating force</b>           |   |
| <b>Three-position button</b>     | Approx. 20 N from release to middle position<br>Approx. 45 N from middle to end position  |
| <b>Additional buttons</b>        | Approx. 3 N for front button<br>Approx. 7 N for top button  |
| <b>Mechanical data</b>           |   |
| <b>Operating temperature</b>     | - 10 ... +50 °C (no icing, no direct sunlight)  |
| <b>Protection class</b>          | IP65  |
| <b>Weight</b>                    | Approx. 0.2 kg without connection cable   |
| <b>Material</b>                  |   |
| <b>Housing</b>                   | Fiberglass reinforced plastic, PPh + 30% glass fibre  |
| <b> Holders</b>                  | Fiberglass reinforced plastic, PPh + 30% glass fibre  |
| <b>Operating buttons</b>         | TPE   |

#### More information

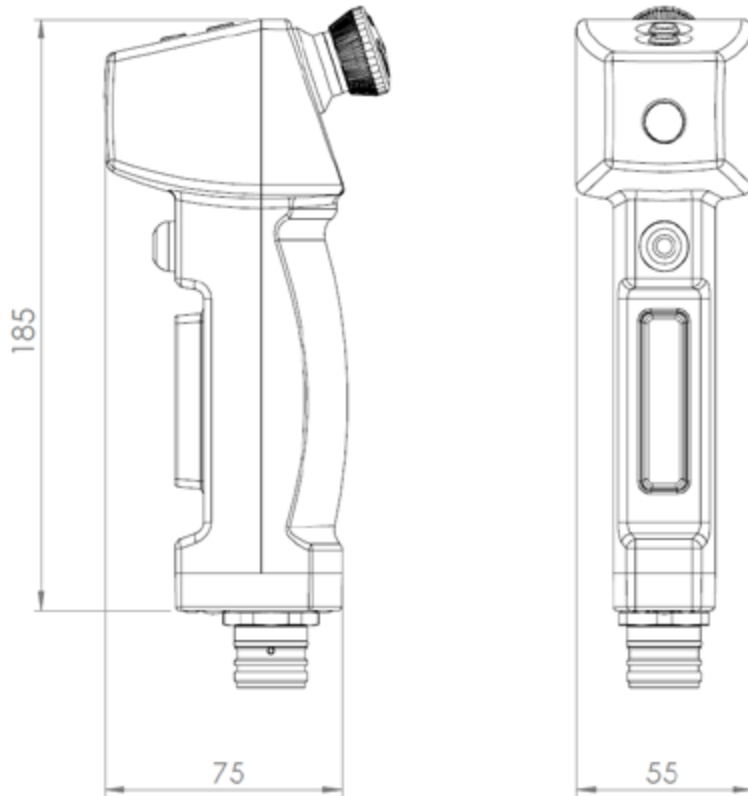
For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for:

HD5 [2TLC010052M0201](#)

## Dimension drawings

HD5

### Dimension drawings



HD5-S-111

All dimensions in mm







---

# Emergency stops and pilot devices




- 6-2**            **Introduction and overview**
  
- 6-6**            **Emergency stop buttons**  
**Smile, INCA, EStrong and Compact**
  
- 6-16**          **Safety stop buttons**  
**Smile, INCA, and Compact**
  
- 6-24**          **Pull wire emergency stop switch**  
**LineStrong**
  
- 6-34**          **Push-button box**  
**Smile 41**
  
- 6-40**          **Reset button**  
**Smile**
  
- 6-46**          **Pilot devices**  
**Modular and Compact range**

# Introduction and overview

## Selection guide

ABB offers a full range of buttons and pull wires for emergency stop functions, as well as pilot devices for e.g. reset functions.

|                     | Emergency stop buttons   | Safety stop buttons  | Reset buttons   |
|---------------------|--|--|---|
| <b>Name</b>         | Smile, Inca, EStrong, Compact  | Smile, Inca, Compact   | Smile   |
| <b>Image</b>        |  |  |   |
| <b>Description</b>  | Emergency stop buttons for external mounting and panel mounting in different sizes and material  | Safety stop buttons for external mounting and panel mounting   | Small and easy to install reset button  |
| <b>Applications</b> | Safely stop dangerous machine functions  | Safely stop a limited part of a dangerous machine  | Pushbutton for resetting safety devices   |
| <b>Advantages</b>   | Models with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Compact size</li> <li>- Robust enclosure for harsh environments</li> <li>- Quick installation with M12 connectors</li> <li>- LED indication</li> </ul> | Models with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Compact size</li> <li>- Robust enclosure for harsh environments</li> <li>- Quick installation with M12 connectors</li> <li>- LED indication</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Compact size</li> <li>- Quick installation</li> <li>- M12 connector</li> <li>- LED indication</li> </ul> |

|                     | Pull wire emergency stop switches   | Push button boxes  | Pilot devices  |
|---------------------|---|--|--|
| <b>Name</b>         | <b>LineStrong</b>   | <b>Smile 41</b>  | <b>Modular range, compact range</b>  |
| <b>Image</b>        |   |   |    |
| <b>Description</b>  | Emergency stop switches in robust enclosures for pull wires of various lengths.   | Gathers up to four push buttons, including emergency stop, in a single compact device  | Push buttons, selector switches, pilot lights, joysticks and signal towers in a compact and robust design  |
| <b>Applications</b> | Emergency stop line to safely stop conveyor belts and long transportation lines.  | Emergency stop and pushbuttons in one device   | For control and indication of machines and processes   |
| <b>Advantages</b>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Up to 200 m wire with one switch</li> <li>- Reliable mechanical connection</li> <li>- Robust construction</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Compact size</li> <li>- Quick installation</li> <li>- M12 connector</li> <li>- LED indication</li> <li>- Highly adaptable with several button colors</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Compact size</li> <li>- Up to IP69K</li> <li>- Long life-time thanks to self-cleaning contacts</li> <li>- Quick snap-on design for simple installation without tools</li> </ul> |

---

## Introduction and overview

### Selection orientation

#### Why an emergency stop is necessary

If a machine breaks down or if someone is in danger, anyone should be able to stop the machine, regardless of their knowledge of the specific application.



#### When a safety stop could be used

A safety stop (also called machine stop) should be used to safely stop a part of the machine, e.g. as a stop for an individual hazardous motion. It should not be used as an emergency stop and stop the complete machine. Likewise, an emergency stop with red push button must not be used as a safety stop.



In order to separate the safety stop function from the emergency stop function, the safety stop buttons should be colored black.

#### When a pull wire emergency stop could be used

A pull wire emergency stop is easier to install than a system of several emergency stop buttons along a carriage path which makes it ideal for installations over long distances. LineStrong can handle wires up to 200 m on one single switch and the emergency command can be initiated from any point along the installed wire length.



## Introduction and overview

### Standards

Important standards to follow when implementing emergency stop functions are e.g. EN ISO 13850 and EN ISO 60204-1.

#### Stop categories

The following stop categories are defined in the standards:

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| Stop Category 0 | stopping by immediate removal of power to the machine actuators   |
| Stop Category 1 | a controlled stop with power available to the machine actuators to achieve the stop and then removal of power when the stop is achieved |
| Stop Category 2 | a controlled stop with power left available to the actuators  |

Note that these categories should not be confused with the categories used to describe the architecture when calculating PL in EN ISO 13849. The risk assessment should determine which stop category to use, but stop category 2 is normally considered not to be suitable for emergency stops.

#### Text and symbols

Neither the emergency stop nor its background should be labelled with text or symbols. It has previously been common with white arrows indicating the direction of unlatching, but this is not allowed anymore.

#### Location and signs

The risk assessment should determine the locations of the emergency stop buttons, but they should in general be placed at operator stations, at locations where man/machine interaction is required and at entry/exit points. Signs to mark the location of emergency stops are not required, but if used they should be green with white markings.

# Emergency stop buttons

## Smile, INCA, EStrong and Compact

Emergency stop buttons are used to safely stop dangerous machine functions.

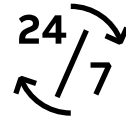
ABB offers a wide range of emergency stop buttons for external mounting or panel mounting, with plastic or metal housing and for different types of connections.



Easy to install



Optimum interface



Continuous operation

### Compact size

Models with a compact and appealing housing saves space and makes it easy to place.

### Quick installation

Quick and easy installation of models with features such as centered mounting holes, removable terminal blocks and M12 connectors.

### Serial connection

Tina models save cable length and installation time with serial connection.

### Highly adaptable

Several models to choose between depending on position, installation and function.

### Reliable in extreme conditions

Robust models and models in stainless steel for use in demanding environments.

### LED diagnostics

Models with integrated LED diagnostics reduce downtime when troubleshooting.



## Models and application

### Emergency stop buttons

#### Models for external mounting

##### Smile

Smile is a small and easy to install emergency stop button. Its size allows mounting in reduced spaces, and its centered mounting holes makes it especially easy to mount on aluminum extrusions (e.g. Quick-Guard fencing system). Smile is available with M12 connectors or cable.

Smile has an integrated LED in the button that shows the status and simplifies error tracking.

The standard models of Smile have 2 contacts and can be used with safety controllers from all brands. Smile Tina models belong to the ABB DYNlink solution, with the advantages of serial connection using only one channel and still reaching Cat. 4/PL e.



##### Compact

Compact emergency stop buttons offer a robust enclosure with a high IP rating that fulfill the demands in severe and humid environments, such as food and beverage industry. Compact can be fitted with a Tina adapter for use in a DYNlink solution (Tina 2A, Tina 2B or Tina 3A).



##### EStrong

EStrong is an emergency stop button designed to provide a robust unit in exposed and severe environments. The unit has a stainless steel enclosure with IP69K rating that withstands high pressure and high temperature wash-down. It is therefore ideally suited for industries with special demands, such as food processing or chemical industry.



#### Models for panel mounting

##### INCA

INCA is an emergency stop button for panel mounting, designed for installation in 22.5 mm holes. Its removable terminal block facilitates connection and exchange.

INCA has an integrated LED in the button that shows the status and simplifies error tracking.

The standard model of INCA has 2 contacts and can be used with safety controllers from all brands. INCA Tina models belongs to the ABB DYNlink solution, with the advantages of serial connection using only one channel and still reaching Cat. 4/PL e.



##### Smile Reverse

Smile Reverse is identical to the regular Smile emergency stop button besides from being reversed in order to be mounted on the back side of a panel. Smile Reverse has an IP65 housing that makes it suitable in panels where moisture and dust may occur.

Smile Reverse has an integrated LED in the button that shows the status and simplifies error tracking.

The standard model of Smile Reverse has 2 contacts and can be used with safety controllers from all brands. The Smile Reverse Tina model belongs to the ABB DYNlink solution, with the advantages of serial connection using only one channel and still reaching Cat. 4/PL e.



## Application

Emergency stop buttons are used to safely stop a dangerous machine function in order to prevent an accident, or minimize the consequences of an accident. An emergency stop should be a complement to other safety devices, and not a replacement for them.



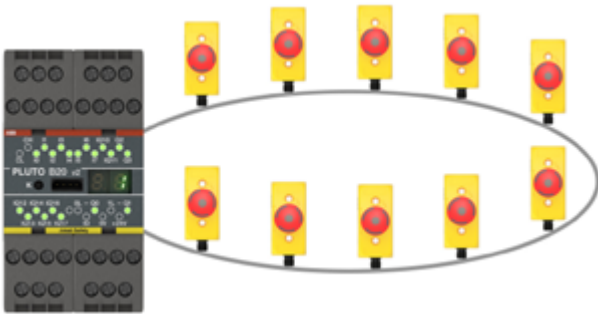
## Features

Emergency stop buttons

Communication features

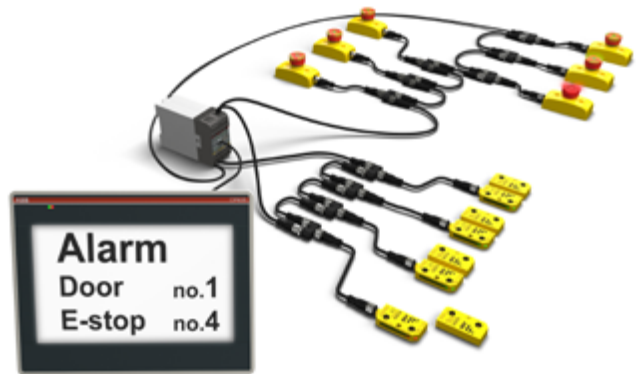
### DYNlink

Emergency stop buttons with Tina in their name belong to the DYNlink solution, which enables serial connection using only one channel and still reaching Cat. 4/PL e. DYNlink devices must be used with Vital safety controller or Pluto programmable safety controller. Up to 30 DYNlink devices can be connected in series to Vital and up to 10 can be connected to each input on Pluto.



### StatusBus

StatusBus is a simple and cost effective way to collect the status information of emergency stops and safety sensors. The StatusBus functionality is available with some DYNlink devices and allows to collect the status of each individual safety device, even when connected in series. A Pluto programmable safety controller must be used to read the StatusBus information, and a single input on Pluto can collect the status of up to 30 safety devices. The devices are connected using standard cable and M12-5 connectors. No specific bus cable or extra communication module is necessary.



## Ordering information

### Emergency stop buttons



2TLC12863F0201

Smile 10 EA Tina



2TLC12857F0201

Smile 11 EC Tina



2TLC1218F0201

Smile 12 EA



ABB Compact emergency stop shroud



2TLC12685F0201

EStrongZ and EStrongZ LED



2TLC12861F0201

Smile 11 EAR



2TLC12363F0201

INCA 1

#### External mounting

| Description                             | Type of safety signal | Connection type       | Feature                  | Type                 | Order code      |
|---|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| Compact size<br>Plastic housing<br>IP65 | DYNlink               | 1 m cable from bottom | Status LED               | Smile 10 EA Tina     | 2TLA030050R0400 |
|   |                       | 1 x M12-5 male        | Status LED               | Smile 11 EA Tina     | 2TLA030050R0000 |
|   |                       | 1 x M12-5 male        | Status LED,<br>StatusBus | Smile 11 EC Tina     | 2TLA030050R0900 |
|   |                       | 2 x M12-5 male        | Status LED               | Smile 12 EA Tina     | 2TLA030050R0200 |
|   | 2 NC                  | 1 m cable from bottom | Status LED               | Smile 10 EA          | 2TLA030051R0400 |
|   |                       | 1 m leads from bottom | -                        | Smile 10 EK          | 2TLA030051R0600 |
|   |                       | 1 x M12-5 male        | Status LED               | Smile 11 EA          | 2TLA030051R0000 |
|   |                       | 2 x M12-5 male        | Status LED               | Smile 12 EA          | 2TLA030051R0200 |
| Plastic housing<br>IP66, IP67 and IP69K | 2 NC*                 | 2 x M20 conduits      | -                        | CEPY1-1002 (Compact) | 1SFA619821R1002 |
|   |                       |                       | With shroud              | CEPY1-2002 (Compact) | 1SFA619821R2002 |
| Metal housing<br>IP67 and IP69K         | 2 NO + 2 NC           | 3 x M20 conduits      | Status LED               | EStrongZ LED         | 2TLA050220R0222 |
|   |                       |                       | -                        | EStrongZ             | 2TLA050220R0020 |

\* Can be adapted to DYNlink with Tina

#### Panel mounting

| IP rating                      | Depth | Connection type          | Type of safety signal | Feature                  | Type              | Order code      |
|--------------------------------|-------|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| IP65                           | 26 mm | 1 x M12-5 male           | DYNlink               | Status LED               | Smile 11 EAR Tina | 2TLA030050R0100 |
|                                |       |                          | 2 NC                  | Status LED               | Smile 11 EAR      | 2TLA030051R0100 |
| Button IP65,<br>connector IP20 | 53 mm | Removable terminal block | DYNlink               | Status LED               | INCA 1 Tina       | 2TLA030054R0000 |
|                                |       |                          |                       | Status LED,<br>StatusBus | INCA 1 EC Tina    | 2TLA030054R1400 |
|                                |       |                          | 2 NC                  | Status LED               | INCA 1            | 2TLA030054R0100 |

# Accessories

## Emergency stop buttons



M12-3S

2TLCT2034V0201



Tina 8A

2TLCT2471F0201



E-sign 22.5

2TLCT2906F0201

### Connection accessories

| Description  | Type     | Order code      |
|--|----------|-----------------|
| <b>Connection accessories</b>  |          |                 |
| M12 Y-connector for serial connection of device with StatusBus functionality.  | M12-3S   | 2TLA020055R0600 |
| M12 Y-connector for serial connection of devices without StatusBus functionality.                                    | M12-3A   | 2TLA020055R0000 |
| Connection block for the serial connection of up to 4 DYNlink devices with 12-5 connectors.                          | Tina 4A  | 2TLA020054R0300 |
| Connection block for the serial connection of up to 8 DYNlink devices with 12-5 connectors.                          | Tina 8A  | 2TLA020054R0500 |
| Adaptation unit for DYNlink solution with M20 fitting. For e.g. Compact.   | Tina 2A* | 2TLA020054R0100 |
| Adaptation unit for DYNlink solution, internal assembly. For e.g. Compact.   | Tina 2B* | 2TLA020054R1100 |
| Adaptation unit for DYNlink solution with M20 fitting and M12 connector. For e.g. connecting Compact to Pluto/Vital. | Tina 3A* | 2TLA020054R0200 |
| Termination for Smile 12   | JST2     | 2TLA030051R1300 |

### Accessories

|  |                      |                 |
|--|----------------------|-----------------|
| Emergency stop sign, yellow, no text, for INCA (22.5mm)  | E-Sign 22.5          | 2TLA030054R0900 |
| Emergency stop sign, yellow, no text, for Smile (32.5mm) | E-Sign 32.5          | 2TLA030054R1000 |
| Yellow surround for Inca                                 | Surround for Inca    | 2TLA030054R0400 |
| Yellow shroud for Compact                                | CA1-8053             | 1SFA619920R8053 |
| Stainless steel cable gland, for EStrong                 | Gland M20x1.5        | 2TLA050040R0002 |
| Stainless steel conduit plug, for EStrong                | Conduit Plug M20x1.5 | 2TLA050040R0004 |
| LED Green/Red 230 VAC, for EStrong                       | LED 230              | 2TLA050211R0003 |

\* For more information about Tina adapter units, please see Pluto and Vital chapters.

### Cable with connectors

| Connector | Female/male   | Length | Special feature                 | Type            | Order code      |
|-----------|---------------|--------|---------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| M12-5     | Female        | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C31         | 2TLA020056R0500 |
|           |               | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C61         | 2TLA020056R0000 |
|           |               | 10 m   | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C61HE       | 2TLA020056R8000 |
|           |               | 10 m   |                                 | M12-C101        | 2TLA020056R1000 |
|           |               | 20 m   | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C101HE      | 2TLA020056R8100 |
|           |               | 20 m   |                                 | M12-C201        | 2TLA020056R1400 |
|           | Female + male | 0.3 m  |                                 | M12-C0312       | 2TLA020056R5800 |
|           |               | 0.06 m |                                 | M12-C00612      | 2TLA020056R6300 |
|           |               | 1 m    |                                 | M12-C112        | 2TLA020056R2000 |
|           |               | 3 m    |                                 | M12-C312        | 2TLA020056R2100 |
|           |               | 6 m    |                                 | M12-C612        | 2TLA020056R2200 |
|           |               | 10 m   |                                 | M12-C1012       | 2TLA020056R2300 |
| Male      |               |        | Angled female connector         | M12-C1012V2     | 2TLA020056R6700 |
|           |               | 16 m   |                                 | M12-C1612       | 2TLA020056R5400 |
|           |               | 20 m   |                                 | M12-C2012       | 2TLA020056R2400 |
|           | 6 m           |        | M12-C62                         | 2TLA020056R0200 |                 |
|           | 10 m          |        | M12-C102                        | 2TLA020056R1200 |                 |



M12-C61

2TLCT2951F0201



M12-C61HE

2TLCT010003F0201



2TLC179657F0201

**M12-C01**

2TLC00098F0201

**C5 cable**


---

**Separate cables and connectors**

| Description                                   | Type           | Order code      |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>Connectors</b>                             |                |                 |
| M12-5 pole female, straight                   | M12-C01        | 2TLA020055R1000 |
| M12-5 pole male, straight                     | M12-C02        | 2TLA020055R1100 |
| <b>Cable with 5 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 10 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 10 m  | 2TLA020057R0001 |
| 50 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R0005 |
| 100 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R0010 |
| 200 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R0020 |
| 500 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R0050 |

## Technical data

### Emergency stop buttons

#### Technical data

##### Approvals

Smile, INCA



Smile Tina, INCA Tina



EStrong



Compact



##### Conformity

Smile, INCA



2006/42/EC - Machinery  
 2011/65/EU - RoHS  
 EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13849-1:2008/AC:2009, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2008, EN ISO 13850:2008

Smile Tina, INCA Tina



2006/42/EC - Machinery  
 2004/108/EC - EMC  
 EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13849-1:2008, EN 62061:2005, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009, IEC 60664-1:2007, EN 61000-6-2:2005, EN 61000-6-4:2007, EN 60947-5-5:2005, EN ISO 13850:2006

EStrong



2006/42/EG - Machinery  
 2011/65/EU - RoHS  
 EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13850:2015, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009+AC:2010, EN 60947-5-5:1997+A1:2017, EN 60947-5-1:2004+A1:2009

Compact



2006/42/EC - Machinery  
 2014/30/EU - EMC  
 EN 60947-1:2007/A1:2011/A2:2014, EN 60947-5-1:2004/A1:2009, EN 60947-5-5:1997/A1:2005/A11:2013, EN ISO 13850:2008

##### Functional safety data

EN 61508:2010

Up to SIL3, depending on system architecture

EN 62061:2005

Up to SILCL3, depending on system architecture

EN ISO 13849-1:2008

Up to Cat. 4, PL e, depending on system architecture

Smile, INCA

 $B10_d = 100\ 000$ 

Smile Tina, INCA Tina

 $PFH_d = 4.66 \times 10^{-9}$ 

EStrong

 $B10_d = 1\ 500\ 000$ 

Compact

 $B10_d = 250\ 000$

## Technical data

### Emergency stop buttons

#### Technical data

##### Electrical data

###### Operating voltage

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Smile, INCA           | 17-27 VDC ± 10%   |
| Smile Tina, INCA Tina | +24 VDC +15% -25%   |
| EStrong               | 230 VAC / +24 VDC (the LED is +24 VDC originally, but can be replaced with a 230 VAC accessory) |
| Compact               | 230 VAC / +24 VDC   |

##### Mechanical data

Mechanical life >50 000 operations

###### Operating temperature

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| Smile, INCA | -10...+55 °C |
| EStrong     | -25...+80 °C |
| Compact     | -25...+70 °C |

###### Protection class

|             |                   |
|-------------|-------------------|
| Smile, INCA | IP65              |
| EStrong     | IP67, IP69K       |
| Compact     | IP66, IP67, IP69K |

###### Weight

|         |                            |
|---------|----------------------------|
| Smile   | 65 g                       |
| INCA    | 45 g                       |
| EStrong | 820 g                      |
| Compact | 108 g, 124 g (with shroud) |

###### Material

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| Smile   | Polyamide PA66, Macromelt, polybutylenterephthalate PBT, Polypropene PP, UL 94 V0 |
| INCA    | Polyamide PA66, Macromelt, polybutylenterephthalate PBT, Polypropene PP, UL 94 V0 |
| EStrong | Stainless steel 316 housing   |
| Compact | Polycarbonate   |

#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for:

Smile [2TLC172097M0201](#)

INCA [2TLC172163M0201](#)

EStrong [2TLC172247M0201](#)

Compact [1SFC151005C0201](#)

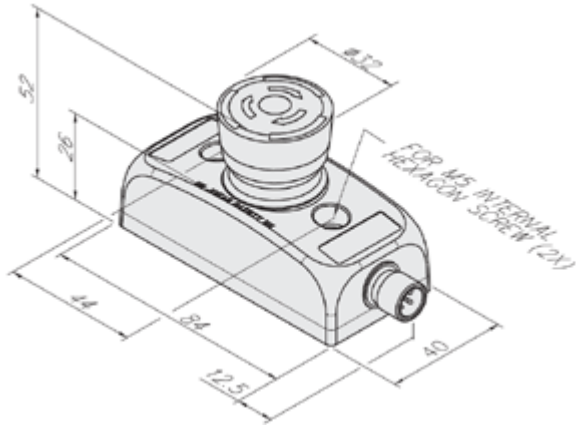
#### Connection diagrams

For connection diagrams of emergency stop buttons please see <https://library.abb.com/>

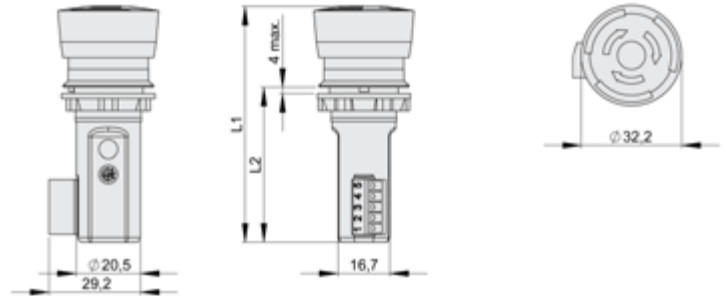
## Dimension drawings

### Emergency stop buttons

#### Smile

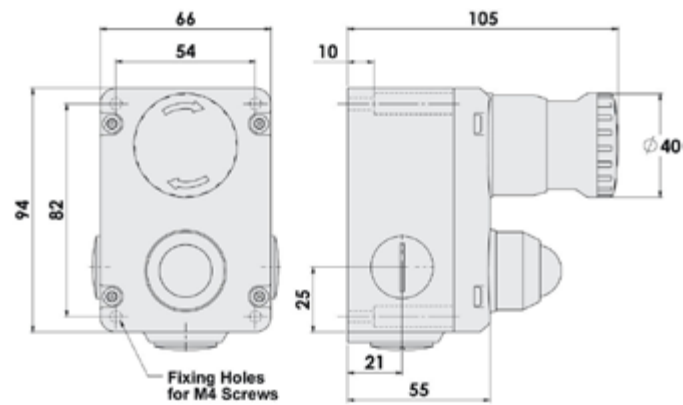


#### INCA

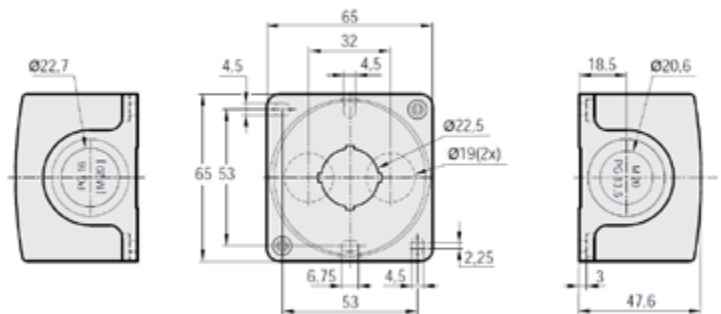


| Type          | L1<br>mm | L2<br>mm   |
|---------------|----------|------------|
| INCA1 EC Tina | 75.5     | 49.5 ± 0.5 |
| INCA1         | 80       | 54 ± 0.5   |
| INCA1 Tina    | 80       | 54 ± 0.5   |

#### EStrong



#### Compact (housing only)



All dimensions in mm





# Safety stop buttons

## Smile, INCA and Compact

Safety stop buttons are used to safely stop a certain part of a dangerous machine.

ABB offers safety stop buttons to suit different needs of connection and communication. Models are available for e.g. external mounting or panel mounting, in compact size or robust design, adapted for the DYNlink solution or with 2 NC contacts.



Easy to install

### Compact size

Models with a compact and appealing housing saves space and makes it easy to place.

### Quick installation

Quick and easy installation of models with features such as centered mounting holes, removable terminal blocks and M12 connectors.

### Serial connection

Tina models save cable length and installation time with serial connection.



Optimum interface

### Highly adaptable

Several models to choose between depending on position, installation and function.

### Reliable in extreme conditions

Robust models for use in demanding environments.



Continuous operation

### LED diagnostics

Models with integrated LED diagnostics reduce downtime when troubleshooting.

---

## Applications and features

### Safety stop buttons

#### Applications

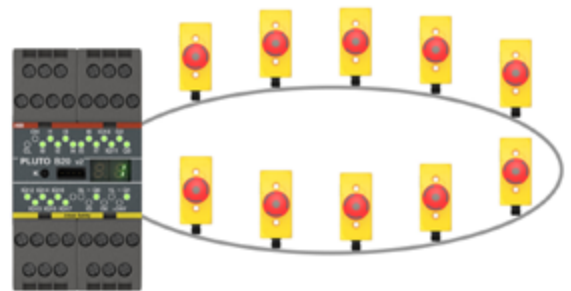
A safety stop (also called machine stop) can be used to safely stop a part of the machine, e.g. as a stop for an individual hazardous machine function. It may not be used as an emergency stop and stop the complete machine or production line. Likewise, an emergency stop with red push button should not be used as a safety stop. In order to separate the safety stop function from the emergency stop function, the safety stop buttons should be colored black.



#### Features

##### **DYNlink**

Safety stop buttons with Tina in their name belong to the DYNlink solution, which enables serial connection using only one channel and still reaching Cat. 4/PL e. DYNlink devices must be used with Vital safety controller or Pluto programmable safety controller. Up to 30 DYNlink devices can be connected in series to Vital and up to 10 can be connected to each input on Pluto.



## Models

### Safety stop buttons

#### Safety stop buttons for external mounting

##### Smile

Smile is a small and easy to install safety stop button. Its size allows mounting in reduced spaces, and its centered mounting holes makes it especially easy to mount on aluminum extrusions (e.g. Quick-Guard fencing system).

Smile has an integrated LED in the button that shows the status and simplifies error tracking.

The standard model of Smile has 2 contacts and can be used with safety controllers from all brands. The Smile Tina model belongs to the ABB DYNlink solution, with the advantages of serial connection using only one channel and still reaching Cat. 4/PL e.

Smile safety stops are identical to the corresponding Smile emergency stops apart from the color of the button.



##### Compact

The Compact safety stop button offers a robust enclosure with a high IP rating that fulfills the demands in severe and humid environments, such as food and beverage industry. Compact can be fitted with a Tina adapter for use in a DYNlink solution (Tina 2A, Tina 2B or Tina 3A).

Compact safety stop is identical to Compact emergency stop apart from the color of the button.



#### Safety stops for panel mounting

##### INCA

INCA is a safety stop button for panel mounting, designed for installation in 22.5 mm holes. Its removable terminal block facilitates connection and exchange.

INCA has an integrated LED in the button that shows the status and simplifies error tracking.

The standard model of INCA has 2 contacts and can be used with safety controllers from all brands. INCA Tina belongs to the ABB DYNlink solution, with the advantages of serial connection using only one channel and still reaching Cat. 4/PL e.

INCA safety stop is identical to INCA emergency stop apart from the color of the button.



## Ordering information

### Safety stop buttons



2TLCT2918F0201

Smile 11 SA Tina



CEP1-1002



2TLCT2955F0201

INCA 1S



2TLCT2471F0201

Tina 8A

#### Safety stop buttons

| Mounting | Type of safety signal | Connection type       | Feature     | Type                | Order code      |
|----------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| External | DYNlink               | 1 m cable from bottom | Status LED  | Smile 11 SA Tina    | 2TLA030050R0500 |
|          | 2 NC                  | 1 x M12-5             | Status LED  | Smile 11 SA         | 2TLA030051R0900 |
|          | 2 NC*                 | 2 x M20 conduits      | -           | CEP1-1002 (Compact) | 1SFA619811R1002 |
|          |                       |                       | With shroud | CEP1-2002 (Compact) | 1SFA619811R2002 |
| Panel    | DYNlink               | 5 pole terminal block | Status LED  | INCA 1S Tina        | 2TLA030054R0200 |
|          | 2 NC                  | 5 pole terminal block | Status LED  | INCA 1S             | 2TLA030054R0300 |

\* Can be adapted to DYNlink with Tina

#### Accessories

| Description  | Type      | Order code      |
|--|-----------|-----------------|
| M12 Y-connector for serial connection of devices without StatusBus functionality.                                    | M12-3A    | 2TLA020055R0000 |
| Connection block for the serial connection of up to 4 DYNlink devices with 12-5 connectors.                          | Tina 4A   | 2TLA020054R0300 |
| Connection block for the serial connection of up to 8 DYNlink devices with 12-5 connectors.                          | Tina 8A   | 2TLA020054R0500 |
| Grey shroud for Compact  | CA1-8054  | 1SFA619920R8054 |
| Adaptation unit for DYNlink solution with M20 fitting. For e.g. Compact.   | Tina 2A * | 2TLA020054R0100 |
| Adaptation unit for DYNlink solution, internal assembly. For e.g. Compact.   | Tina 2B * | 2TLA020054R1100 |
| Adaptation unit for DYNlink solution with M20 fitting and M12 connector. For e.g. connecting Compact to Pluto/Vital. | Tina 3A * | 2TLA020054R0200 |

\* For more information about Tina adapter units, please see Pluto and Vital chapters.

## Cable and connectors

### Safety stop buttons



M12-C61

2TLC172959F0201



M12-C61HE

2TLC010003F0201

#### Cable with connectors

| Connector | Female/male   | Length                  | Special feature                 | Type            | Order code      |
|-----------|---------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| M12-5     | Female        | 3 m                     |                                 | M12-C31         | 2TLA020056R0500 |
|           |               | 6 m                     |                                 | M12-C61         | 2TLA020056R0000 |
|           |               | 10 m                    | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C61HE       | 2TLA020056R8000 |
|           |               | 10 m                    |                                 | M12-C101        | 2TLA020056R1000 |
|           |               | 20 m                    | Harsh environment, halogen free | M12-C101HE      | 2TLA020056R8100 |
|           |               | 20 m                    |                                 | M12-C201        | 2TLA020056R1400 |
|           | Female + male | 0.3 m                   |                                 | M12-C0312       | 2TLA020056R5800 |
|           |               | 0.06 m                  |                                 | M12-C00612      | 2TLA020056R6300 |
|           |               | 1 m                     |                                 | M12-C112        | 2TLA020056R2000 |
|           |               | 3 m                     |                                 | M12-C312        | 2TLA020056R2100 |
|           |               | 6 m                     |                                 | M12-C612        | 2TLA020056R2200 |
|           |               | 10 m                    |                                 | M12-C1012       | 2TLA020056R2300 |
| 10 m      |               | Angled female connector | M12-C1012V2                     | 2TLA020056R6700 |                 |
| 16 m      |               |                         | M12-C1612                       | 2TLA020056R5400 |                 |
| 20 m      |               |                         | M12-C2012                       | 2TLA020056R2400 |                 |
| Male      |               | 6 m                     |                                 | M12-C62         | 2TLA020056R0200 |
|           |               | 10 m                    |                                 | M12-C102        | 2TLA020056R1200 |

#### Separate cables and connectors



M12-C01

2TLC172659F0201



C5 cable

2TLC000039F0201

| Description                                   | Type           | Order code      |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>Connectors</b>                             |                |                 |
| M12-5 pole female, straight                   | M12-C01        | 2TLA020055R1000 |
| M12-5 pole male, straight                     | M12-C02        | 2TLA020055R1100 |
| <b>Cable with 5 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 10 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 10 m  | 2TLA020057R0001 |
| 50 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R0005 |
| 100 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R0010 |
| 200 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R0020 |
| 500 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R0050 |

## Technical data

### Safety stop buttons

#### Technical data

##### Approvals

Smile, INCA



Smile Tina, INCA Tina



Compact



##### Conformity

Smile, INCA



2006/42/EC - Machinery  
2011/65/EU - RoHS  
EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13849-1:2008/AC:2009, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2008, EN ISO 13850:2008

Smile Tina, INCA Tina



2006/42/EC - Machinery  
2004/108/EC - EMC  
EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13849-1:2008, EN 62061:2005, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009, IEC 60664-1:2007,  
EN 61000-6-2:2005, EN 61000-6-4:2007, EN 60947-5-5:2005, EN ISO 13850:2006

Compact



2006/42/EC - Machinery  
2014/30/EU - EMC  
EN 60947-1:2007/A1:2011/A2:2014, EN 60947-5-1:2004/A1:2009, EN 60947-5-5:1997/A1:2005/A11:2013, EN ISO 13850:2008

##### Functional safety data

EN 61508:2010

Up to SIL3, depending on system architecture

EN 62061:2005

Up to SILCL3, depending on system architecture

EN ISO 13849-1:2008

Up to Cat. 4, PL e, depending on system architecture

Smile, INCA

 $B10_d = 100\,000$ 

Smile Tina, INCA Tina

 $PFH_D = 4.66 \times 10^{-9}$ 

Compact

 $B10_d = 50\,000$ 

##### Electrical data

###### Operating voltage

Smile, INCA

17-27 VDC  $\pm 10\%$ 

Smile Tina, INCA Tina

+24 VDC +15% -25%

Compact

230 VAC / +24 VDC

##### Mechanical data

###### Mechanical life

&gt;50 000 operations

###### Operating temperature

Smile, INCA

-10...+55 °C

Compact

-25...+70 °C

###### Protection class

Smile, INCA

IP65

Compact

IP66, IP67, IP69K

###### Weight

Smile

65 g

INCA

45 g

Compact

108 g, 124 g (with shroud)

###### Material

Smile

Polyamide PA66, Macromelt, polybutylenterephthalate PBT, Polypropene PP, UL 94 V0

INCA

Polyamide PA66, Macromelt, polybutylenterephthalate PBT, Polypropene PP, UL 94 V0

Compact

Polycarbonate

#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for:

Smile [2TLC172097M0201](#)

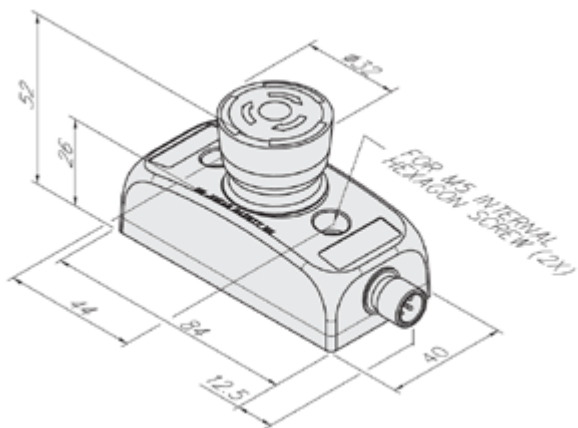
INCA [2TLC172163M0201](#)

Compact [1SFC151005C0201](#)

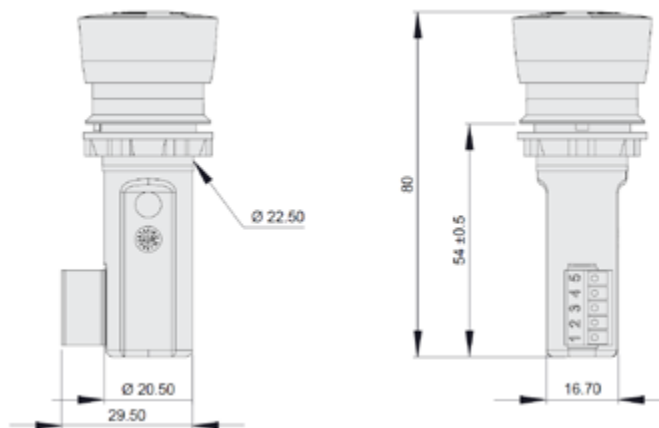
## Dimension drawings

### Safety stop buttons

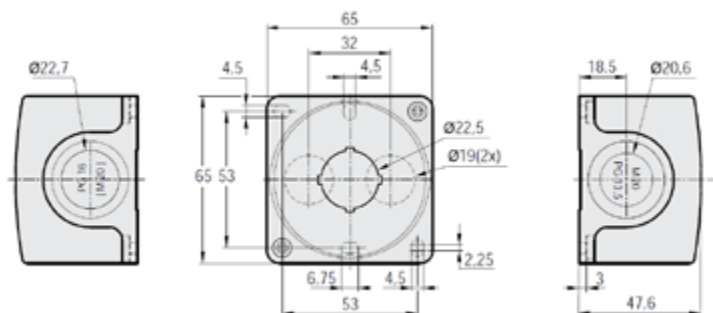
#### Smile



#### INCA



#### Compact (housing only)



All dimensions in mm





# Pull wire emergency stop switch

## LineStrong

LineStrong is a pull wire emergency stop switch, used for easy reach of the emergency stop function along machines and sections of conveyors.

A pull wire emergency stop switch allows to initiate the emergency stop command from any point along the installed wire length by pulling the wire. It replaces a series of emergency stop buttons and is easier to install.

LineStrong is also available in different models for different lengths of wires, with different housing material as well as an explosion proof version.



Easy to install

### Quick installation

A pull wire emergency stop switch is easier to install than a system of several emergency stop buttons along a carriage path.

### Highly adaptable

Several models to choose between gives a variety of mounting possibilities and features.

### Long wire length

Can handle wires up to 200 m on a single switch.



Safety and protection

### Easily accessible

Easy reach of the emergency stop function along machines, conveyors and processes.

### High level of safety

The positive forced disconnect contacts provide a high level of safety and are double switching, i.e. triggers emergency stop in both directions of the wire.



Continuous operation

### Reliable in extreme conditions

Robust construction makes LineStrong ideal for use in demanding environments.

### LED diagnostics

Integrated LED diagnostics ensures status can be seen easily from a distance.

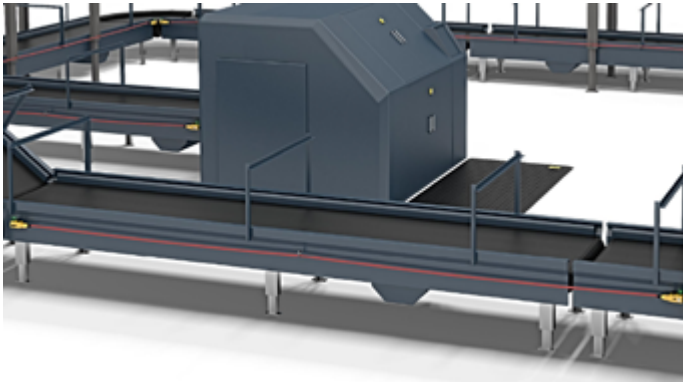
## Applications

### LineStrong

#### Instead of multiple emergency stops

A pull wire emergency stop switch is often placed along conveyor belts or carriage paths where access to the stop function must be possible along the whole line. It is often easier to install a pull wire emergency stop switch than to place multiple emergency stop buttons if the distance is longer.

LineStrong can handle wires up to 200 m on one single switch and since the emergency stop command can be initiated from any point along the wire, this gives better access to the emergency stop function than using emergency stop buttons.

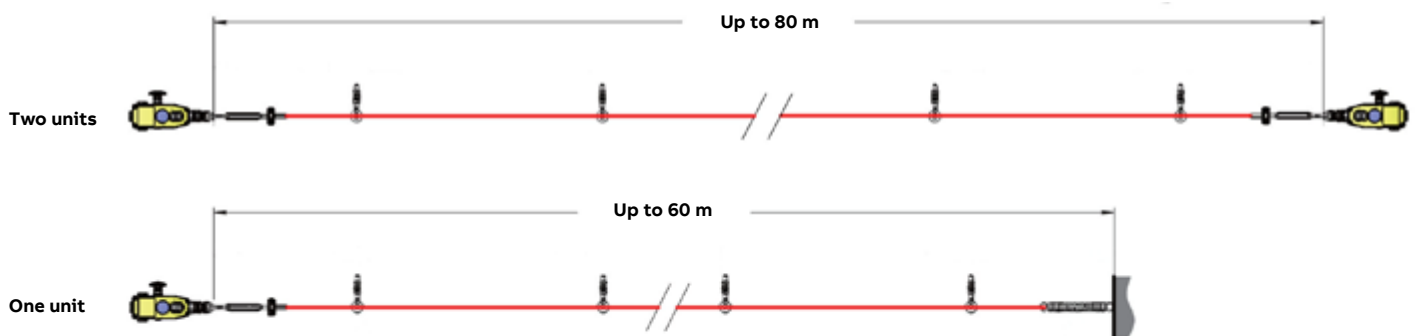


#### As protective device in low risk applications

LineStrong can be used as protection, for example along conveyors with low risks where the wire can be installed at waist height in front of the conveyor, which provides an emergency stop if someone walks or falls towards the conveyor, hence pulling the wire.

#### One, two or several switches

The maximum length of the wire attached to LineStrong depends on if there is a LineStrong unit attached to both ends of the wire or if one end is attached to a wall/fixed object. In the image below LineStrong2 is used as an example.



## Features

### LineStrong

#### Positive forced disconnected contacts

The contacts in LineStrong are positive force disconnected, which ensures that the contacts will not be held in a normally closed position due to a failure of the spring mechanism or the welding/sticking of the contacts.

#### Reset button

All models of LineStrong have an integrated reset button that needs to be pressed in order to reset the emergency stop if the emergency stop function has been triggered.

#### Emergency stop button

Most LineStrong models have an integrated emergency stop button on the housing of the switch. Since the first half meter of the wire is not intended to pull in order to trigger the emergency stop function, the integrated emergency stop button provides quick and simple access to the emergency stop function if you are standing right in front of LineStrong. The emergency stop button of LineStrong 2 can be moved to either side of LineStrong to enable best access depending on position and height of LineStrong.

#### Integrated LED

LineStrong2 and LineStrong3 have an integrated 2-color LED that shows if the emergency stop function has been triggered or not. The LED is also available as spare part.

#### Material

LineStrong is available with a housing in yellow die cast aluminum alloy or with a housing in stainless steel 316 which is recommended for severe applications in e.g. the food processing and the chemical industries.

#### Left hand, right hand or both sides

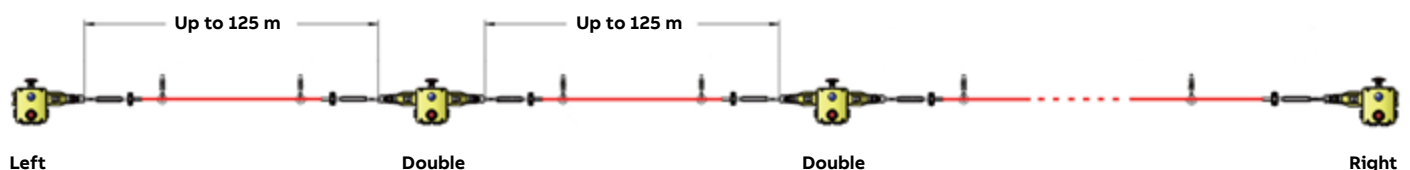
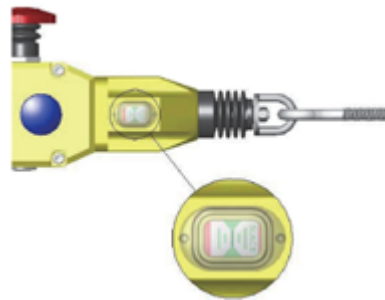
LineStrong1 and LineStrong2 can be mounted in any direction. LineStrong3 is available in different models depending on installation. L (left hand) should be used if the placement of the grab wire switch is to the left in the installation. R (right hand) should be used if the grab wire switch is to the right in the installation. D (double wire) has wire entries from both sides of the grab wire switch.

#### Wire breakage monitoring

The contacts are double switching which means that the emergency stop command is given both when someone pulls the wire and if the wire should break.

#### Indication of wire tension

All models are equipped with an indicator of the tension of the wire which simplifies installation and adjustment.



## Features

### LineStrong

#### Easier installation with tensioner/gripper

The tensioner/gripper accessory significantly reduces the installation time. Traditional grab wire systems normally need turnbuckle and clamps, which are difficult to tension and adjust, and normally require frequent re-tensioning. The tensioner gripper integrates an eyehook, a tensioner thimble and a wire strength gripper in one assembly which enables rapid connection to the switch eyebolts and fast and accurate tensioning of the wire.

Thanks to the switch tension indicator, it is easy to adjust the system accurately and quickly. The double clamp mechanism prevents wire slippage and significantly reduces machine downtime which can occur which traditional turnbuckle systems.

For systems longer than 50 m, the tensioner/gripper is necessary on both sides.

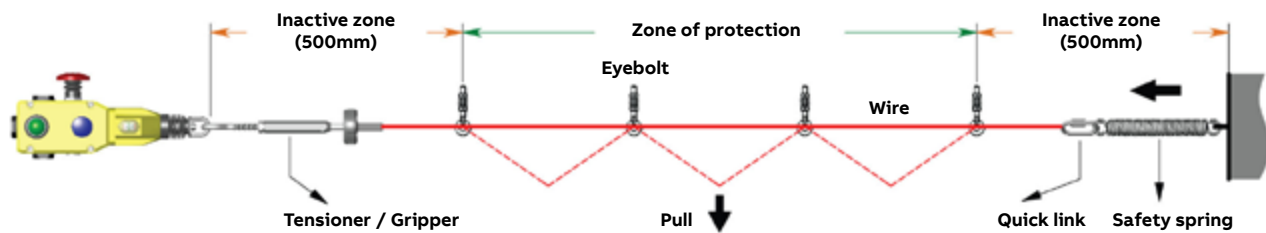
#### Quick-link termination

A quick-link termination is available as an accessory in the wire pull kit, for easy connection to the safety spring or the switch eyebolt for systems up to 50 m.

#### Mounting accessories

The wire pull kits contains the suitable accessories for the included wire length.

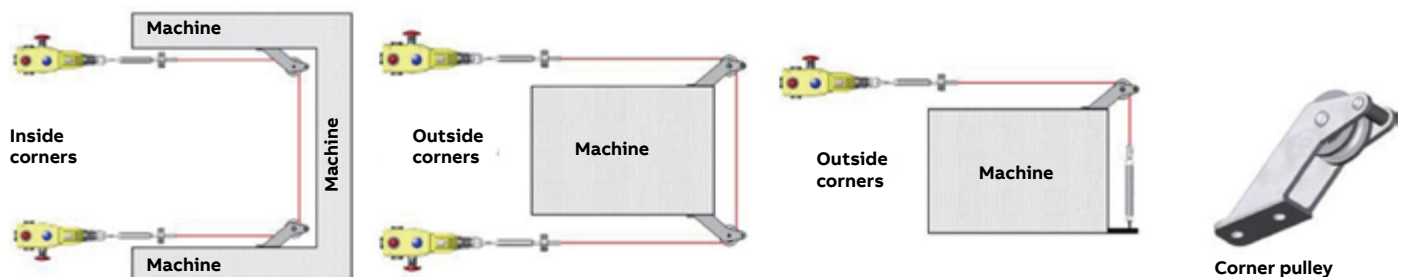
- When using one switch, the wire must be anchored at the other end using a safety spring.
- The first eyebolt support must be placed no more than 500 mm from the switch eyebolt or safety spring.
- The part of the wire from the wire end to the first eyebolt support shall not be used as part of the active protection coverage.
- Wire support eyebolts must be fitted at 2.5 - 3 meters intervals along the complete wire length.
- The tensioner/gripper is used to adjust the correct tension



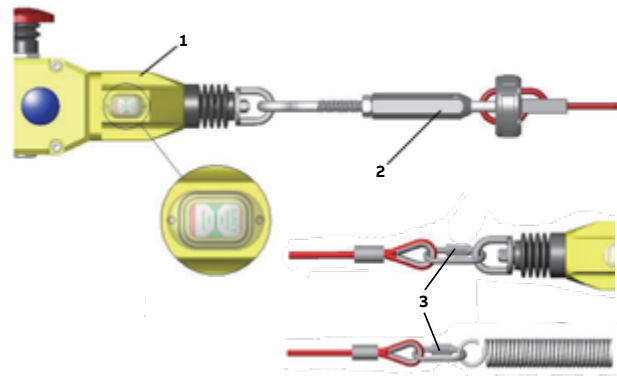
#### Corner pulley

A corner pulley can be used to navigate inside or outside corners without causing damage to the wire. They are in stainless steel and can be rigidly mounted.

When using a safety spring, a maximum of one corner pulley may be used, to ensure that the complete length of the wire is visible from either the switch or the spring anchorage.



Examples of using the corner pulley



1. Tension to mid position as indicated by the green arrows in the viewing window of each switch
2. The tensioner thimble allows immediate accurate and final tensioning of the wire, whilst viewing the tension marker through the viewing window on the switch.
3. Quick Link termination.

## Ordering information

### LineStrong



2TLC172377F0201

LineStrong1



2TLC172379F0201

LineStrong2



2TLC172501F0201

LineStrong2Z



2TLC172389F0201

LineStrong3R



2TLC172387F0201

LineStrong3L



2TLC172388F0201

LineStrong3D

### LineStrong

| IP rating   | Material                       | E-stop button | Contacts    | Max. wire length (m) |                     | Feature      | Type            | Order code      |                 |
|-------------|--------------------------------|---------------|-------------|----------------------|---------------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
|             |                                |               |             | 1 unit               | 2 units             |              |                 |                 |                 |
| IP67        | Yellow die cast aluminum alloy | No            | 2 NO + 2 NC | 30                   | 50                  | -            | LineStrong1     | 2TLA050200R0030 |                 |
|             |                                | Yes           | 2 NO + 2 NC | 60                   | 80                  | -            | LineStrong2     | 2TLA050202R0332 |                 |
|             |                                |               | 2 NO + 4 NC | 100                  | 125                 | Left hand    | LineStrong3L    | 2TLA050206R0332 |                 |
|             |                                |               |             |                      |                     | Right hand   | LineStrong3R    | 2TLA050208R0332 |                 |
|             |                                |               | 200         | 325                  | Both sides          | LineStrong3D | 2TLA050204R0332 |                 |                 |
|             |                                | IP67, IP69K   |             |                      | Stainless steel 316 | Yes          | 2 NO + 2 NC     | 80              | 100             |
| 2 NO + 4 NC | 100                            | 125           | Left hand   | LineStrong3LZ        |                     |              | 2TLA050206R0322 |                 |                 |
|             |                                |               | Right hand  | LineStrong3RZ        |                     |              | 2TLA050208R0322 |                 |                 |
|             |                                |               | 200         | 325                  |                     |              | Both sides      | LineStrong3DZ   | 2TLA050204R0322 |

## Accessories

### LineStrong



Wire pull kit

2TLC172577F001



Wire tensioner

2TLC172220F001



Corner pulley

2TLC172598F001



Eyebolt

2TLC172219F001



Safety spring

2TLC172221F001



LineStrong Screwdriver

2TLC172156F001



Gland

2TLC172217F001



Conduit plug

2TLC172218F001



LineStrong LED 230

2TLC172502F001

#### Mounting Accessories

| Description   | Material        | Length             | Type                 | Order code      |
|---|-----------------|--------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| Wire pull kit including wire, eyebolts, tensioner/gripper, quick-link termination and Allen key in right quantity for the included wire length. | Galvanized      | 10 m wire          | 10 m wire kit, gal   | 2TLA050210R0130 |
|   |                 | 20 m wire          | 20 m wire kit, gal   | 2TLA050210R0330 |
|   |                 | 80 m wire          | 80 m wire kit, gal   | 2TLA050210R0630 |
|   |                 | 100 m wire         | 100 m wire kit, gal  | 2TLA050210R0730 |
|   | Stainless steel | 50 m wire          | 50 m wire kit, SS    | 2TLA050210R0520 |
| 100 m wire  |                 | 100 m wire kit, SS | 2TLA050210R0720      |                 |
| Wire tensioner/gripper  | Galvanized      |                    | Wire tensioner, gal  | 2TLA050210R4030 |
|   | Stainless steel |                    | Wire tensioner, SS   | 2TLA050210R4020 |
| Corner pulley   | Galvanized      |                    | Corner pulley, gal   | 2TLA050210R6030 |
|   | Stainless steel |                    | Corner pulley, SS    | 2TLA050210R6020 |
| Eyebolt M8 x 1.25<br>8 pcs  | Galvanized      |                    | Eyebolt M8x1.25, gal | 2TLA050210R8030 |
|   | Stainless steel |                    | Eyebolt M8x1.25, SS  | 2TLA050210R8020 |
| Safety spring, 220mm  | Stainless steel |                    | Spring 220 mm, SS    | 2TLA050211R0004 |

#### Other accessories

| Description                        | Type              | Order code      |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| Screwdriver, anti-tamper, Torx T20 | Screwdriver T20   | 2TLA050211R0006 |
| Gland M20 x 1.5                    | Gland M20x1.5     | 2TLA050040R0002 |
| Conduit plug M20 x 1.5             | Cond.Plug M20x1.5 | 2TLA050040R0004 |

#### Spare parts

| Description  | Type               | Order code      |
|--|--------------------|-----------------|
| LineStrong LED Green/Red +24 VDC                   | LineStrong LED 24  | 2TLA050211R0001 |
| LineStrong LED Green/Red 230 VAC                   | LineStrong LED 230 | 2TLA050211R0003 |
| LineStrong2 and LineStrong3 Emergency stop button. | LineStrong E-Stop  | 2TLA050211R0005 |

## Cables

### LineStrong



M12-C01

2TLC17A657F0201



C5 cable

2TLC010038F0201

#### LineStrong



| Description                                   | Type           | Order code      |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>Connectors</b>                             |                |                 |
| M12-5 pole female, straight                   | M12-C01        | 2TLA020055R1000 |
| M12-5 pole male, straight                     | M12-C02        | 2TLA020055R1100 |
| M12-8 pole female, straight                   | M12-C03        | 2TLA020055R1600 |
| M12-8 pole male, straight                     | M12-C04        | 2TLA020055R1700 |
| <b>Cable with 5 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 10 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 10 m  | 2TLA020057R0001 |
| 50 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C5 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R0005 |
| 100 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R0010 |
| 200 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R0020 |
| 500 m cable with 5 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C5 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R0050 |
| <b>Cable with 8 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 50 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C8 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R1005 |
| 100 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R1010 |
| 200 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R1020 |
| 500 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R1050 |



## Technical data

### LineStrong

#### Technical data

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>Approvals</b>                              |  |
| LineStrong                                    |   |
| <b>Conformity</b>                             |  |
| LineStrong                                    | <br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13850:2008, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009, EN 60947-1:2007+A1:2011, EN 60947-5-1:2004+A1:2009,<br>EN 60947-5-5:1997+A1:2005 |
| <b>Functional safety data</b>                 |  |
| EN ISO 13849-1:2008                           | Up to Cat. 4, PL e, depending on system architecture.  |
| EN/IEC 62061:2005                             | Up to SILCL3, depending on system architecture.  |
| IEC 61508                                     | Up to SIL3, depending on system architecture.  |
| B10 <sub>d</sub>                              | 1 500 000  |
| <b>Electrical data</b>                        |  |
| Utilization category                          | 240 VAC / 3 A<br>+24 VDC / 2,5 A   |
| LED   | +24 VDC  |
| <b>Mechanical data</b>                        |  |
| Operating temperature                         | -25...+80 °C   |
| <b>Protection class</b>                       |  |
| LineStrong1, LineStrong2,<br>LineStrong3      | IP67   |
| LineStrong2Z, LineStrong3Z                    | IP66, IP67, IP69K  |
| <b>Weight</b>                                 |  |
| LineStrong1                                   | 675 g  |
| LineStrong2                                   | 880 g  |
| LineStrong2Z                                  | 1635 g   |
| LineStrong3L/R                                | 1100 g   |
| LineStrong3LZ/RZ                              | 2000 g   |
| LineStrong3D                                  | 1320 g   |
| LineStrong3DZ                                 | 2200 g   |
| <b>Material</b>                               |  |
| LineStrong1, LineStrong2,<br>LineStrong3D/L/R | Die cast painted yellow  |
| LineStrong2Z, LineStrong3LZ/RZ/<br>DZ         | Stainless steel 316  |
| Wire type                                     | PVC sheath steel wire 4.0 mm outside diameter  |
| <b>Conduit entries</b>                        |  |
| LineStrong1/2                                 | 3 x M20 x 1.5  |
| LineStrong3                                   | 4 x M20 x 1.5  |

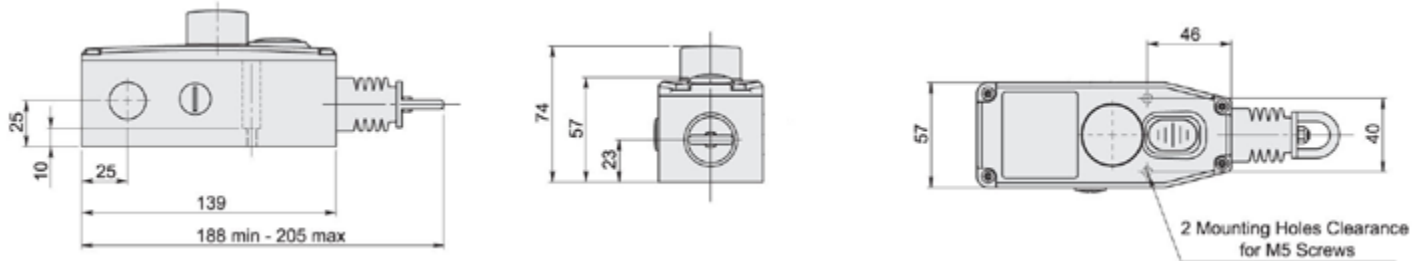
#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for:  
 LineStrong [2TLC172248M0201](#)

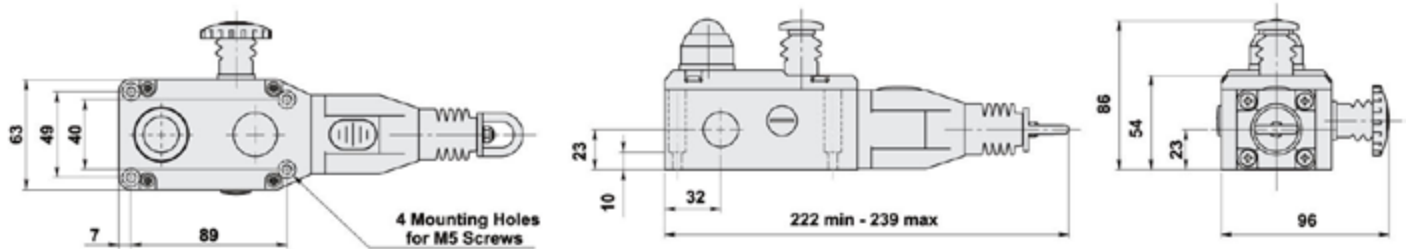
## Dimension drawings

### LineStrong

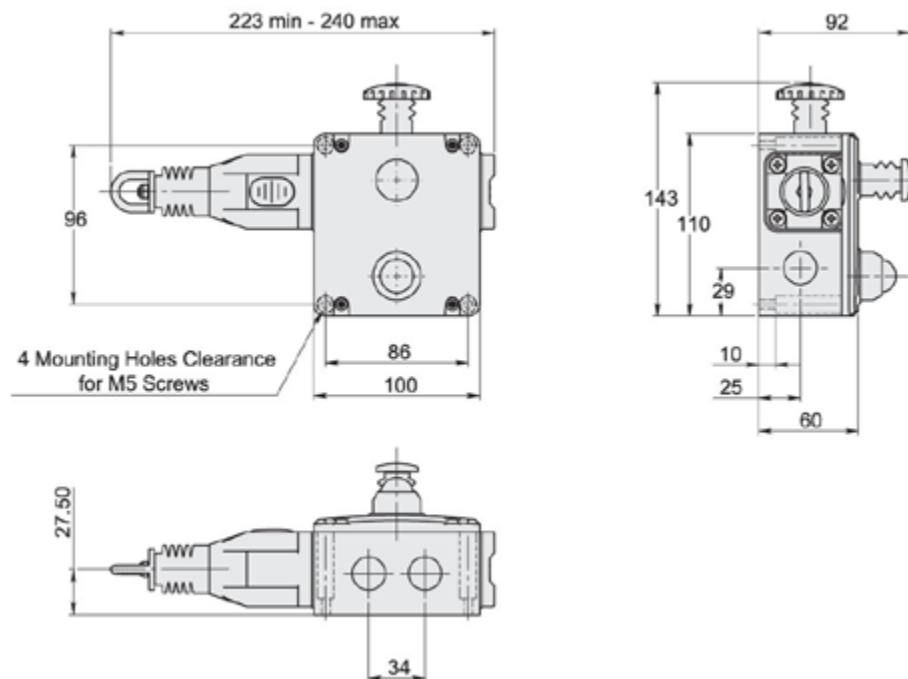
#### LineStrong1



#### LineStrong2



#### LineStrong3L-R



All dimensions in mm



# Push-button box

## Smile 41

Smile 41 is a push-button box that gathers push buttons and an emergency stop button in a single compact device with only one M12 connector for all functions.

Smile 41 push-button box is intended for use with Pluto programmable safety controller.

A kit of colored filters is supplied and the color of each button can be chosen after delivery and changed later.



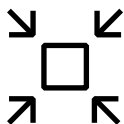
Easy to install

### Easy to attach to profiles

The centered mounting holes makes Smile 41 easy to attach to e.g. aluminum extrusions profiles like Quick-Guard.

### Quick installation

The four buttons are connected with only one M12 connector which speeds up the connection. A maximum of 8 wires need to be connected for the complete push-button box with LEDs.



Space saving

### Compact housing

A compact and appealing housing saves space and makes it easy to place.



Optimum interface

### LED indication

All push-buttons and emergency stop buttons are illuminated. The lighting of the push-buttons can easily be managed by the Pluto programmable safety controller, allowing a greater adaptation to the needs.

### Several button colors

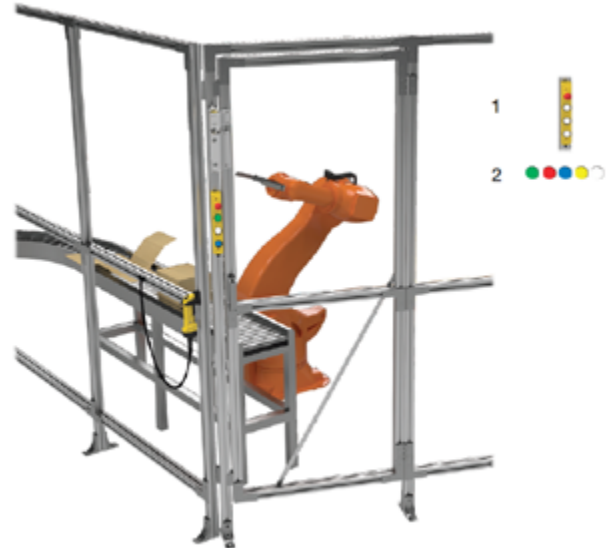
The color of each button can be chosen after delivery and changed later.

## Applications and features

### Smile 41

#### Applications

Smile 41 is a convenient way to gather several buttons at the same place while reducing cabling and installation. For example, an emergency stop button, a push button used to request the unlocking of the door, a push button used as reset button, and a push button used as start button.



#### Features

##### With Pluto programmable safety controller

Smile 41 has been developed for use with Pluto programmable safety controller and allow to get all the advantages of the Pluto “light-button function”: only one I/O (IQ) is necessary for both a push-button and its LEDs and the lighting of the reset buttons can be handled by Pluto without any extra programming.

The emergency stop button satisfies the highest level of safety, and although only one cable is used for the signals of the four buttons, a possible short-circuit can be detected by Pluto and the highest level of safety can be reached.

##### Kit of colored filters

A kit of colored filters is supplied with all models and the color of each push button can be chosen after delivery and changed later.



##### Centered mounting holes

Centered mounting holes facilitate the mounting of Smile 41 on aluminum profiles like Quick-Guard.

## Ordering information

### Smile 41



Smile 41 EWWWP

2TLA030057R0100

#### Smile 41 push button box

Smile 41 push-button box is delivered with a kit of filters

| Safety controller                    | Emergency stop button | Other buttons  | Connector  | Type           | Order code      |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Pluto programmable safety controller | 1                     | 3 push-buttons | M12-8 male | Smile 41 EWWWP | 2TLA030057R0100 |

#### Spare parts

| Description            | Type            | Order code      |
|------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Kit of colored filters | Colored filters | 2TLA030059R2600 |

## Cables and connectors

### Smile 41



M12-C63

2TLC172951F0201



M12-C334

2TLC172931F0201



M12-C03

2TLC172689F0201



C8 cable

2TLC010038F0201

#### Cable with connectors

| Connector | Female/male   | Length | Type       | Order code      |
|-----------|---------------|--------|------------|-----------------|
| M12-8     | Female        | 6 m    | M12-C63    | 2TLA020056R3000 |
|           |               | 10 m   | M12-C103   | 2TLA020056R4000 |
|           |               | 20 m   | M12-C203   | 2TLA020056R4100 |
|           | Female + male | 0.06 m | M12-C00634 | 2TLA020056R6400 |
|           |               | 1 m    | M12-C134   | 2TLA020056R5000 |
|           |               | 3 m    | M12-C334   | 2TLA020056R5100 |


#### Separate cables and connectors

| Description                                   | Type           | Order code      |
|---|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>M12-8 connectors</b>                       |                |                 |
| M12-8 pole female, straight                   | M12-C03        | 2TLA020055R1600 |
| M12-8 pole male, straight                     | M12-C04        | 2TLA020055R1700 |
| <b>Cable with 8 conductors</b>                |                |                 |
| 50 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors  | C8 cable 50 m  | 2TLA020057R1005 |
| 100 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 100 m | 2TLA020057R1010 |
| 200 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 200 m | 2TLA020057R1020 |
| 500 m cable with 8 x 0.34 shielded conductors | C8 cable 500 m | 2TLA020057R1050 |

## Technical data

### Smile 41

#### Technical data

| Smile 41                      |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Approvals                     | TÜV NORD    |
| Conformity                    | CE<br>2006/42/EC - Machinery<br>2014/30/EU - EMC<br>2011/65/EU - RoHS<br>EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13849-1:2008/AC:2009<br>62061:2005+A2:2015, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009, IEC 60664-1:2007,<br>EN 61000-6-2:2005, EN 61000-6-4:2011, EN ISO 13850:2015 |
| <b>Functional safety data</b> |  |
| IEC 61508:2010                | Up to SIL3, depending on system architecture   |
| EN/IEC 62061:2005             | Up to SILCL3, depending on system architecture   |
| EN ISO 13849-1:2008           | Up to Cat. 4/PL e, depending on system architecture  |
| B10 <sub>d</sub>              | 65 000   |
| <b>Electrical data</b>        |  |
| Operating voltage             | +24 VDC ± 15%  |
| <b>Mechanical data</b>        |  |
| <b>Mechanical life</b>        |  |
| Emergency stop button         | > 50 000 operations  |
| Illuminated push button       | 1 000 000 operations   |
| Operating temperature         | -25... +50 °C  |
| Protection class              | IP65   |
| Weight                        | 190 g  |

#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for:

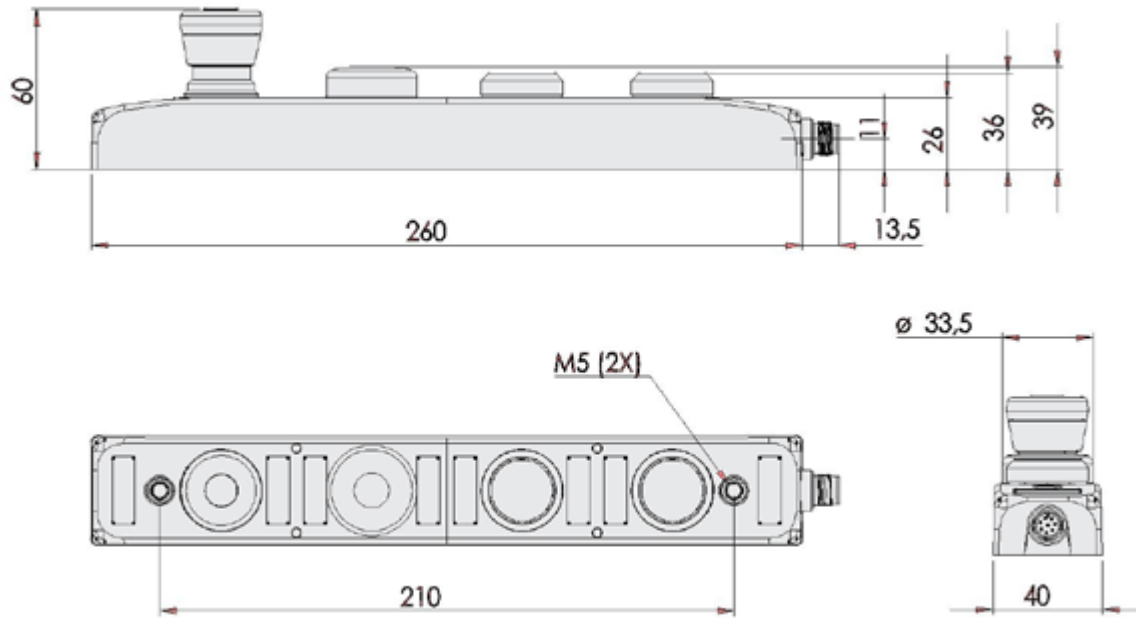
Smile 41 [2TLC172280M0201](#)



## Dimension drawings

### Smile 41

#### Smile 41



All dimensions in mm

# Reset button

## Smile

Smile reset buttons have compact housings with M12 connectors for easy connection.

The reset button contains an integrated white LED, and all buttons are delivered with a kit of colored filters to snap on the top of the button. In this way the color of the button can be chosen after delivery and is also possible to be changed later.

The different models also allow a choice of:

- local reset connected directly to the sensor, or
- global reset connected to the safety control module.



Easy to install

### Easy to attach to profiles

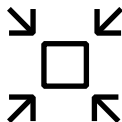
The centered mounting holes make Smile easy to attach to e.g. aluminum extrusions profiles.

### Speed up installation

The housing requires no assembly and the M12 connectors speed up installation and reduce the risk of connection error.

### Local reset

Local reset allows to have the reset button close to the safety device while reducing cabling.



Space saving

### Compact housing

A compact and appealing housing saves space and makes it easy to place.



Optimum interface

### Several button colors

All reset buttons are illuminated with a white LED and the color of each button can be chosen after delivery and changed later using colored snap-on filters.

## Ordering information

### Smile reset buttons



Smile 11 RO1

2TLC120800201

#### Ordering details

| Type of contact | Intended use  | Connectors          | Type        | Order code      |
|-----------------|---|---------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| 1 NO            | Most reset applications                                       | M12-5 male          | Smile 11 RA | 2TLA030053R0000 |
| 1 NO            | Pluto Safety PLC light button function*                       | M12-5 male          | Smile 11 RB | 2TLA030053R0100 |
| 1 NO            | Local reset of Orion1 Base                                    | M12-5 male          | Smile 11RO1 | 2TLA022316R3000 |
| 1 NC            | Local reset of Orion2 Base and Extended, and Orion3 Extended  | M12-5 male          | Smile 11RO2 | 2TLA022316R3100 |
| 1 NC            | Local reset of Orion3 Base                                    | M12-5 male          | Smile 11RO3 | 2TLA022316R3200 |
| 1 NO            | Local reset of Eden DYN-Reset M12-5 and Eden OSSD-Reset M12-5 | M12-5 male + female | Smile 12 RF | 2TLA030053R2600 |
| 1 NO            | Local reset of Eden OSSD-Reset M12-8                          | M12-8 male + female | Smile 12 RG | 2TLA030053R2700 |

\* See Pluto hardware manual for more information about the light button function

#### Accessories



M12-3x

2TLC12633F0201



Tina 10B

2TLC12475F0201

| Description   | Type        | Order code      |
|---|-------------|-----------------|
| Y-connector for series connection of DYNlink devices with M12-5 connectors, e.g. Eden.  | M12-3A      | 2TLA020055R0000 |
| Y-connector for series connection of Adam OSSD M12-8 with M12-5 cables  | M12-3H      | 2TLA020055R0800 |
| Y-connector for series connection of Adam OSSD M12-8 with M12-8 cables  | M12-3G      | 2TLA020055R0700 |
| Y-connector for connection of Smile reset button to Orion.  | M12-3R      | 2TLA022316R0000 |
| Adaptation unit of OSSD outputs to DYNlink signals for use with Vital control module or Pluto Safety PLC. Tina 10B has an extra M12 connector for connection of a reset button. | Tina 10B v2 | 2TLA020054R1310 |

#### Spare parts



Colored filters

2TLC12725F0201

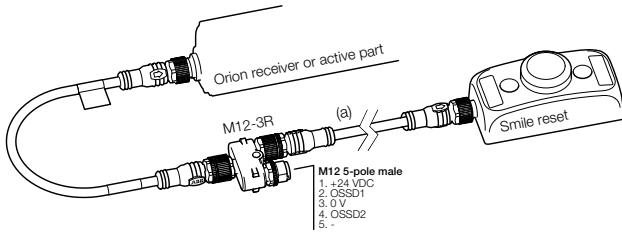
| Description  | Type            | Order code      |
|--|-----------------|-----------------|
| Kit of colored filters (yellow, green, white, blue, red) | Colored filters | 2TLA030059R2600 |



## Connection examples

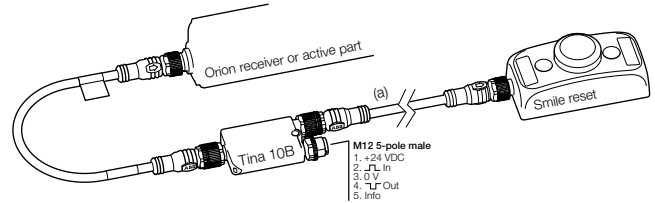
### Smile reset buttons

#### Local reset to Orion with Tina 10A/C



Connection of Smile 11 ROx to Orion through M12-3R. For connection to any control module compatible with OSSD outputs.

#### Local reset to Orion with Tina 10B



Connection of Smile 11 ROx to Orion through Tina 10B. For connection to Vital control module or Pluto Safety PLC.

#### Local reset to Eden



Serial connection of Eden with local Smile reset buttons:  
 - Adam OSSD-Reset M12-8 with Smile 12 RG and M12-3G or M12-3H  
 - Adam DYN-Reset with Smile 12 RF and M12-3A


#### Global vs local reset

A global reset is connected directly to the control cabinet with separate cables. The safety controller in the control cabinet supervises the reset and decides the function and actions.

A local reset is connected directly to the safety device, and requires no communication with the control cabinet. The safety device supervises the reset and decides the actions. A local reset simplifies installation and minimizes cabling.

## Technical data

### Smile reset buttons

| Approvals  |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Power supply</b>   |   |
| LED operating voltage   | +24 VDC (maximum +33 VDC)                 |
| LED current consumption   | 20 mA at +24 VDC, 30 mA at +33 VDC        |
| Push button operating voltage   | Min: +5 V, max: +35 V                     |
| Push button current   | Min: 1 mA, max: 100 mA                    |
| Push button rated power   | Max: 250 mW                               |
| <b>Mechanical data</b>  |   |
| Color - Enclosure   | Yellow                                    |
| Color - Push button   | White                                     |
| Material - Housing  | Polypropylene PP                          |
| Material - Contact  | Au  |
| Weight  | Approx. 60 g                              |
| Protection class  | IP65                                      |
| Mechanical life   | 1 000 000 operations at 10 mA / +24 VDC   |
| Switching reliability   | 10 x 10 <sup>6</sup> at 5 mA / +24 VDC    |
| <b>Environmental data</b>   |   |
| Ambient temperature   | -25...+55 °C                              |
| Humidity range  | 35 to 85% (with no icing or condensation) |

#### More information

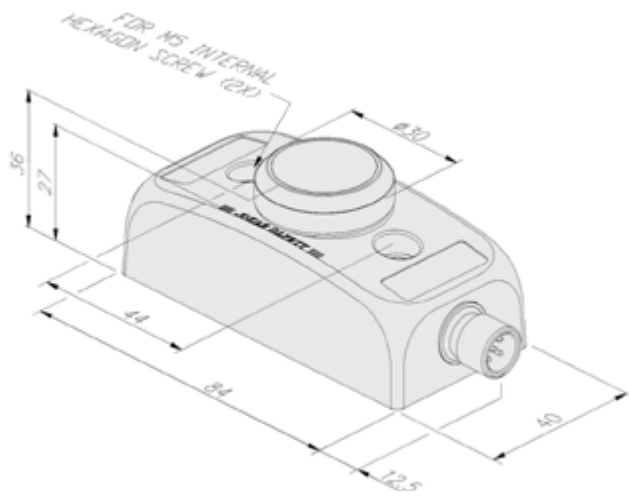
For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for:

Smile reset buttons [2TLC172097M0201](#)

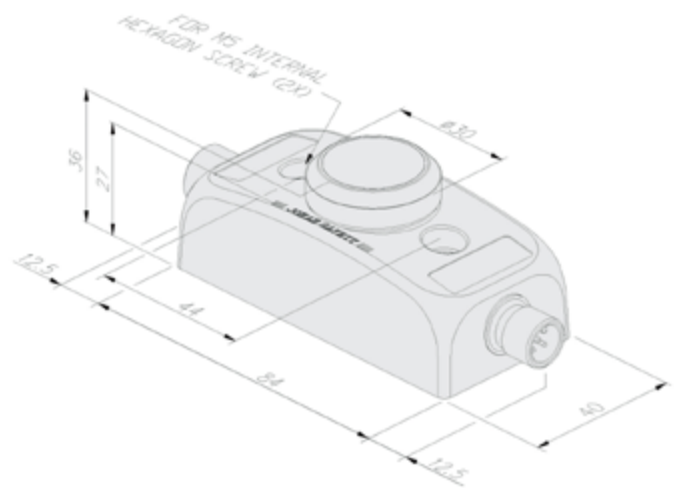
## Dimension drawings

### Smile reset buttons

Smile 11 R



Smile 12 R



All dimensions in mm

# Pilot devices

## Reliable products, easy to select and install

**ABB pilot devices are engineered for total reliability. Our products are tested to extremes and proven in the toughest environments. Their innovative designs simplify the entire process, from selection to installation. Enclosures, signal towers and signal beacons complete the portfolio.**



Continuous operation



Global availability



Easy to install

### Engineered for tough environments

ABB pilot devices are designed with protection degree of up to IP69K and 4X, guaranteeing reliability in extreme environments – making ABB pilot devices ideal for use in demanding industries such as construction and food and beverage. An innovative design that automatically cleans contacts ensures high reliability for all products.

### Simple selection and stock management

ABB's core offering includes the pilot devices most in demand, so product selection is easier, stock management is simpler and product availability is higher. Support for exporters is world-class, thanks to ABB's standardized global range, certified to comply with all major international standards.

### Save time and space

The unique design of ABB's modular range enables tool-free installation that is quick and simple. It provides high flexibility for last-minute changes. With its all-in-one construction, the compact range reduces installation space and saves time.



## Modular plastic range

Flexible configuration

A versatile selection of operators with high levels of flexibility and a broad choice of electrical ratings. Find the perfect solution for almost every application.



High AC-15 electrical ratings 6 A at 230 V.

The flexible solution that simplifies your stock management.

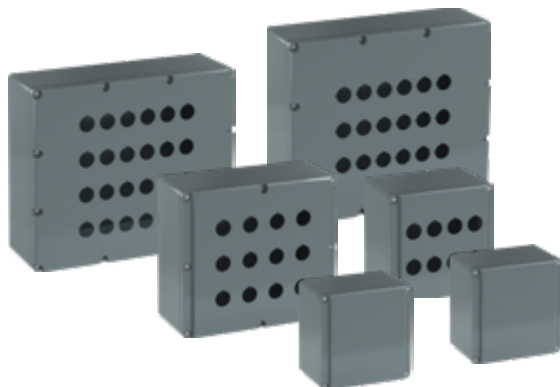
## Modular metal range

Designed for demanding applications

ABB's modular metal range combines ultimate reliability with the total flexibility of a modular range. For mining, construction and heavy industry applications, find the right solution here.



IP66 aluminium metal enclosures are available to accompany this range.



## Compact range

All-in-one solution

The most efficient solution available, reducing installation time and cost. The compact range have the highest level of dust and water resistance on the market.

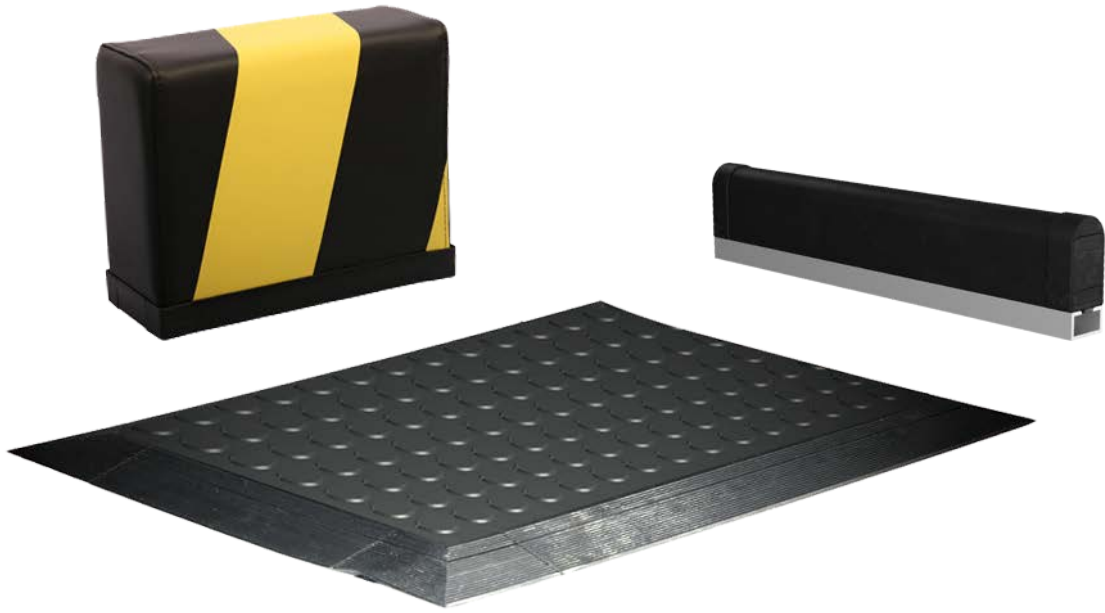


Fewer order codes make selection easy and save time.

All-in-one design makes installation fast.



For more models, ordering information and technical data, please see web:  
<http://new.abb.com/low-voltage/products/pilot-devices>



---

# Pressure sensitive devices

**7-2**            **Introduction and overview**

**7-4**            **Safety edges**

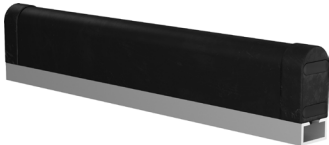


**7-8**            **Safety bumpers**

**7-12**           **Safety mats**

# Introduction and overview

## Selection guide

ABB has different types of pressure sensitive devices to cover the needs in various applications.

|                     | Safety edges  | Safety bumpers  | Safety mats  |
|---------------------|---|---|--|
| Image               |    |            |   |
| Type                | Pressure sensitive safety edge  | Pressure sensitive safety bumper  | Pressure sensitive safety mat  |
| Overtravel distance | 15-22.7 mm  | 60-240 mm   | -  |
| Application(s)      | Sliding doors, gates, roller doors and moving platforms.  | Larger sliding doors/hangar doors and automated guided vehicles.                            | Personal protection within the dangerous area.   |
| Advantages          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Preassembled</li> <li>- Easy to install</li> <li>- Compact</li> <li>- Up to 25 m long</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Preassembled</li> <li>- Easy to install</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Very durable</li> <li>- Easy to install</li> <li>- Custom measurements</li> </ul> |

## Overview

### Standards

#### Pressure sensitive edges and bumpers

Edges and bumpers have an overtravel distance, which is the distance from the compression point where they react until they are maximum compressed. The overtravel distance should be stated in the product information for edges and bumpers. Make sure to select an edge or bumper with a larger overtravel than the stopping distance of the moving part it should be placed on. A minimum safety factor of 1.2 should be used, i.e. the overtravel distance should be 120% of the stopping distance.

#### Pressures sensitive mats

Mats should only be used as perimeter detection devices if the risk assessment indicates it is a suitable protective device. This could e.g. be in environments with lots of debris and particles from the process that would disturb a light curtain. The width of a safety mat used as perimeter detection should be at least 75 cm to prevent unintentional stepping over. The minimum safety distance from the outer edge of the safety mat to the dangerous area is calculated using the formula from EN ISO 13855:

$$S = (K \times T) + C$$

S = minimum distance in mm

K = approach speed (of hand or body) in mm/s

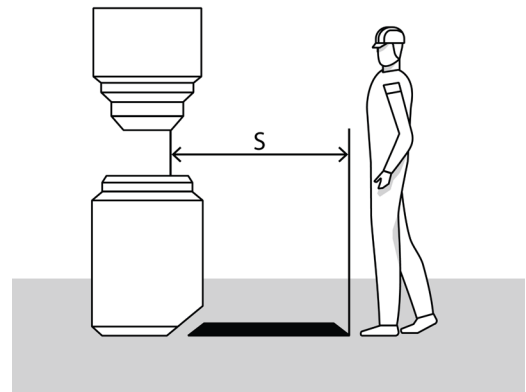
T = stopping time of the machine (including reaction time of safety devices) in seconds

C = additional distance in mm based upon the body's intrusion towards the hazardous area before the safety device has been actuated.

For safety mats the following should be used:

$$S = 1600 \times T + (1200 - 0.4 H)$$

Where H is the height of the safety mat above the floor (which is usually 0).

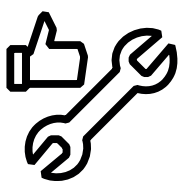


# Safety edges

## TT

Safety edges are pressure sensitive devices that are used on leading edges of doors or moving machine parts to prevent crushing injuries.

The contact edges from ABB are available in two sizes and custom lengths. They are supplied together with an aluminum profile for simple mounting



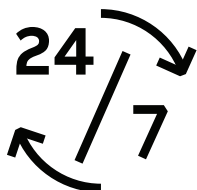
Easy to install

### Preassembled

Ordered in custom lengths, preassembled - no gluing required, supplied with matching aluminum support profile.

### Serial connection

The twin cable connection makes it easy to connect several safety edges in series.



Continuous operation

### Material

The contact edges are made in TPE that has a good resistance to ozone, weather and especially against chemicals.



---

## Applications and features

### Safety edges

#### Applications

##### Sliding doors

Safety edges are placed on the leading edge of sliding doors, gates and roller doors. When the door hits a person or an object, the safety edge sends a signal to the safety controller to stop the motion. The soft parts of the edge should be big enough to allow compression until the motion has ceased.

##### Moving machine parts

Safety edges can also be placed on moving machine parts, such as the edges of horizontally moving tables and the underside of a scissor lift table.

#### Features

##### Safety controllers

The safety edge must be connected to a suitable two-input-channel safety controller that provides all necessary monitoring of the contact edges activation and detection of cable faults. Suitable ABB controllers are Sentry USR safety relays, Pluto programmable safety controllers or Vital safety controllers. When using Vital, a Tina 6 must also be used for short circuit detection.

##### Internal contacts

Inside the safety edge there is a cast-in contact strip that consists of two conductive alternating surfaces on the inside and a highly-effective insulating shell. There are two conductive wires in the contact surfaces that allow for low ohm measurements even when the contact edge has an extended length. When pressure is applied the two contact surfaces are short circuited, resulting in a stopping signal. The cast-in contact strip is protected against damage by the surrounding chamber. The cast end plugs ensure a permanent contact from the conductive surfaces in the contact strip.

## Ordering information

### Safety edges

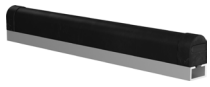
#### Ordering details

When ordering a safety edge there are two parts that need to be ordered. One order code for production cost and cables, and one order code for the length of the safety edge. Length should be specified in meters.

#### Example:

One piece of 45 mm high safety edge (plus 14 mm high aluminum rail), 0.73 m long with a 5 meter cable in each end =  
 - 0.73 m of 2TLA076025R4510  
 - 1 pcs of 2TLA076010R0500

#### Safety edge TT



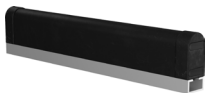
2TLC0010E20V0201

Safety edge TT 35-30 TPE

| Overtravel <sup>a)</sup><br>mm | Description   | Material | Type                     | Order code      |
|--------------------------------|---|----------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| 15                             | 30 mm high safety edge with 25-14 aluminum rail.<br>Length in m needs to be specified on order. | TPE      | Safety edge TT 25-30 TPE | 2TLA076025R3010 |
| 22.7                           | 45 mm high safety edge with 25-14 aluminum rail.<br>Length in m needs to be specified on order. | TPE      | Safety edge TT 25-45 TPE | 2TLA076025R4510 |

a) At 100 mm/s to 400 N

#### Production cost and cables



2TLC0010E20V0201

Safety edge TT 25-45 TPE

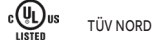
| Length of cables<br>m | Description                                     | Type                                       | Order code      |
|-----------------------|---|--|-----------------|
| 2.5                   | Production cost with a 2,5 m cable in each end. | Safety edge production cost<br>2,5m cable  | 2TLA076010R0100 |
| 5                     | Production cost with a 5 m cable in each end.   | Safety edge production cost<br>5,0m cable  | 2TLA076010R0500 |
| 10                    | Production cost with a 10 m cable in each end.  | Safety edge production cost<br>10,0m cable | 2TLA076010R1000 |

## Technical data

### Safety edges

#### Technical data

##### Approvals



##### Conformity

CE

2006/42/EC - Machinery

2014/30/EU - EMC

2011/65/EU - RoHS

EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13856-2:2013, EN ISO 13849-1:2015, EN 62061:2005+A2:2015, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009, EN 60664-1:2007, EN 61000-6-2:2005, EN 61000-6-4:2007, EN 61508:2010

##### Functional safety data

62061:2005+A1:2013

EN ISO 13849-1:2015

SILCL2

PL d/Cat 4

(According to EN ISO 13849-2:2012, Table D.8, a fault exclusion for that the contacts in a pressure sensitive device will not close, can be made. This fault exclusion is limited up to PL d.)

##### Electrical data

Electrical capacity

24 V, 10 mA

##### Mechanical data

Switching cycles

10 000

Protection class

IP65

Operating temperature

-10 °C to 50 °C

Weight

TT 25-45

0.34 kg/m

TT 25-30

0.44 kg/m

Material

Rubber

TPE

Supportive profile

Aluminium

Max Delivery length

25 m

Inactive end region

30 mm

Connection cables

LIY11Y 2 x 0.34 mm

Cable material

PUR flat black

#### More information

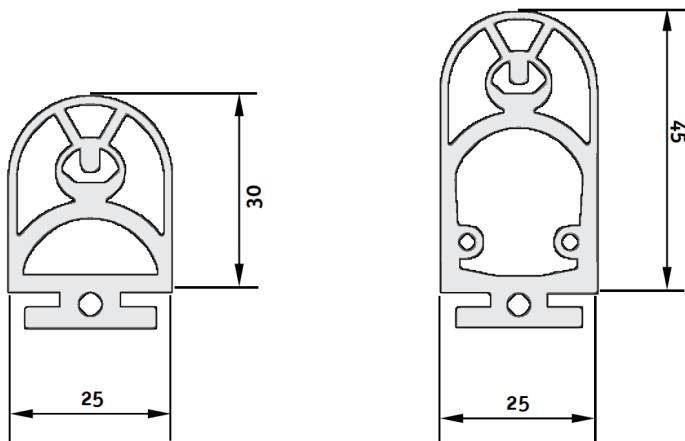
For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for:

Safety Edges [2TLC010046M0201](#).

#### Connection diagrams

For safety edge connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>

#### Dimension drawings



All dimensions in mm

# Safety bumper

## ASB

Safety bumpers are pressure sensitive devices used to prevent crushing injuries. They are mounted on leading edges of large doors or moving machinery such as automated guided vehicles.

The bumpers are available in four different sizes, and the internal foam construction allows for long deformation zones to provide optimum protection for individuals and material.



### Easy to install

#### Preassembled

Ordered in custom lengths and preassembled to a carrier profile.

#### Serial connection

The twin cable connection makes it easy to connect several safety bumpers in series.



### Continuous operation

#### Material

The outer material of the safety bumpers is an artificial leather that provides excellent resistance against most liquids, oils and chemicals.

---

## Applications and features

### Safety bumper

#### Applications

##### Large sliding doors

Safety bumpers are placed on the leading edge of large sliding doors, gates and vertical roller doors. When the door hits a person or an object, the safety bumper sends a signal to the safety controller to stop the motion. The soft parts of the bumper should be big enough to allow compression until the motion has ceased.

##### Moving vehicles

Safety bumpers can also be placed on moving vehicles, such as AGVs (automated guided vehicles) or high reach fork lifts to detect when a person or an object is hit.

#### Features

##### Safety controllers

The safety bumper must be connected to a suitable two-input-channel safety controller that provides all necessary monitoring of the activation of the safety bumpers and detection of cable faults. Suitable ABB controllers are Sentry USR safety relays and Pluto programmable safety controllers.

##### Internal contact strip

Inside the safety bumper there is a cast-in contact strip that consists of two conductive alternating surfaces on the inside and a highly-effective insulating shell. When pressure is applied the large foam cushion presses the two contact surfaces against each other so that they are short circuited, which the safety controller will detect.

## Ordering information

### Safety bumper



2TLA076200R001

ASB

#### Ordering details

When ordering a safety bumper there are two parts that need to be ordered. One order code for production cost and cables, and one order code for the type of bumper and length. Length should be specified in meters. Minimum length is 0.15 m and maximum length is 3 m.

Bumpers are delivered with two 0,2 m cables with M8 connectors attached. Two 5 m cables with M8 connectors are also included.

#### Example:

One piece of 150x300 mm safety bumper (including aluminum rail), 2.1 m long =  
 - 2.1 m of 2TLA076200R0700  
 - 1 pcs of 2TLA076200R0000

#### Safety bumper ASB

| Overtravel <sup>a)</sup> | Description  | Material          | Type                            | Order code      |
|--------------------------|--|-------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>mm</b>                |  |                   |                                 |                 |
| 60                       | 60x100 mm bumper. Length in m needs to be specified on order.  | Imitation leather | Bumper ASB 60-100 black/yellow  | 2TLA076200R0500 |
| 120                      | 100x200 mm bumper. Length in m needs to be specified on order. | Imitation leather | Bumper ASB 100-200 black/yellow | 2TLA076200R0600 |
| 180                      | 150x300 mm bumper. Length in m needs to be specified on order. | Imitation leather | Bumper ASB 150-300 black/yellow | 2TLA076200R0700 |
| 240                      | 200x400 mm bumper. Length in m needs to be specified on order. | Imitation leather | Bumper ASB 200-400 black/yellow | 2TLA076200R0800 |

a) 60% of bumper height at 10 mm/s

#### Production cost and cables

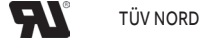
| Description   | Type                   | Order code      |
|---|------------------------|-----------------|
| Bumpers production cost, including aluminum rail and cables | Bumper production cost | 2TLA076200R0000 |

# Technical data

## Safety bumpers

### Technical data

**Approvals**



**Conformity**

**CE**  
 2006/42/EC - Machinery  
 2014/30/EU - EMC  
 2011/65/EU - RoHS  
 EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13856-3:2013, EN ISO 13849-1:2015, EN 62061:2005+A2:2015, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009, EN 60664-1:2007, EN 61000-6-2:2005, EN 61000-6-4:2007, EN 61508:2010

**Functional safety data**  
 62061:2005+A1:2013  
 EN ISO 13849-1:2015

SILCL2  
 PL d/Cat 4  
 (According to EN ISO 13849-2:2012, Table D.8, a fault exclusion for that the contacts in a pressure sensitive device will not close, can be made. This fault exclusion is limited up to PL d.)

**Electrical data**

Electrical capacity 24 V, 10 mA

**Mechanical data**

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Actuating force               | < 150 N by test specimen Ø80 mm (according to EN ISO 13856-3)<br>< 400 N by test specimen 45x400 mm (according to EN ISO 13856-3) |
| Inactive edge region          | 0 mm  |
| Switching cycles              | > 10 000  |
| Protection class              | IP54  |
| Temperature range             | 0 °C to + 50 °C   |
| Connection cable              | Pluggable 2 x 0.34 mm <sup>2</sup> (PUR black) with M8 connector 0.12m  |
| Material                      | Artificial leather  |
| Chemical resistance           | Good chemical resistance, except for Ethyl acetate and Acetone.   |
| Dimensioning of bumper height |   |
| Actuating distance            | 15% of bumper height  |
| Overtravel distance           | 60% of bumper height  |
| Maximum compression           | 75% of bumper height  |

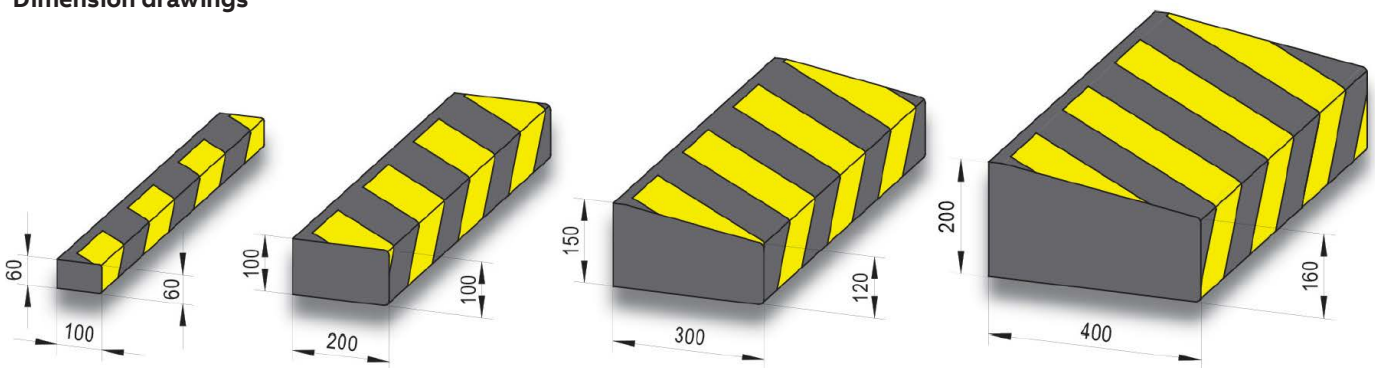
**More information**

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for: Safety Bumpers [2TLC010045M0201](#).

**Connection diagrams**

For safety bumpers connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>

**Dimension drawings**



All dimensions in mm

# Safety mats

## ASK

Safety mats are pressure sensitive devices placed on the floor to detect if someone is standing on them. They are mostly used inside hazard zones around e.g. presses, robots and production lines to prevent the machine from running when someone is in the hazard zone.



Easy to install

### Preassembled

Ordered in standard or custom sizes with molded ramp and preassembled with two cables (M8 male and female connector).

### Serial connection

The twin cable connection makes it easy to connect several safety mats in series. Extension cables exist to further simplify connection.



Continuous operation

### Material

The surface material of the safety mat is a slip-free rubber with excellent resistance against oil, water and grease.



---

## Applications and features

### Safety mats

#### Applications

##### **Personal protection within hazard zones**

Safety mats are mostly used inside hazard zones around e.g. presses, robots and production lines to prevent the machine from running when someone is in the hazard zone.

##### **Perimeter guard**

Safety mats can also be used as a perimeter guard e.g. to replace a light curtain in applications where there is a lot of debris or particles in the air that would trigger the light curtain.

#### Features

##### **Safety controllers**

The safety mat must be connected to a suitable two-input-channel safety controller that provides all necessary monitoring of the activation of the safety mat and detection of cable faults. Suitable ABB controllers are Sentry USR safety relays, Pluto programmable safety controllers or Vital safety controllers. When using Vital, a Tina 6 must also be used for short circuit detection.

##### **Ramp rail**

At the edges of the safety mat there is a molded ramp rail. The ramp rail is 35 mm wide and is not included in the measurement of the ramp (i.e. the actual dimensions of a 1000 x 1000 mm safety mat is 1070 x 1070 mm). The purpose of the ramp rail is to minimize the tripping risk and for fastening of the safety mat, since screws can be drilled through the ramp rail. The ramp rail can be cut off using a knife if the safety mat is to be placed close to a wall or next to another safety mat.

##### **Mat construction**

The safety mat is made of a sandwich construction. When stepped upon, two internal conducting plates connect and result in a short circuit that the safety controller detects.

## Ordering information

### Safety mats

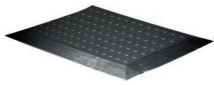
#### Ordering details

When ordering a safety mat you can either select one of the standard sizes or a custom size. For standard sizes only one order code is necessary. For custom sizes two parts need to be ordered. One order code for base price, and one order code for the size in m<sup>2</sup>.

Width x length also needs to be specified in text on the order in mm. Maximum dimensions are 2350 x 1350 mm and minimum dimensions 100 x 100 mm.

#### Example:

One piece of 450 x 1150 mm safety mat =  
 - 1 pcs of 2TLA076301R0200  
 - 0.5175 m<sup>2</sup> of 2TLA076301R0600  
 - Dimensions 450 x 1150 mm



ASK

2TLC010035V0201

#### Safety mat ASK – standard sizes

| Size mm   | Description   | Connectors                 | Type                             | Order code      |
|-----------|---|----------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|
| 750x1000  | 750x1000 safety mat with molded ramp rail and two 5 m cables  | 1x M8 male<br>1x M8 female | Safety mat ASK T4<br>750x1000mm  | 2TLA076310R1000 |
| 1000x1000 | 1000x1000 safety mat with molded ramp rail and two 5 m cables | 1x M8 male<br>1x M8 female | Safety mat ASK T4<br>1000x1000mm | 2TLA076310R1100 |
| 1000x1500 | 1000x1500 safety mat with molded ramp rail and two 5 m cables | 1x M8 male<br>1x M8 female | Safety mat ASK T4<br>1000x1500mm | 2TLA076310R1200 |

#### Safety mat ASK – custom sizes

| Description  | Connectors                 | Type                             | Order code      |
|--|----------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|
| Base price for custom made safety mat with molded ramp rail  | -                          | Safety mat ASK CM T4, base price | 2TLA076301R0200 |
| Order code for size (m <sup>2</sup> ) and two 5 m cables. Specify dimensions (width x length in mm) in text. | 1x M8 male<br>1x M8 female | Safety mat ASK CM T4             | 2TLA076301R0600 |

#### Accessories

| Description     | Length m | Connectors                 | Type                                | Order code      |
|-----------------|----------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Extension cable | 2.5      | 1x M8 male<br>1x M8 female | Safety mat extension cable<br>2.5 m | 2TLA076900R3200 |
| Extension cable | 5.0      | 1x M8 male<br>1x M8 female | Safety mat extension cable<br>5.0 m | 2TLA076900R3300 |

## Technical data

### Safety mats

#### Technical data

##### Approvals



##### Conformity

CE

2006/42/EC - Machinery

2014/30/EU - EMC

2011/65/EU - RoHS

EN ISO 12100:2010, EN ISO 13856-1:2013, EN ISO 13849-1:2015, EN 62061:2005+A2:2015, EN 60204-1:2006+A1:2009, EN 60664-1:2007, EN 61000-6-2:2005, EN 61000-6-4:2007, EN 61508:2010

##### Functional safety data

62061:2005+A1:2013

EN ISO 13849-1:2015

SILCL2

PL d/Cat 4

B<sub>10D</sub>: 2 000 000

(According to EN ISO 13849-2:2012, Table D.8, a fault exclusion for that the contacts in a pressure sensitive device will not close, can be made. This fault exclusion is limited up to PL d.)

##### Electrical data

###### Electrical capacity

24 V, 100 mA

###### Response time

Including Sentry

< 20 ms

Including Pluto (single Pluto)

< 30 ms

Including Pluto incl. Pluto bus

Normal condition: < 40 ms

At fault condition: < 70 ms

With function block "BigMat"

Add 30 ms

##### Mechanical data

###### Max. area

Entire safety mat = 2350 x 1350 mm, 10 m<sup>2</sup>,  
(divided safety mat) Rec. relation max 3:1, Min 100 x 100 mm

###### Height

14 mm

###### Weight

26 Kg/m<sup>2</sup>

###### Material

Black polyurethane

###### Protection class

IP65

###### Ambient air temperature

0° C to + 60° C

###### Cable

2 x 5 m; 2 x 0.34 mm<sup>2</sup>

PU sheathed

###### Mechanical life

>1.0 x 10<sup>6</sup> Load shifting

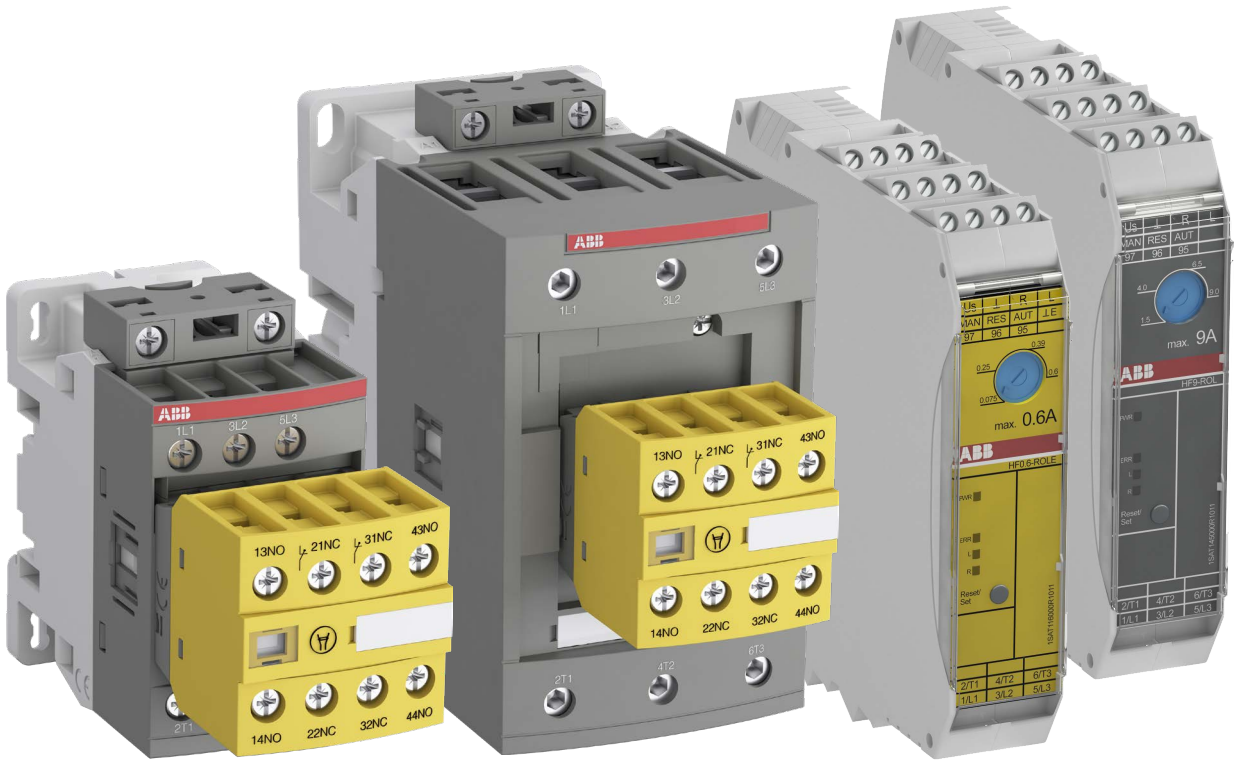
#### More information

For more information, e.g. the complete technical information, see product manual for:

Safety Mats [2TLC010047M0201](#).

#### Connection diagrams

For safety mats connection diagrams please see <https://library.abb.com/>



---



# Contactors and motor starters

- 8-2            **Introduction and overview**
- 8-4            **Safety contactors**
- 8-10          **Electronic compact starters**

# Introduction and overview

## Selection guide

ABB offers a wide range of output devices for safely removing power to dangerous machinery. Apart from contactors and electronic compact starters, we also have frequency converters with safe torque off (STO) and industrial robots with safety stop inputs.

|                     | AFS  | HF  |
|---------------------|--|---|
| <b>Image</b>        |    |   |
| <b>Type</b>         | Safety contactor   | Electronic compact starters   |
| <b>Description</b>  | A simple and reliable unit for monitoring and controlling circuits.  | A compact and space saving alternative to contactors, using a combination of semiconductor technology and electromechanical relays. Monitoring and control of circuits with numerous additional features.   |
| <b>Applications</b> | Removing control power to dangerous machinery up to 400 W/400 V.   | Removing control power to dangerous machinery up to 3 kW/400 V, as well as direct and reversed start of motors.   |
| <b>Advantage</b>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Easy to use</li> <li>- Fast switching</li> <li>- High switching capacity</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Space saving up to 90% with only 22.5 mm in control cabinets</li> <li>- Extended equipment life time and decreased maintenance cost</li> <li>- Reduced wiring time</li> <li>- Safety variants comply with SIL3, PL e and are ATEX certified</li> </ul> |

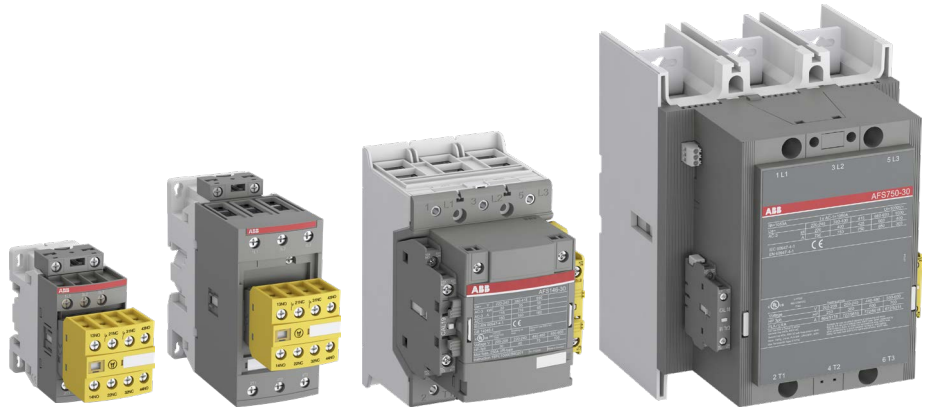


# AFS 3-pole contactors

## Dedicated for safety applications

Designed for machine safety applications, AFS contactors now complete ABB's safety component portfolio.

With a range stretching from 9 A up to 750 A for motor starting applications and with a design complying with the latest safety standard, the AFS range of contactors is the given choice for any application that puts the users safety first.



### Safety and protection

#### Safety in all things

ABB's AFS contactors can be easily integrated in machine manufacturer's systems complying with main standards EN ISO 13849 and EN 62061 - guaranteeing the safe use of your machinery and equipment. An easily identifiable yellow low energy auxiliary contact block ensures the status feedback circuits required in machine safety applications.



### Continuous operation

#### Secure uptime

The AFS contactor secures system uptime. Featuring ABB's tested and proven AF technology, AFS contactors are reliable in any network. Direct control by safety PLCs or safety relays ensures the required safety performance.



### Speed up your projects

#### Simplify design

AFS design makes integration easier. With energy efficient coils smaller transformers can be used and panel space more efficiently used. Wide voltage range coils and easily available safety data simplifies product selection. In addition, all the safety data for the AFS contactors is available using common safety design tools.

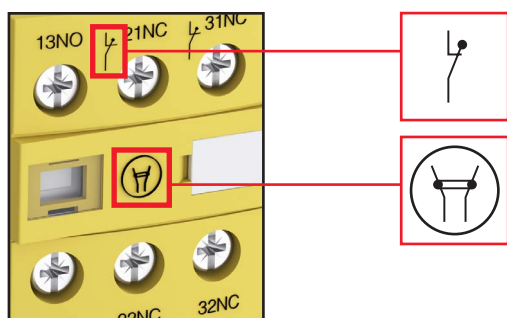


## AFS 3-pole contactors

Dedicated for safety applications

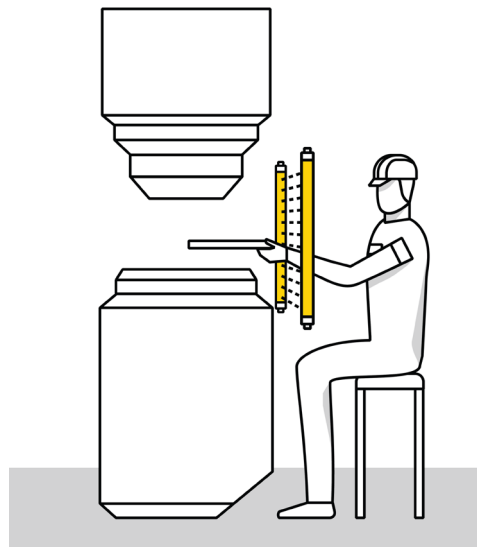
### Guaranteed contactor status

ABB's permanently fixed auxiliary contact blocks guarantee the correct contactor status at all times. Mechanically linked and mirror contacts provide the performance required in feedback circuits. This prevents any unexpected state changes of auxiliary contact if main contacts become welded or stuck and ensures an accurate depiction of the safety system status displayed at all times. Mechanically linked and mirror contact symbols are marked on the yellow auxiliary block.



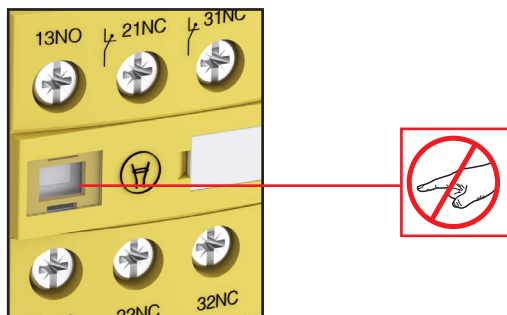
### Fast response for increased safety

In safety applications speed is essential to protect operators. AFS contactors feature fast opening times, down to 20 ms for certain PLC controlled contactors, ensuring that when a dangerous failure is detected the operator is kept out of harms way.



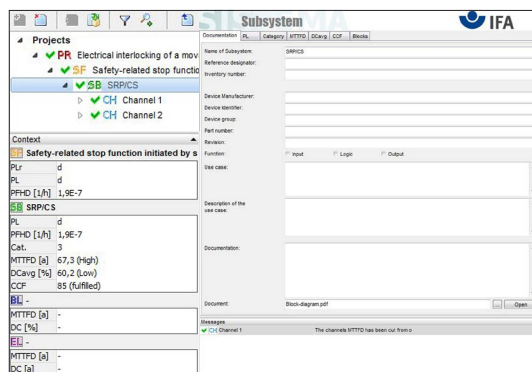
### Prevent unexpected operations

Factory fitted auxiliary contact blocks that are permanently fixed protects devices against accidental operation and misuse. A factory-fitted transparent cover on contactors up to 96 A shields the contactor status indicator, providing additional protection from misuse.



### Simplify calculation of your installation safety level

AFS contactor safety data is available in safety design tools Sistema and FSDT, dedicated software for determining the Performance Level (PL) and Safety Integrity Level (SIL) of safety functions and generating technical documentations.



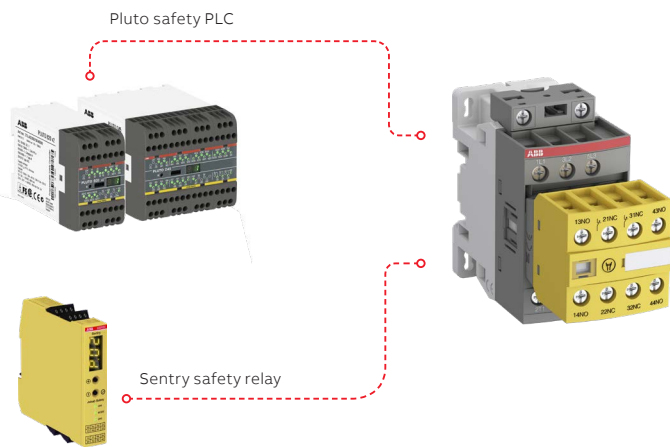
## AFS 3-pole contactors

Dedicated for safety applications

### Control by safety PLCs or safety relays

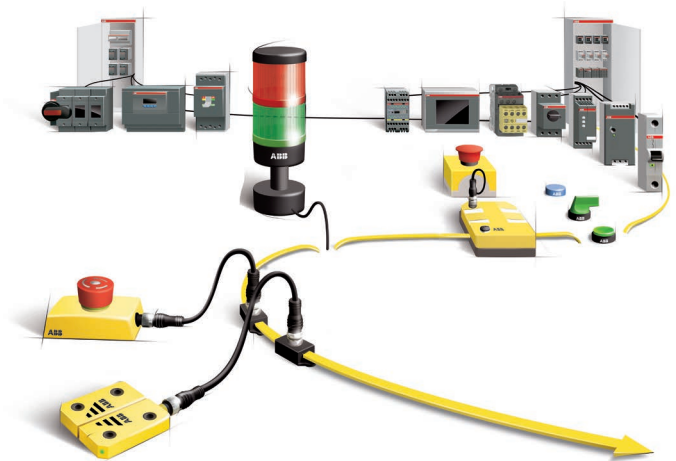
ABB's AFS contactors can be controlled directly by safety PLCs or safety relays, or by a power relay depending on size.

AFS contactors is part of the ABB safety family, and selected sizes are tested together with ABB's Pluto safety PLC and the Sentry safety relay. For full coordination please advise ABB. The auxiliary contacts only require a minimum switching capacity of 3 V / 1 mA. They guarantee system status feedback, making the system safe and reliable.



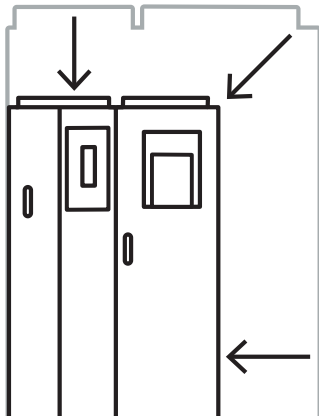
### Easy safety chain identification

The yellow housing of ABB's AFS contactors makes identifying the safety product in your panel quicker. During routine maintenance work, ABB's intuitive design saves valuable time.



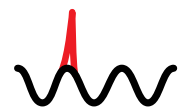
### Panel size reduction

Utilizing AF technology, AFS coils need up to 60% less energy than conventional contactor coils. This allows for smaller transformers to be used for contactor control, which in turn allows for more efficient use of panel space. Using AFS contactors saves money and precious space.



### Built-in surge suppression

Unlike conventional contactors, ABB's AFS contactors have built-in surge suppression, preventing surges from ever reaching the control circuit. With no need for the usual external surge suppressor add-ons, ABB's solution means one less device to install and one less complication to manage.



## AFS 3-pole contactors

Dedicated for safety applications



AFS16-30-22

1SBCI01536V0014



AFS38-30-22

1SBCI01539V0014



AFS65-30-22

1SBCI01542V0014



AFS96-30-22

1SBCI01544V0014



AFS146-30-12

1SFCI01246V0001



AFS146-30-12B

1SFCI01244V0001

| IEC                     |         | UL/CSA               |                    | Rated control circuit voltage |             | Auxiliary contacts fitted | Type            | Order code      | Weight |
|-------------------------|---------|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------|
| Rated operational power | Current | 3-phase motor rating | General use rating | Uc min. ...                   | Uc max.     |                           |                 |                 |        |
| 400 V AC-3              | AC-1    | 480 V                | 600 V AC           |                               |             |                           |                 |                 |        |
| kW                      | A       | hp                   | A                  | V 50/60 Hz                    | V DC        |                           |                 |                 |        |
| 4                       | 25      | 5                    | 25                 | -                             | 24          | 2 2                       | AFS09Z-30-22-30 | 1SBL136082R3022 | 0.490  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 24...60                       | 20...60 (1) | 2 2                       | AFS09-30-22-11  | 1SBL137082R1122 | 0.320  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250   | 2 2                       | AFS09-30-22-13  | 1SBL137082R1322 | 0.320  |
| 5.5                     | 28      | 7.5                  | 28                 | -                             | 24          | 2 2                       | AFS12Z-30-22-30 | 1SBL156082R3022 | 0.490  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 24...60                       | 20...60 (1) | 2 2                       | AFS12-30-22-11  | 1SBL157082R1122 | 0.320  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250   | 2 2                       | AFS12-30-22-13  | 1SBL157082R1322 | 0.320  |
| 7.5                     | 30      | 10                   | 30                 | -                             | 24          | 2 2                       | AFS16Z-30-22-30 | 1SBL176082R3022 | 0.490  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 24...60                       | 20...60 (1) | 2 2                       | AFS16-30-22-11  | 1SBL177082R1122 | 0.320  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250   | 2 2                       | AFS16-30-22-13  | 1SBL177082R1322 | 0.320  |
| 11                      | 45      | 15                   | 45                 | -                             | 24          | 2 2                       | AFS26Z-30-22-30 | 1SBL236082R3022 | 0.540  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 24...60                       | 20...60 (1) | 2 2                       | AFS26-30-22-11  | 1SBL237082R1122 | 0.360  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250   | 2 2                       | AFS26-30-22-13  | 1SBL237082R1322 | 0.360  |
| 15                      | 50      | 20                   | 50                 | -                             | 24          | 2 2                       | AFS30Z-30-22-30 | 1SBL276082R3022 | 0.540  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 24...60                       | 20...60 (1) | 2 2                       | AFS30-30-22-11  | 1SBL277082R1122 | 0.360  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250   | 2 2                       | AFS30-30-22-13  | 1SBL277082R1322 | 0.360  |
| 18.5                    | 50      | 20                   | 50                 | -                             | 24          | 2 2                       | AFS38Z-30-22-30 | 1SBL296082R3022 | 0.540  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 24...60                       | 20...60 (1) | 2 2                       | AFS38-30-22-11  | 1SBL297082R1122 | 0.360  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250   | 2 2                       | AFS38-30-22-13  | 1SBL297082R1322 | 0.360  |
| 18.5                    | 70      | 30                   | 60                 | 24...60                       | 20...60 (1) | 2 2                       | AFS40-30-22-11  | 1SBL347082R1122 | 1.020  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250   | 2 2                       | AFS40-30-22-13  | 1SBL347082R1322 | 1.000  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 24...60                       | 20...60 (1) | 2 2                       | AFS52-30-22-11  | 1SBL367082R1122 | 1.020  |
| 22                      | 100     | 40                   | 80                 | 100...250                     | 100...250   | 2 2                       | AFS52-30-22-13  | 1SBL367082R1322 | 1.000  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 24...60                       | 20...60 (1) | 2 2                       | AFS65-30-22-11  | 1SBL387082R1122 | 1.020  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250   | 2 2                       | AFS65-30-22-13  | 1SBL387082R1322 | 1.000  |
| 30                      | 105     | 50                   | 90                 | 24...60                       | 20...60 (1) | 2 2                       | AFS80-30-22-11  | 1SBL397082R1122 | 1.270  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250   | 2 2                       | AFS80-30-22-13  | 1SBL397082R1322 | 1.220  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 24...60                       | 20...60 (1) | 2 2                       | AFS96-30-22-11  | 1SBL407082R1122 | 1.270  |
| 45                      | 130     | 60                   | 115                | 100...250                     | 100...250   | 2 2                       | AFS96-30-22-13  | 1SBL407082R1322 | 1.220  |

### For connection with built-in cable clamps

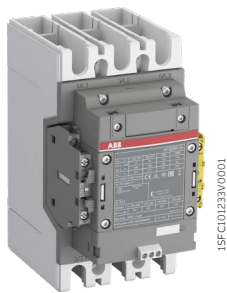
|    |     |     |     |           |           |     |                     |                 |       |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----------|-----------|-----|---------------------|-----------------|-------|
| 55 | 160 | 75  | 160 | 24...60   | 20...60   | 1 2 | AFS116-30-12-11     | 1SFL427081R1112 | 1.750 |
|    |     |     |     | 48...130  | 48...130  | 1 2 | AFS116-30-12-12     | 1SFL427081R1212 | 1.750 |
|    |     |     |     | 100...250 | 100...250 | 1 2 | AFS116-30-12-13     | 1SFL427081R1312 | 1.750 |
|    |     |     |     | 250...500 | 250...500 | 1 2 | AFS116-30-12-33 (2) | 1SFL427081R3312 | 1.750 |
|    |     |     |     |           |           | 1 2 | AFS116-30-12-14     | 1SFL427081R1412 | 1.750 |
|    |     |     |     |           |           | 1 2 | AFS116-30-12-34 (2) | 1SFL427081R3412 | 1.750 |
| 75 | 225 | 100 | 200 | 24...60   | 20...60   | 1 2 | AFS146-30-12-11     | 1SFL467081R1112 | 1.750 |
|    |     |     |     | 48...130  | 48...130  | 1 2 | AFS146-30-12-12     | 1SFL467081R1212 | 1.750 |
|    |     |     |     | 100...250 | 100...250 | 1 2 | AFS146-30-12-13     | 1SFL467081R1312 | 1.750 |
|    |     |     |     | 250...500 | 250...500 | 1 2 | AFS146-30-12-33 (2) | 1SFL467081R3312 | 1.750 |
|    |     |     |     |           |           | 1 2 | AFS146-30-12-14     | 1SFL467081R1412 | 1.750 |
|    |     |     |     |           |           | 1 2 | AFS146-30-12-34 (2) | 1SFL467081R3412 | 1.750 |

### With bar connections

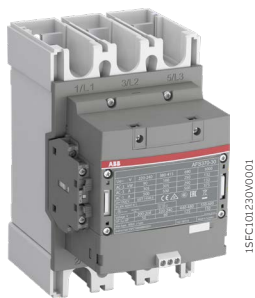
|    |     |     |     |           |           |     |                      |                 |       |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----------|-----------|-----|----------------------|-----------------|-------|
| 55 | 160 | 75  | 160 | 24...60   | 20...60   | 1 2 | AFS116-30-12B-11     | 1SFL427082R1112 | 1.500 |
|    |     |     |     | 48...130  | 48...130  | 1 2 | AFS116-30-12B-12     | 1SFL427082R1212 | 1.500 |
|    |     |     |     | 100...250 | 100...250 | 1 2 | AFS116-30-12B-13     | 1SFL427082R1312 | 1.500 |
|    |     |     |     | 250...500 | 250...500 | 1 2 | AFS116-30-12B-33 (2) | 1SFL427082R3312 | 1.500 |
|    |     |     |     |           |           | 1 2 | AFS116-30-12B-14     | 1SFL427082R1412 | 1.500 |
|    |     |     |     |           |           | 1 2 | AFS116-30-12B-34 (2) | 1SFL427082R3412 | 1.500 |
| 75 | 225 | 100 | 200 | 24...60   | 20...60   | 1 2 | AFS146-30-12B-11     | 1SFL467082R1112 | 1.500 |
|    |     |     |     | 48...130  | 48...130  | 1 2 | AFS146-30-12B-12     | 1SFL467082R1212 | 1.500 |
|    |     |     |     | 100...250 | 100...250 | 1 2 | AFS146-30-12B-13     | 1SFL467082R1312 | 1.500 |
|    |     |     |     | 250...500 | 250...500 | 1 2 | AFS146-30-12B-14     | 1SFL467082R1412 | 1.500 |

# AFS 3-pole contactors

Dedicated for safety applications



AFS205-30-12



AFS370-30-12



AFS460-30-12



AFS750-30-12

| IEC                     |         | UL/CSA               |                    | Rated control circuit voltage |           | Auxiliary contacts fitted | Type                | Order code          | Weight |
|-------------------------|---------|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------|
| Rated operational power | Current | 3-phase motor rating | General use rating | Uc min. ... Uc max.           |           |                           |                     |                     |        |
| 400 V AC-3              | AC-1    | 480 V                | 600 V AC           | V 50/60 Hz                    | V DC      |                           |                     |                     |        |
| kW                      | A       | hp                   | A                  |                               |           |                           |                     | kg                  |        |
| 90                      | 275     | 125                  | 250                | 24...60                       | 20...60   | 1 2                       | AFS190-30-12-11     | 1SFL427082R1112     | 3.000  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 48...130                      | 48...130  | 1 2                       | AFS190-30-12-12     | 1SFL427081R1212     | 3.000  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250 | 1 2                       | AFS190-30-12-13     | 1SFL427081R1312     | 3.000  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250 | 1 2                       | AFS190-30-12-33 (2) | 1SFL427081R3312     | 3.000  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 250...500                     | 250...500 | 1 2                       | AFS190-30-12-14     | 1SFL427081R1412     | 3.000  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 250...500                     | 250...500 | 1 2                       | AFS190-30-12-34 (2) | 1SFL427081R3412     | 3.000  |
| 110                     | 350     | 150                  | 300                | 24...60                       | 20...60   | 1 2                       | AFS205-30-12-11     | 1SFL527082R1112     | 3.000  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 48...130                      | 48...130  | 1 2                       | AFS205-30-12-12     | 1SFL527082R1212     | 3.000  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250 | 1 2                       | AFS205-30-12-13     | 1SFL527082R1312     | 3.000  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250 | 1 2                       | AFS205-30-12-33 (2) | 1SFL527082R3312     | 3.000  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 250...500                     | 250...500 | 1 2                       | AFS205-30-12-14     | 1SFL527082R1412     | 3.000  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 250...500                     | 250...500 | 1 2                       | AFS205-30-12-34 (2) | 1SFL527082R3412     | 3.000  |
| 132                     | 400     | 200                  | 350                | 24...60                       | 20...60   | 1 2                       | AFS265-30-12-11     | 1SFL547082R1112     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 48...130                      | 48...130  | 1 2                       | AFS265-30-12-12     | 1SFL547082R1212     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250 | 1 2                       | AFS265-30-12-13     | 1SFL547082R1312     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250 | 1 2                       | AFS265-30-12-33 (2) | 1SFL547082R3312     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 250...500                     | 250...500 | 1 2                       | AFS265-30-12-14     | 1SFL547082R1412     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 250...500                     | 250...500 | 1 2                       | AFS265-30-12-34 (2) | 1SFL547082R3412     | 4.675  |
| 160                     | 500     | 250                  | 400                | 24...60                       | 20...60   | 1 2                       | AFS305-30-12-11     | 1SFL587082R1112     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 48...130                      | 48...130  | 1 2                       | AFS305-30-12-12     | 1SFL587082R1212     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250 | 1 2                       | AFS305-30-12-13     | 1SFL587082R1312     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250 | 1 2                       | AFS305-30-12-33 (2) | 1SFL587082R3312     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 250...500                     | 250...500 | 1 2                       | AFS305-30-12-14     | 1SFL587082R1412     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 250...500                     | 250...500 | 1 2                       | AFS305-30-12-34 (2) | 1SFL587082R3412     | 4.675  |
| 200                     | 600     | 300                  | 520                | 24...60                       | 20...60   | 1 2                       | AFS370-30-12-11     | 1SFL607082R1112     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 48...130                      | 48...130  | 1 2                       | AFS370-30-12-12     | 1SFL607082R1212     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250 | 1 2                       | AFS370-30-12-13     | 1SFL607082R1312     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250 | 1 2                       | AFS370-30-12-33 (2) | 1SFL607082R3312     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 250...500                     | 250...500 | 1 2                       | AFS370-30-12-14     | 1SFL607082R1412     | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 250...500                     | 250...500 | 1 2                       | AFS370-30-12-34 (2) | 1SFL607082R3412     | 4.675  |
| 200                     | 600     | 350                  | 550                | -                             | 24...60   | 1 2                       | AFS400-30-12-68     | 1SFL577081R6812 (3) | 4.675  |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 48...130                      | 48...130  | 1 2                       | AFS400-30-12-69     | 1SFL577081R6912     | 12.000 |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250 | 1 2                       | AFS400-30-12-70     | 1SFL577081R7012     | 12.000 |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 250...500                     | 250...500 | 1 2                       | AFS400-30-12-71     | 1SFL577081R7112     | 12.000 |
| 250                     | 700     | 400                  | 650                | -                             | 24...60   | 1 2                       | AFS460-30-12-68     | 1SFL597081R6812 (3) | 12.000 |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 48...130                      | 48...130  | 1 2                       | AFS460-30-12-69     | 1SFL597081R6912     | 12.000 |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250 | 1 2                       | AFS460-30-12-70     | 1SFL597081R7012     | 12.000 |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 250...500                     | 250...500 | 1 2                       | AFS460-30-12-71     | 1SFL597081R7112     | 12.000 |
| 315                     | 800     | 500                  | 750                | -                             | 24...60   | 1 2                       | AFS580-30-12-68     | 1SFL617081R6812 (3) | 12.000 |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 48...130                      | 48...130  | 1 2                       | AFS580-30-12-69     | 1SFL617081R6912     | 12.000 |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250 | 1 2                       | AFS580-30-12-70     | 1SFL617081R7012     | 12.000 |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 250...500                     | 250...500 | 1 2                       | AFS580-30-12-71     | 1SFL617081R7112     | 12.000 |
| 400                     | 1050    | 600                  | 900                | -                             | 24...60   | 1 2                       | AFS750-30-12-68     | 1SFL637081R6812 (3) | 12.000 |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 48...130                      | 48...130  | 1 2                       | AFS750-30-12-69     | 1SFL637081R6912     | 12.000 |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 100...250                     | 100...250 | 1 2                       | AFS750-30-12-70     | 1SFL637081R7012     | 12.000 |
|                         |         |                      |                    | 250...500                     | 250...500 | 1 2                       | AFS750-30-12-71     | 1SFL637081R7112     | 12.000 |

(1) AFS...-30...-11 for control by transistor outputs of safety PLCs and safety relays use interface relay RA4 15BN060100R1000.  
 (2) With built-in PLC interface (coil 33 and 34)  
 (3) The connection polarities indicated close to the coil terminals must be respected: A1 for the positive pole and A2 for the negative pole.  
 Note : Accessories available. Please consult the AFS contactors for safety application catalog.

Products safety data for machine manufacturers following harmonized EN standards:  
 - EN ISO 13849  
 - EN 62061

**B10d - Calculated for 50% of the rated current value Ie at AC-3 / 400 V**

AFS09 ... AFS370 : 1.3 million operating cycles  
 AFS400 ... AFS750 : 0.68 million operating cycles

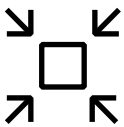


# Electronic compact starters: HF range

## A compact solution with great functionality

ABB's electronic compact starter packs more functions into less space. The compact unit is just 22.5 mm wide and is suitable for three-phase motor loads up to 3 kW - 400 V AC.

Direct-on-line and reversed starter with overload protection and emergency stop versions are available, making the range a perfect fit for high frequent and reliable long life switching of e.g. paper machines, conveyors, pumps, compressors and machine tools.



### Saving space

#### Up to 90% less space required

ABB's electronic compact starter saves cabinet space, and is especially effective for group mounting. The starter is just 22.5 mm wide and yet still provides motor starting functionalities with motor protection and safety embedded.



### Safety and protection

#### Integrated safety function

Protect your personnel with emergency stop version complying with SIL3, PL e safety standards.

Extend equipment life time and decrease maintenance cost as our starters service life is 10 times higher than electromechanical solutions.



### Easy to install

#### Up to 75% reduced time in wiring

Wiring time during installation is cut to a minimum with motor protection, reversing function and emergency stop already integrated in the product.

With just one component to install, the risk of wiring errors is lower. Separate overload protection is no longer needed.

## Electronic compact starters

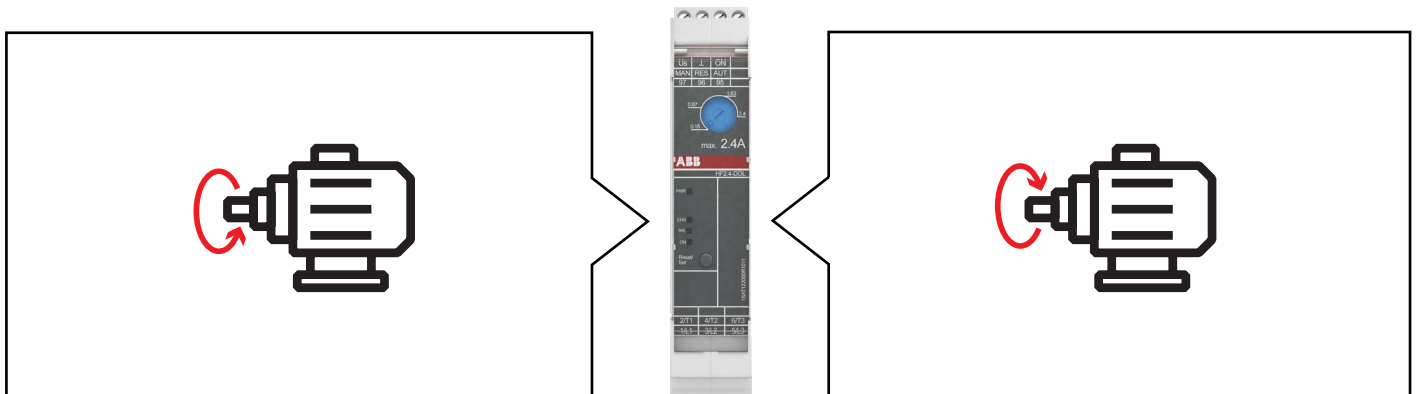
All-in-one: four functions in one starter

### Direct-on-line

ABB's direct-on-line starter comes with a function that runs the motor in a forward direction. An integrated electronic overload relay also helps protect the motor.

### Reversing capability

Reversing functionality is already integrated in our hybrid starter. This results in avoiding wiring faults and additionally saving time and space.



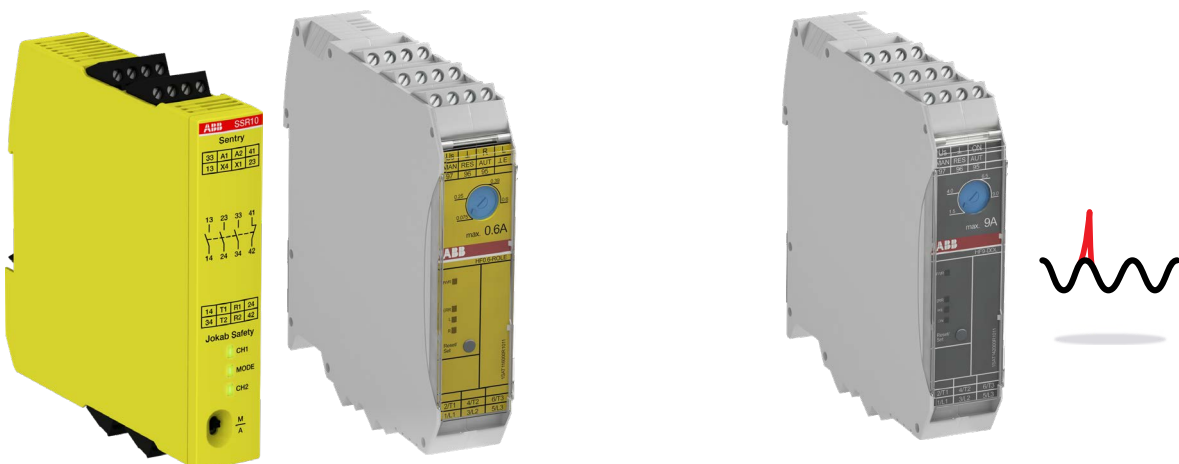
Direct-on-line and reversing function in only one product

### Emergency stop

ABB's HF safety range supports safety applications complying to SIL3 and PL e safety level in combination with modular safety relays such as ABB's Sentry SSR10.

### Overload protection

ABB offers three variants with wide setting ranges, using an electronic relay to protect the motor from overload. Protection against phase asymmetry and phase failure is also integrated.

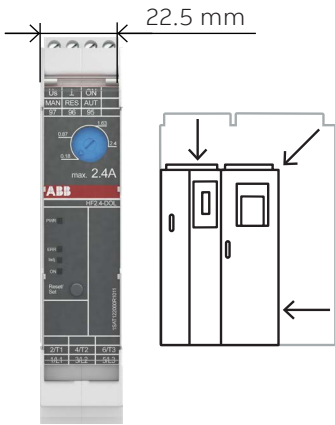


## Electronic compact starters

### Features and benefits

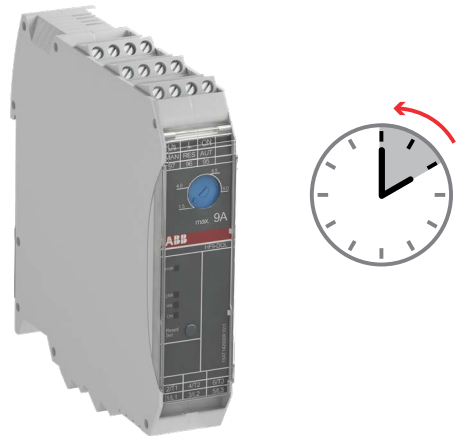
#### Space-saving

Using an HF electronic compact starter saves space – especially when group-mounting units. With a width of just 22.5 mm and high function density, the unit fits any control cabinet. Smaller footprints for more compact systems are also possible.



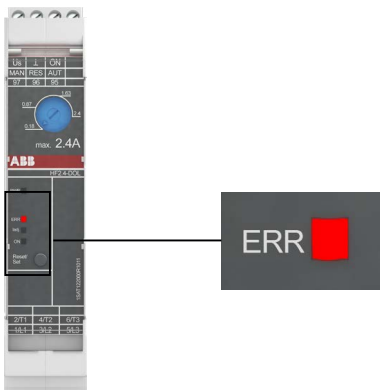
#### Less wiring

The control circuit is connected on the upper side of the device with the main circuit on the underside. The all-in-one functionality reduces wiring, saving time and money – and reducing faults.



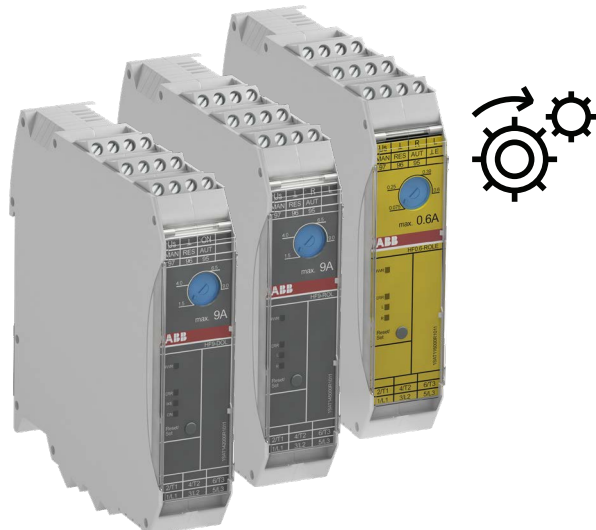
#### Reset function

After the overload function has tripped, the electronic compact starter can be reset automatically, manually or remotely. The LEDs on the device are visualizing that an error has occurred. Additionally, a feedback relay will be activated.



#### Longer working life

ABB's hybrid technology improves durability and reduces power losses. Semiconductors switch on and off the unit and the relays remain active while the motor is running. With a lifespan of 30 million cycles now achievable, maintenance costs are reduced.



8



## HF0.6, HF2.4, HF9 electronic compact starters

### Direct-on-line starter



2CD24107V0016

HF0.6-DOL-24VDC



2CD24107V0016

HF0.6-DOLE-24VDC

#### Description

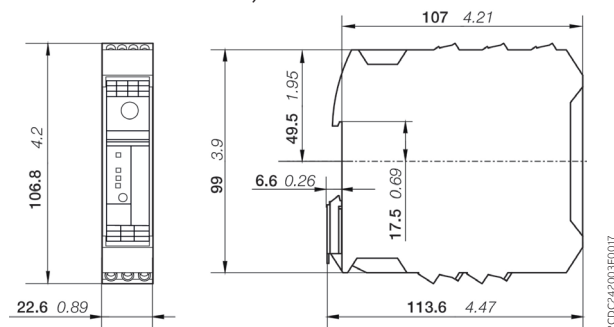
The HF-DOL-range is used for the direct-on-line start of motors and the switching of non-resistive loads. With contactor and overload relay functionalities integrated into one device, the results are faster wiring times and fewer faults. The range covers 0.6 A, 2.4 A and up to 9 A - for motors up to 3 kW – 500 V AC. The integrated electronic overload protection has a wide setting range that enables just three models to cover all requirements.

The control supply voltage is 24 V DC. For the control and main connection points ABB offers screw connections. ABB also offers a HF-DOLE safety range with emergency stop function. This offers Safety Integrity Level 3, in accordance with functional safety standard IEC 61508-1 and Performance Level 'e' in accordance with ISO 13849-1. The safety range is ATEX-certified.

#### Ordering details

| Rated operational current AC-53a  | Rated operational power AC-53a | Rated operational current AC-51 | Setting range | Full load amps motor use | Type             | Order code      | Weight (1 pce) |
|---|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| A   | kW                             | A                               | A             | A                        |                  |                 | kg             |
| <b>Direct-on-line starter with overload protection</b>                    |                                |                                 |               |                          |                  |                 |                |
| 0.6   | 0.18 (400V)                    | 0.6                             | 0.075 ... 0.6 | 0.6                      | HF0.6-DOL-24VDC  | 1SAT112000R1011 | 0.205          |
| 2.4   | 0.75 (400V)                    | 2.4                             | 0.18 ... 2.4  | 2.4                      | HF2.4-DOL-24VDC  | 1SAT122000R1011 | 0.218          |
| 6.5   | 3.00 (400V)                    | 9.0                             | 1.5 ... 9.0   | 6.5                      | HF9-DOL-24VDC    | 1SAT142000R1011 | 0.206          |
| <b>Direct-on-line starter with overload protection and emergency stop</b> |                                |                                 |               |                          |                  |                 |                |
| 0.6   | 0.18 (400V)                    | 0.6                             | 0.075 ... 0.6 | 0.6                      | HF0.6-DOLE-24VDC | 1SAT113000R1011 | 0.205          |
| 2.4   | 0.75 (400V)                    | 2.4                             | 0.18 ... 2.4  | 2.4                      | HF2.4-DOLE-24VDC | 1SAT123000R1011 | 0.218          |
| 6.5   | 3.00 (400V)                    | 9.0                             | 1.5 ... 9.0   | 6.5                      | HF9-DOLE-24VDC   | 1SAT143000R1011 | 0.206          |

#### Main dimensions mm, inches



HF0.6, HF2.4, HF9

# HF0.6, HF2.4, HF9 electronic compact starters

## Reversing starter



2CDC241004V0016

HF0.6-ROL-24VDC



2CDC241001V0016

HF0.6-ROLE-24VDC



2CDC241013V0016

HF9-R-24VDC

### Description

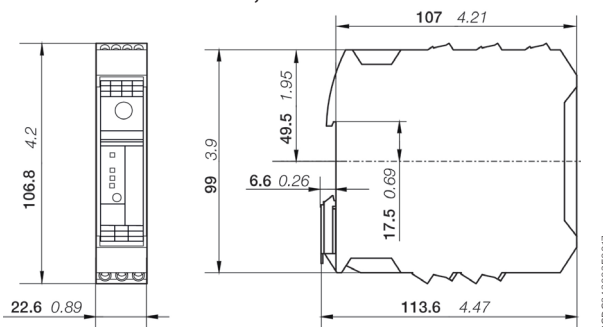
The HF-ROL-range is used for forward and reverse running motors, as well as for switching non resistive loads. With contactor and overload relay functionalities integrated into one device, the results are faster wiring times and fewer faults. The range covers 0.6 A, 2.4 A and up to 9 A - for motors up to 3 kW – 500 V AC. The integrated electronic overload protection has a wide setting range that enables just three models to cover all requirements.

The control supply voltage is 24 V DC. For the control and main connection points ABB offers screw connections. ABB also offers a HF-ROLE safety range with emergency stop function. This offers Safety Integrity Level 3, in accordance with functional safety standard IEC 61508-1 and Performance Level 'e' in accordance with ISO 13849-1. The safety range is ATEX-certified.

### Ordering details

| Rated operational current AC-53a                                     | Rated operational power AC-53a | Rated operational current AC-51 | Setting range | Full load amps motor use | Type             | Order code      | Weight (1 pce) |
|--|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| A  | kW                             | A                               | A             | A                        |                  |                 | kg             |
| <b>Reversing starter</b>   |                                |                                 |               |                          |                  |                 |                |
| 6.5  | 3.00 (400V)                    | 9.0                             | -             | 6.5                      | HF9-R-24VDC      | 1SAT144000R1011 | 0.174          |
| <b>Reversing starter with overload protection</b>                    |                                |                                 |               |                          |                  |                 |                |
| 0.6  | 0.18 (400V)                    | 0.6                             | 0.075 ... 0.6 | 0.6                      | HF0.6-ROL-24VDC  | 1SAT115000R1011 | 0.217          |
| 2.4  | 0.75 (400V)                    | 2.4                             | 0.18 ... 2.4  | 2.4                      | HF2.4-ROL-24VDC  | 1SAT125000R1011 | 0.219          |
| 6.5  | 3.00 (400V)                    | 9.0                             | 1.5 ... 9.0   | 6.5                      | HF9-ROL-24VDC    | 1SAT145000R1011 | 0.218          |
| <b>Reversing starter with overload protection and emergency stop</b> |                                |                                 |               |                          |                  |                 |                |
| 0.6  | 0.18 (400V)                    | 0.6                             | 0.075 ... 0.6 | 0.6                      | HF0.6-ROLE-24VDC | 1SAT116000R1011 | 0.218          |
| 2.4  | 0.75 (400V)                    | 2.4                             | 0.18 ... 2.4  | 2.4                      | HF2.4-ROLE-24VDC | 1SAT126000R1011 | 0.270          |
| 6.5  | 3.00 (400V)                    | 9.0                             | 1.5 ... 9.0   | 6.5                      | HF9-ROLE-24VDC   | 1SAT146000R1011 | 0.289          |

### Main dimensions mm, inches



HF0.6, HF2.4, HF9

2CDC242003P0017

## HF0.6, HF2.4, HF9 electronic compact starters

### Technical data

#### Main circuit – Utilization characteristics according to IEC/EN

| Type   | HF-DOL/ROL   | HF-DOLE/ROLE  | HF-R                              |
|--|--|---|-----------------------------------|
| Standards  | IEC/EN 60947-1, IEC/EN 60947-4-2                               | IEC/EN 60947-1, IEC/EN 60947-4-2, IEC/EN 61508, ISO 13849 | IEC/EN 60947-1, IEC/EN 60947-4-2  |
| Rated operational voltage U <sub>e</sub>         | 500 V AC   |   |                                   |
| Operational voltage                              | 42 V AC, Minimum   |   |                                   |
|  | 550 V AC, Maximum  |   |                                   |
| Setting range                                    | see ordering details   |   |                                   |
| Rated frequency                                  | 50/60 Hz   |   |                                   |
| Trip class                                       | 10A  |   |                                   |
| Number of poles                                  | 3  |   |                                   |
| Number of protected poles                        | 3  |   |                                   |
| Mechanical durability                            | 10000 cycles   |   |                                   |
| Electrical durability                            | 30 Mio. cycles   |   |                                   |
| Rated impulse withstand voltage U <sub>imp</sub> | 6 kV   |   |                                   |
| Rated insulation voltage U <sub>i</sub>          | 500 V  |   |                                   |
| Rated operational current I <sub>e</sub> AC-51   | see ordering details   |   |                                   |
| Rated operational current I <sub>e</sub> AC-53a  | see ordering details   |   |                                   |
| Rated uninterrupted current I <sub>u</sub>       | see ordering details, Rated operational current I <sub>e</sub> |   |                                   |
| Overvoltage category                             | III  |   |                                   |
| Delay time                                       | Off, minimum, switched off with pushbutton                     | 1 s   | 1 s                               |
|  | Off, maximum, switched off with pushbutton                     | 3 s   | 3 s                               |
|  | Off, typical, switched off via control input voltage           | 30 ms   | 30 ms                             |
|  | Off, maximum, switched off via control input voltage           | -   | HF0.6, HF2.4: 60 ms<br>HF9: 80 ms |
|  | Off, typical, switched off via supply voltage                  | 25 ms   | 25 ms                             |
|  | Off, maximum, switched off via supply voltage                  | -   | 500 ms                            |
| Switch off time                                  | By phase failure   | 1.8 s   | 1.8 s                             |
|  | By phase asymmetry at 33%                                      | 120 s   | 120 s                             |
|  | By phase asymmetry at 67%                                      | 1.8 s   | 1.8 s                             |
| Overspeed tripping                               | Operating threshold  | HF9-DOL/ROL/DOLE/ROLE: >45 A                              |                                   |
|  | Response time  | HF9-DOL/ROL/DOLE/ROLE: 2 s                                |                                   |
| Power loss                                       | Minimum  | 1.1 W   |                                   |
|  | Maximum  | HF0.6: 1.5 W<br>HF2.4: 3.3 W<br>HF9: 14.6 W               |                                   |
| Switching frequency                              | ≤ 2 Hz; 120 starts/min; 7200 starts/h                          |   |                                   |
| Overvoltage category                             | III  |   |                                   |

#### Short circuit protection with MO132 for single mounting, IEC Type 1, 500 V AC, 35 kA, 50 Hz, AC-53a, EN/IEC 60947-4-2

| Rated motor power | Rated motor current | Starter Type                | Protection type | HF-Starter | Current setting range of HF-Starter | Max. allowed setting current for AC-53a |
|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| kW                | A                   |                             |                 |            | A                                   | A                                       |
| 0.18              | 0.48                | DOL, ROL, DOLE, ROLE (1)    | MO132-0.63      | HF0.6      | 0.075 - 0.6                         | 0.6                                     |
| 1.1               | 2.2                 | DOL, ROL, DOLE, ROLE (1)    | MO132-2.5       | HF2.4      | 0.18 - 2.4                          | 2.4                                     |
| 3.0               | 5.2                 | DOL, ROL, DOLE, ROLE, R (1) | MO132-6.3       | HF9        | 1.5 - 9 (1)                         | 6.5                                     |

(1) HF9 is able to switch 9A in AC-51, 6.5A in AC-53a.

#### Short circuit protection with MO132 for single mounting, IEC Type 1, 415 V AC, 70 kA, 50 Hz, AC-53a, EN/IEC 60947-4-2

| Rated motor power | Rated motor current | Starter Type                | Protection type | HF-Starter | Current setting range of HF-Starter | Max. allowed setting current for AC-53a |
|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| kW                | A                   |                             |                 |            | A                                   | A                                       |
| 0.18              | 0.58                | DOL, ROL, DOLE, ROLE (1)    | MO132-0.63      | HF0.6      | 0.075 - 0.6                         | 0.6                                     |
| 0.75              | 1.8                 | DOL, ROL, DOLE, ROLE (1)    | MO132-2.5       | HF2.4      | 0.18 - 2.4                          | 2.4                                     |
| 3.0               | 6.3                 | DOL, ROL, DOLE, ROLE, R (1) | MO132-6.3       | HF9        | 1.5 - 9 (1)                         | 6.5                                     |

(1) HF9 is able to switch 9A in AC-51, 6.5A in AC-53a

## HF0.6, HF2.4, HF9 electronic compact starters

### Technical data

#### Short circuit protection with MO132 for group mounting, IEC Type 1, 500 V AC, EN/IEC 60947-4-2

| Max. sum of current of HF-Starter in group | I <sub>q</sub><br>kA | HF-Starter Type             | SCPD<br>A |
|--|----------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|
| 6.5  | 35                   | DOL, ROL, DOLE, ROLE, R (1) | MO132-6.3 |
| 10   | 3                    |                             | MO132-10  |
| 12   | 3                    |                             | MO132-12  |
| 16   | 3                    |                             | MO132-16  |
| 20   | 3                    |                             | MO132-20  |
| 25   | 3                    |                             | MO132-25  |
| 32   | 3                    |                             | MO132-32  |

(1) HF9 is able to switch 9A in AC-51, 6.5A in AC-53a

#### Short circuit protection with MO132 for group mounting, IEC Type 1, 415 V AC, EN/IEC 60947-4-2

| Max. sum of current of HF-Starter in group | I <sub>q</sub><br>kA | HF-Starter Type             | SCPD<br>A |
|--|----------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|
| 6.5  | 70                   | DOL, ROL, DOLE, ROLE, R (1) | MO132-6.3 |
| 10   | 35                   |                             | MO132-10  |
| 12   | 3                    |                             | MO132-12  |
| 16   | 3                    |                             | MO132-16  |
| 20   | 3                    |                             | MO132-20  |
| 25   | 3                    |                             | MO132-25  |
| 32   | 3                    |                             | MO132-32  |

(1) HF9 is able to switch 9A in AC-51, 6.5A in AC-53a

#### Single mounting fused design, IEC Type 1, 500 V AC, 35 kA, 50 Hz, AC-53a, EN/IEC 60947-4-2

| Rated motor power<br>kW | Rated motor current<br>A | Starter Type                | Protection type | HF-Starter | Current setting range<br>of HF-Starter<br>A | Max. allowed setting<br>current for AC-53a<br>A |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|------------|---|---|
| 0.18                    | 0.48                     | DOL, ROL, DOLE, ROLE (1)    | Fuse 25A gG     | HF0.6      | 0.075 - 0.6                                 | 0.6   |
| 1.1                     | 2.2                      | DOL, ROL, DOLE, ROLE (1)    | Fuse 25A gG     | HF2.4      | 0.18 - 2.4                                  | 2.4   |
| 3.0                     | 5.2                      | DOL, ROL, DOLE, ROLE, R (1) | Fuse 25A gG     | HF9        | 1.5 - 91)                                   | 6.5   |

(1) HF9 variants can switch 6.5A in utilization category AC-53a and 9A in AC-51.

#### Single mounting fused design, IEC Type 1, 415 V AC, 50 kA, 50 Hz, AC-53a, EN/IEC 60947-4-2

| Rated motor power<br>kW | Rated motor current<br>A | Starter Type                | Protection type | HF-Starter | Current setting range<br>of HF-Starter<br>A | Max. allowed setting<br>current for AC-53a<br>A |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|------------|---|---|
| 0.18                    | 0.58                     | DOL, ROL, DOLE, ROLE (1)    | Fuse 25A gG     | HF0.6      | 0.075 - 0.6                                 | 0.6   |
| 0.75                    | 1.8                      | DOL, ROL, DOLE, ROLE (1)    | Fuse 25A gG     | HF2.4      | 0.18 - 2.4                                  | 2.4   |
| 3.0                     | 6.3                      | DOL, ROL, DOLE, ROLE, R (1) | Fuse 25A gG     | HF9        | 1.5 - 91)                                   | 6.5   |

(1) HF9 variants can switch 6.5A in utilization category AC-53a and 9A in AC-51.

#### Group mounting fused design, IEC Type 1, 500 V AC, 35 kA, 50 Hz, AC-53a, EN/IEC 60947-4-2

| I <sub>q</sub><br>kA | SCPD        | Max. sum of current of used devices<br>A | HF-Starter |
|----------------------|-------------|--|------------|
| 35                   | Fuse 25A gG | 25                                       | HF0.6      |
| 35                   | Fuse 25A gG | 25                                       | HF2.4      |
| 35                   | Fuse 25A gG | 25                                       | HF9        |

#### Group mounting fused design, IEC Type 1, 415 V AC, 50 kA, 50 Hz, AC-53a, EN/IEC 60947-4-2

| I <sub>q</sub><br>kA | SCPD        | Max. sum of current of used devices<br>A | HF-Starter |
|----------------------|-------------|--|------------|
| 50                   | Fuse 25A gG | 25                                       | HF0.6      |
| 50                   | Fuse 25A gG | 25                                       | HF2.4      |
| 50                   | Fuse 25A gG | 25                                       | HF9        |

## HF0.6, HF2.4, HF9 electronic compact starters

### Technical data

#### Main circuit – Utilization characteristics according to UL/CSA

|  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| Type   | <b>HF</b>  |   |
| Standards  | UL 60947-1; UL 60947-4-2                                     |   |
| Rated operational voltage  | 500 V AC   |   |
| Operational voltage  | Minimum  | 42 V AC                                       |
|  | Maximum  | 550 V AC                                      |
| Ampere Rating UL/CSA   | see ordering details, Full load amps motor use               |   |
| Horse power rating   | Nominal switching performance full load (power factor = 0.4) | HF0.6: 0.4 hp<br>HF2.4: 1.2 hp<br>HF9: 3.0 hp |
|  | Nominal switching performance full load (power factor = 0.8) | HF0.6: 0.6 hp<br>HF2.4: 2.2 hp<br>HF9: 6.1 hp |
| Full loads Amps (FLA)  | see ordering details   |   |
| Short-circuit current rating (SCCR) (500 V AC, 30 A Class J or CC) | 100 kA   |   |

#### General technical data

|                         |   |                 |
|-------------------------|---|-----------------|
| Type                    | <b>HF</b>   |                 |
| Utilization category    | AC51, AC53a   |                 |
| Pollution degree        | 2   |                 |
| Phase loss sensitive    | Yes   |                 |
| Ambient air temperature | Operation   | -25 ... + 70 °C |
|                         | Operation compensated   | -40 ... + 80 °C |
| Mounting position       | Position 1, load side bottom  |                 |
| Mounting in DIN Rail    | TH35-15 (35 x 15 mm Mounting Rail) acc. to IEC 60715,<br>TH35-7.5 (35 x 7.5 mm Mounting Rail) acc. to IEC 60715 |                 |
| Degree of protection    | Housing   | IP20            |
|                         | Main circuit terminals  | IP20            |

#### Control circuit

|  |                                   |               |
|--|-----------------------------------|---------------|
| Type   | <b>HF</b>                         |               |
| Rated control circuit voltage U <sub>c</sub> | 24 V DC                           |               |
| Input voltage U <sub>in</sub>                | Switching Threshold at Signal <0> | -3 ... 9.6 V  |
|  | Switching Threshold at Signal <1> | 19.2 ... 30 V |
| Input current I <sub>c</sub>                 | 3 mA                              |               |

#### Supply circuit

|   |                  |  |
|---|------------------|--|
| Type  | <b>HF</b>        |  |
| Rated control supply voltage U <sub>s</sub> | 24 V DC          |  |
| Control supply voltage                      | 19.2 ... 30 V DC |  |
| Rated control supply current I <sub>s</sub> | 0.04 A           |  |

#### Single and group mounting HF-Starter, Type 1 coordination with fuse class J or CC according to UL60947-1/-4-1

| HF-Starter | FLA       | I <sub>q</sub> | SCPD               | Max. current | Max. Voltage |
|------------|-----------|----------------|--------------------|--------------|--------------|
|            | A / V AC  | kA             |                    | A            | V AC         |
| HF0.6      | 0.6 / 500 | 100            | Fuse class J or CC | 30           | 480          |
| HF2.4      | 2.4 / 500 | 100            | Fuse class J or CC | 30           | 480          |
| HF9        | 6.5 / 500 | 100            | Fuse class J or CC | 30           | 480          |

#### Single and group mounting HF-Starter, Type 1 coordination with fuse RK 5 according to UL60947-1/-4-1

| HF-Starter | FLA       | I <sub>q</sub> | SCPD      | Max. current | Max. Voltage |
|------------|-----------|----------------|-----------|--------------|--------------|
|            | A / V AC  | kA             |           | A            | V AC         |
| HF0.6      | 0.6 / 500 | 5              | Fuse RK 5 | 20           | 480          |
| HF2.4      | 2.4 / 500 | 5              | Fuse RK 5 | 20           | 480          |
| HF9        | 6.5 / 500 | 5              | Fuse RK 5 | 20           | 480          |

## HF0.6, HF2.4, HF9 electronic compact starters

### Technical data




#### Safety related data




|  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| Type   |  | HF-DOLE/ROLE  |
| Standards  |  | IEC/EN 60947-1, IEC/EN 60947-4-2, IEC/EN 61508, ISO 13849 |
| Safe shut down   | for ambient temperature 40°C ... 60°C  |   |
| Safety integrity level acc. to IEC 61508-1             |  | SIL 3   |
| Performance level                                      |  | Up to e   |
| Mean time to failure (MTTF) acc. to IEC60050-191-12-07 |  | DOLE: 43 years<br>ROLE: 39.3 years                        |
| Mean time to dangerous failure, motor protection       |  | 447 years   |
| Mean time to dangerous failure, safe shutdown          |  | DOLE: 518 years<br>ROLE: 517 years                        |
| Failure in time  | Safe, detectable $\lambda_{sd}$        | DOLE: 543 FIT<br>ROLE: 664 FIT                            |
|  | Safe, undetectable $\lambda_{su}$      | DOLE: 852 FIT<br>ROLE: 968 FIT                            |
|  | Dangerous, detectable $\lambda_{dd}$   | 218 FIT   |
|  | Dangerous, undetectable $\lambda_{du}$ | DOLE: 2.4 FIT<br>ROLE: 2.67 FIT                           |
| Safe failure fraction (SFF)                            |  | DOLE: 99.85%<br>ROLE: 99.86%                              |
| Diagnostic coverage (DC)                               |  | DOLE: 98.91%<br>ROLE: 98.79%                              |
| Probability of dangerous failure per hour (PFH)        |  | DOLE: 2.4<br>ROLE: 2.67                                   |
| Motor overload protection                              | for ambient temperature 40°C ... 60°C  |   |
| Safety integrity level acc. to IEC 61508-1             |  | SIL 3   |
| Performance level                                      |  | Up to e   |
| Mean time to failure (MTTF) acc. to IEC60050-191-12-07 |  | DOLE: 43 years<br>ROLE: 39.3 years                        |
| Mean time to dangerous failure, safe shutdown          |  | DOLE: 518 years<br>ROLE: 517 years                        |
| Failure in time  | Safe, detectable                       | DOLE: 517 FIT<br>ROLE: 637 FIT                            |
|  | Safe, undetectable                     | DOLE: 809 FIT<br>ROLE: 870 FIT                            |
|  | Dangerous, detectable                  | 239 FIT   |
|  | Dangerous, undetectable                | 17 FIT  |
| Safe failure fraction (SFF)                            |  | DOLE: 98.92%<br>ROLE: 99.03%                              |
| Diagnostic coverage                                    |  | DOLE: 98.91w<br>ROLE: 98.79%                              |

## HF0.6, HF2.4, HF9 electronic compact starters

### Technical data

#### Connecting characteristics

| <b>Main circuit</b>   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| Type  | HF                            |
| Connecting capacity   |                               |
|  Rigid                 | 1 x 2 ... 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> |
|  Flexible              | 1 x 2 ... 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> |
|  Flexible with ferrule | 1 x 2 ... 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> |
| Connecting capacity acc. to UL/CSA  |                               |
| Rigid   | 1 x 24 ... 14 AWG             |
| Flexible  | 1 x 24 ... 14 AWG             |
| Flexible with ferrule   | 1 x 24 ... 14 AWG             |
| Stripping length  | 8 mm                          |
| Tightening torque   | 0.5 ... 0.6 N·m               |
| Tightening torque UL/CSA  | 5 ... 7 in·lb                 |
| Terminal type   | Screw terminals               |
| Recommended screw driver  | M3                            |

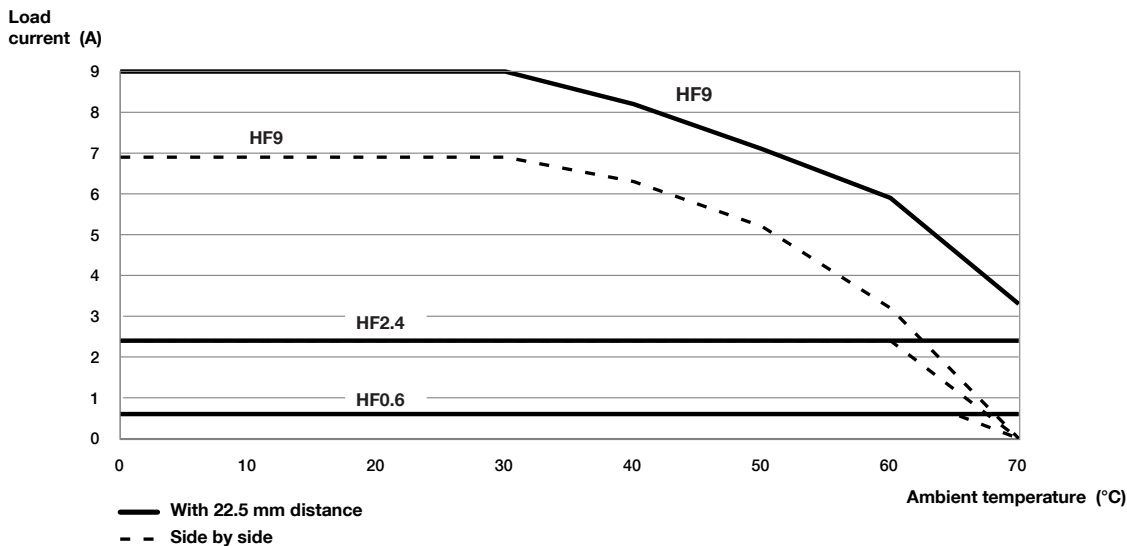
| <b>Control circuit</b>  |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| Type  | HF                            |
| Connecting capacity   |                               |
|  Rigid                 | 1 x 2 ... 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> |
|  Flexible              | 1 x 2 ... 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> |
|  Flexible with ferrule | 1 x 2 ... 2.5 mm <sup>2</sup> |
| Connecting capacity acc. to UL/CSA  |                               |
| Rigid   | 1 x 24 ... 14 AWG             |
| Flexible  | 1 x 24 ... 14 AWG             |
| Flexible with ferrule   | 1 x 24 ... 14 AWG             |
| Stripping length  | 8 mm                          |
| Tightening torque   | 0.5 ... 0.6 N·m               |
| Tightening torque UL/CSA  | 5 ... 7 in·lb                 |
| Terminal type   | Screw terminals               |
| Recommended screw driver  | M3                            |

# HF0.6, HF2.4, HF9 electronic compact starters

## Technical diagrams

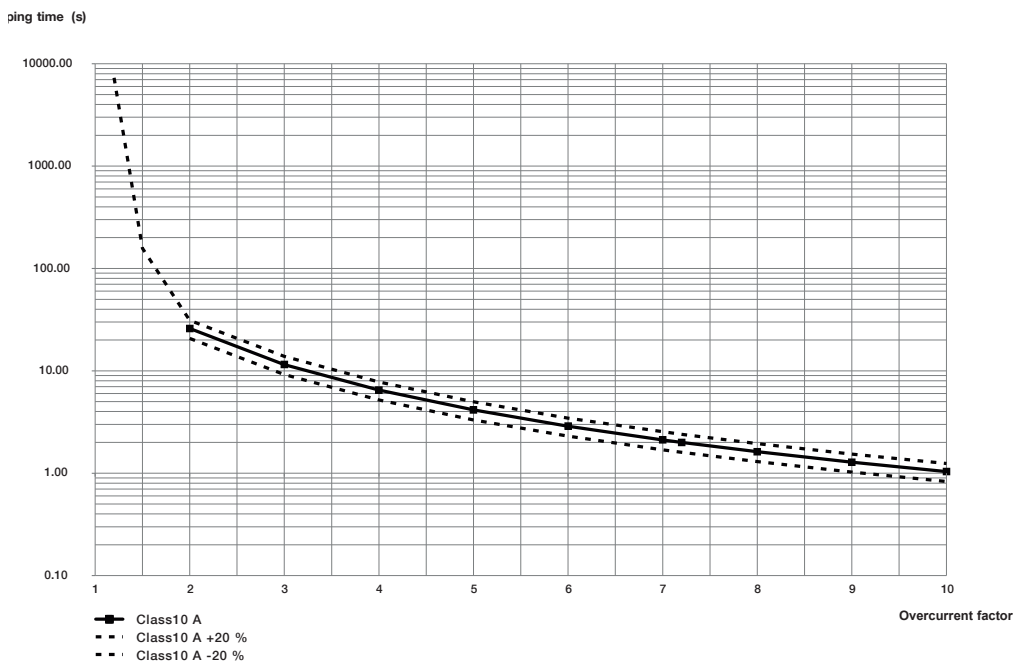
### Derating curve

Please consider the derating curves for group mounting with and without  $\geq 22.5$  mm distance and the overload protection for tripping class 10A.



Derating curve HF range - electronic compact starters

### Tripping characteristics



Tripping characteristics class 10A HF range - electronic compact starters







---

# Fence



9-2 **Introduction and overview**

9-4 **Fencing system**  
**Quick-Guard**

# Introduction and overview

## Selection guide

Quick-Guard is an ABB fencing solution with endless possibilities.

|             | Quick-Guard Standard   | Quick-Guard Express   |
|-------------|--|---|
| Image       |    |   |
| Type        | Aluminum fencing system  | Aluminum fencing system   |
| Description | Custom made fence with endless possibilities   | Fence with few components and quick installation  |
| Application | Fence designed and delivered according to drawing with mesh, solid or noise reduction panels   | Fence sections with mesh and possibility to modify on site  |
| Advantage   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Custom design for each machine</li> <li>- Highly adaptable</li> <li>- Mounting brackets for Jokab Safety sensors</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Fast installation</li> <li>- Minimum number of components</li> <li>- Cost effective</li> <li>- Can be cut and modified on site</li> <li>- Possible to adjust angles <math>\pm 45</math> degrees</li> <li>- Mounting brackets for Jokab Safety sensors</li> </ul> |

---

## Introduction and overview

### Standards

The standard EN ISO 13857 gives guidance on the safety distances for fencing systems and other fixed protective structures.

The safety distance between a fence and the hazard zone depends on the height of the fence and the height of the hazard zone. Minimum distances can be found in tables in the standard and ranges from 0 to 1500 mm.

Minimum safety distances can also be determined by the size of openings in fences and between a fence and e.g. a wall. Here are some important points from the standard:

- A fence with a mesh using 40x40 mm openings gives a safety distance of 200 mm. If the fence needs to be placed closer to the hazard zone, solid panels need to be used.
- If a slot-shaped opening is more than 20 mm wide, the safety distance is 850 mm.
- Slot openings that are more than 180 mm are not permitted since some persons can slip through.

# Fencing system

## Quick-Guard

Quick-Guard is a very flexible fencing system used for machine enclosure or preventing access to a hazardous area.

It consists of a minimum of different components, such as aluminum profiles, patented assembly parts, net-locks, mesh, solid or noise reduction panels.

Thanks to our patented screw-lock system, we can supply all brackets pre-mounted with fixing screws and nuts. No holes need to be drilled in the profiles and all cuts are made straight. This makes assembly and modification very easy.



Easy to install

### Aluminum profiles

Lightweight aluminum profiles allow ergonomic assembly.

### Patented screw-lock system

Pre-mounted brackets with fixing screws and nuts simplifies assembly and modification.

### Simple modification

It is easy to modify an existing fence design since the aluminum profiles are easy to saw into different lengths.



Speed up your projects

### Highly adaptable to various needs

Numerous materials and components give endless possibilities.

### Complete safety system

Quick-Guard has fittings and mounting brackets for all sensors, locks and switches from Jokab Safety.

## Applications and features

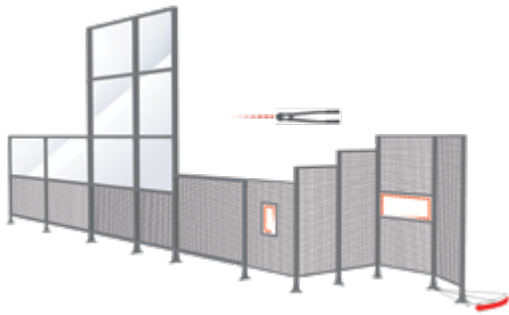
### Quick-Guard

#### Applications

Quick-Guard fencing system is designed to be used in different types of applications and can be customized to suit specific needs. Quick-Guard can be supplied to be designed by you on site (Quick-Guard Express) or designed and cut according to drawing (Quick-Guard standard). These two fencing system can also be combined to achieve a complete system.

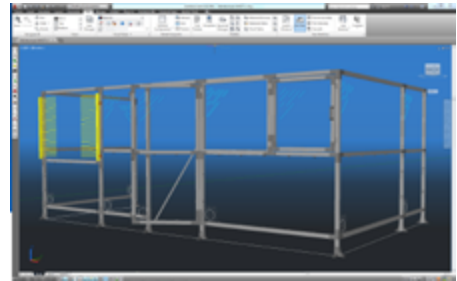
#### Simple fencing for on site adaption

**Quick-Guard Express** is installed quickly and cost effectively. You order sections consisting of a few components which make it easy for you to install the fencing system by yourself on site. A manual mesh clipping tool, for easy cutting of the mesh, can be ordered if needed.



#### Advanced enclosure with endless possibilities

When ordering a **Quick-Guard standard** fencing system, you give us a simple sketch or AutoCAD® file of how you want the fencing system to look. We put this information into our AutoCAD-based software SafeCAD and design the fence in 3D. Cutting, component lists and quotations are generated automatically from SafeCAD.



#### Features

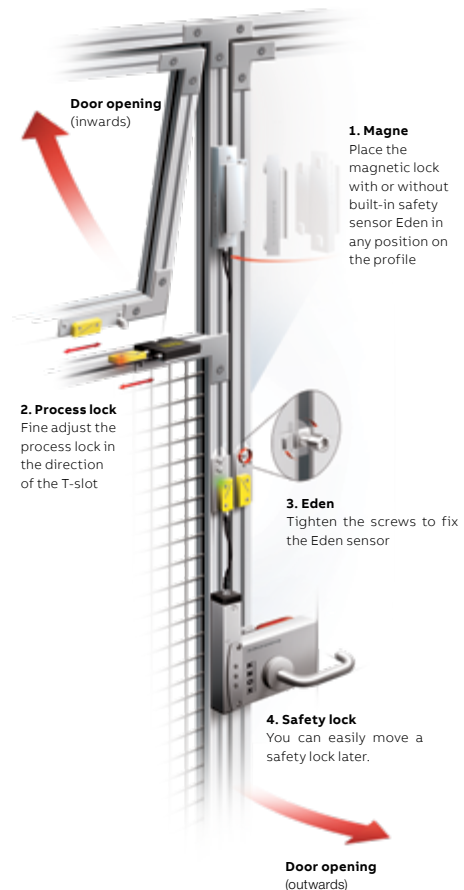
#### Patented assembly function

Our patented guide and locking method makes it simple to assemble and dismantle the fencing system. The nut has several advantages, it can easily be located into the profile and automatically positions itself when the screw is turned 90 degrees clockwise. When in this position the bracket being fixed can be adjusted as required and locked by turning the screw further clockwise. To remove the bracket the fixing screw is turned counterclockwise until the nut is in line with the profile slot.

All of our sensors, light grids, emergency stops and control devices are easy to mount, adjust and dismantle in the profile's T-slot thanks to our special nuts. Because we don't have to drill in the profile, there are no marks if you want to move a sensor or rebuild.

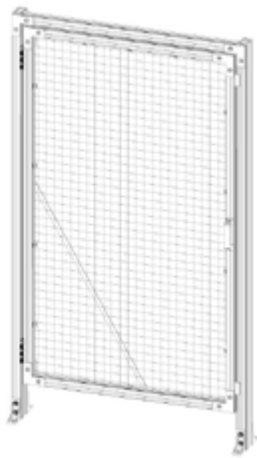
#### SafeCAD

SafeCAD is a plug-in program for AutoCAD that enables you to quickly and easily customize safety solutions with our fencing system Quick-Guard. A simple sketch of the guarding system is used as the program input. The positions of doors and hatches, choice of mesh, polycarbonate, aluminum/steel sheet or noise reduction panels are typed in. The program automatically generates 3D drawings along with component and cutting lists. These drawings are also used as the basis for assembly/installation.



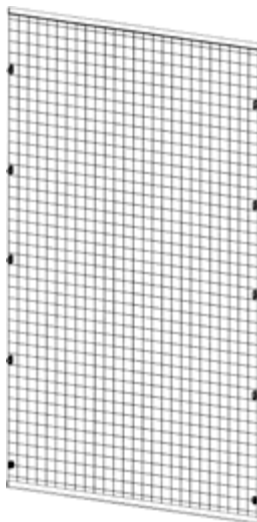
## Ordering information

### Quick-Guard Express



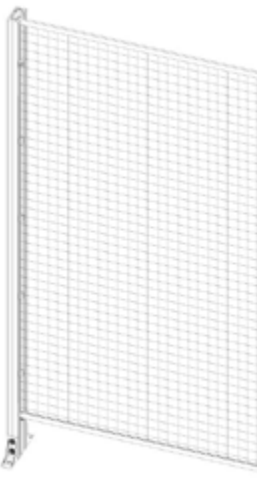
2TLC172313F0201

JSM E11-N20G



2TLC172313F0201

JSM E11-N20Z



2TLC172313F0201

JSM E11-N20X8

#### Express sections

| Description   | Material | Profile mm        | Width (CC) mm | Type          | Order code      |
|---|----------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| <b>Express sections height 2000</b>   |          |                   |               |               |                 |
| Section with one profile  | Mesh     | 44 x 44           | 1100          | JSM E11-N20X4 | 2TLA040101R0200 |
|   |          | 44 x 88           | 1100          | JSM E11-N20X8 | 2TLA040101R0300 |
| Section without profiles (incl. netlocks and edge protection)                                   | Mesh     | -                 | 1100          | JSM E11-N20Z  | 2TLA040101R0400 |
| Door section (incl. floorbrackets and netlocks)   | Mesh     | 44 x 44 / 44 x 88 | 1100          | JSM E11-N20G  | 2TLA040101R0500 |
| Sliding door section (incl. suspension wheels, guiding components, floor brackets and netlocks) | Mesh     | 44 x 44 / 44 x 88 | 1100          | JSM E11-N20S  | 2TLA040101R0600 |
| <b>Express sections height 2200</b>   |          |                   |               |               |                 |
| Section with one profile  | Mesh     | 44 x 44           | 1100          | JSM E11-N22X4 | 2TLA040102R0200 |
|   |          | 44 x 88           | 1100          | JSM E11-N22X8 | 2TLA040102R0300 |
| Section without profiles (incl. netlocks and edge protection)                                   | Mesh     | -                 | 1100          | JSM E11-N22Z  | 2TLA040102R0400 |
| Door section (incl. Floorbrackets and netlocks)   | Mesh     | 44 x 44 / 44 x 88 | 1100          | JSM E11-N22G  | 2TLA040102R0500 |
| Sliding door section (incl. Suspension wheels, guiding components, floor brackets and netlocks) | Mesh     | 44 x 44 / 44 x 88 | 1100          | JSM E11-N22S  | 2TLA040102R0600 |



# Ordering information

## Quick-Guard Express

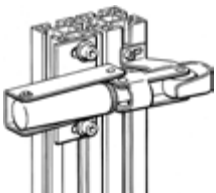


**JSM E11-20Y4**



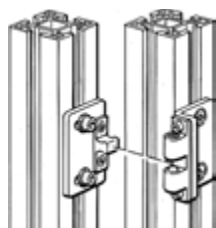
2TLC17233BF001

**JSM A25**



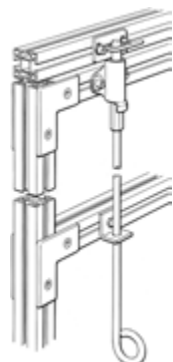
2TLC17255F001

**JSM D3**



2TLC17269F001

**JSM D11B**



2TLC17267F001

**JSM D10A**

### Accessories

| Description   | Height mm | Profile mm | Type         | Order code      |
|---|-----------|------------|--------------|-----------------|
| Section profile incl. two floor brackets and one support screw  | 2000      | 44 x 44    | JSM E11-20Y4 | 2TLA040103R2000 |
|   |           | 44 x 88    | JSM E11-20Y8 | 2TLA040103R2100 |
|   | 2200      | 44 x 44    | JSM E11-22Y4 | 2TLA040103R4000 |
|   |           | 44 x 88    | JSM E11-22Y8 | 2TLA040103R4100 |
| Cable duct 44 x 25 mm with holes c-c = 500 mm diameter = 5. Natural anodized aluminum. Length 2000 mm.                                  |           |            | JSM A25A     | 2TLA040037R1300 |
| Cable duct 88 x 68 mm without holes. Natural anodized aluminum. Length 2000 mm.   |           |            | JSM A88      | 2TLA040037R3300 |
| Cable duct 44 x 60 mm with holes c-c = 500 mm diameter = 5. Natural anodized aluminum. Length 2000 mm.                                  |           |            | JSM A60A     | 2TLA040037R1500 |
| Door closer incl. mounting components, for conventional door/hatch.   |           |            | JSM D3       | 2TLA040033R0200 |
| Door closer incl. mounting components, for sliding door.  |           |            | JSM D19      | 2TLA042020R5600 |
| Ball latch for conventional door/hatch.   |           |            | JSM D11B     | 2TLA040033R4100 |
| Ball latch for sliding door.  |           |            | JSM D11C     | 2TLA040033R4200 |
| Door bolt with spring for catch above the door (included). Brackets in zinc-plated steel, rod in stainless steel. Total height 1130 mm. |           |            | JSM D10A     | 2TLA040033R2100 |
| Door bolt with spring for hole in floor. Brackets in zinc-plated steel, rod in stainless steel. Total height 995 mm.                    |           |            | JSM D10B     | 2TLA040033R3800 |
| Bracket for padlock hasp, zinc plated steel. Two pieces needed for one complete unit.   |           |            | JSM D17      | 2TLA042020R2200 |
| Special nut, M4 galvanized.   |           |            | JSM M4B      | 2TLA040035R0700 |
| Special nut, M5 galvanized.   |           |            | JSM M5B      | 2TLA040035R0400 |
| Special nut, M6 galvanized.   |           |            | JSM M6B      | 2TLA040035R0500 |
| Special nut, M8 galvanized.   |           |            | JSM M8B      | 2TLA040035R0600 |

### More information

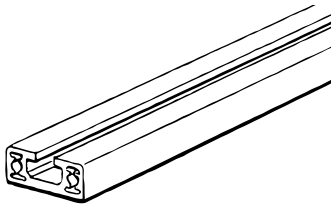
For components and ordering information for Quick-Guard standard please see the website <http://new.abb.com/low-voltage/products/safety-products/fencing-systems/quick-guard>

## Main components

### Quick-Guard Standard

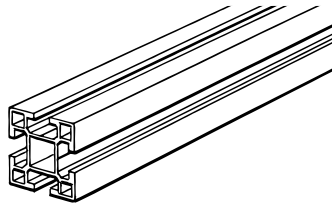
Quick-Guard Standard is a fencing system with endless possibilities. At its core are a few simple components that can be combined in an infinite number of ways in order to create a perfect solution for each machine.

#### Aluminum posts of different sizes

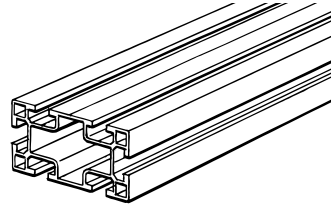


16.5x44

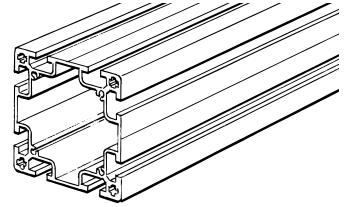
All dimensions in mm



44x44

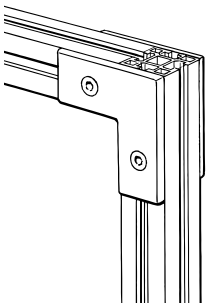


44x88

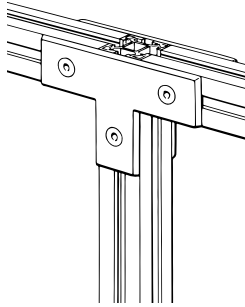


88x88

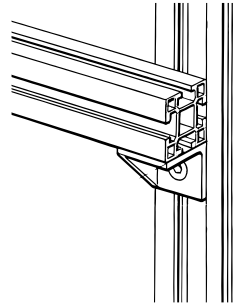
#### Fixings with pre-assembled screws and nuts



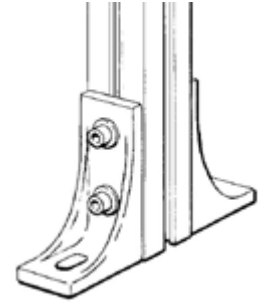
L-bracket



T-bracket

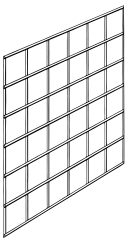


Angle fitting

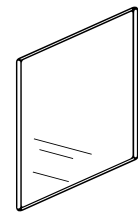
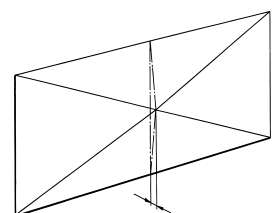


Floor fitting

#### Infill material for different purposes



Mesh

Transparent  
polycarbonateWelding  
polycarbonate

X-reinforced steel

#### A large selection of hatches and doors



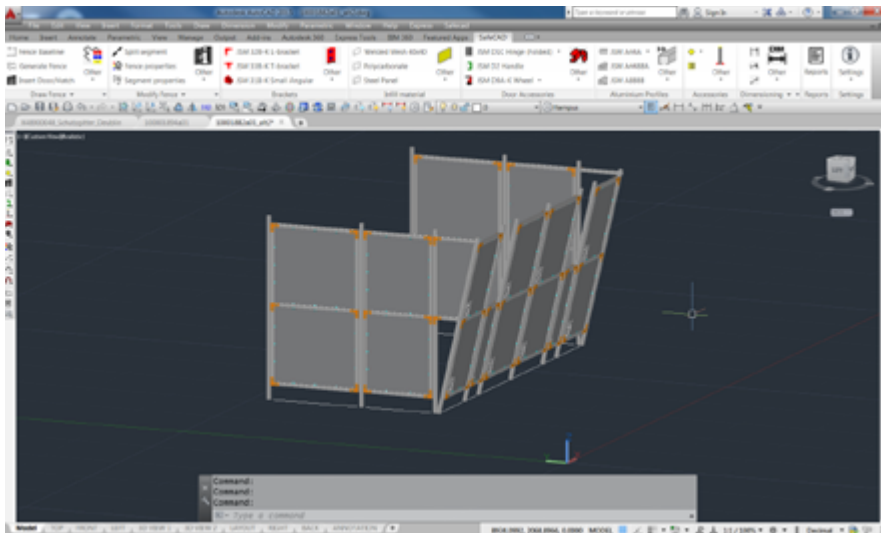
The examples above are just a small selection of the available components. For a complete listing of all Quick-Guard components, please see the [Product list 2TLC010019D0201](#)

## Examples

### Quick-Guard Standard

Quick-Guard Standard is a fencing system with endless possibilities. Contact us with a detailed CAD-drawing of your machine or a simple sketch of your imagined fence solution, and our experienced fence designers will help you realize the perfect fencing solution adapted to your machine and requirements.

Below are some examples of custom made fence solutions using Quick-Guard Standard.



#### More information

For components and ordering information for Quick-Guard standard please see the website <http://new.abb.com/low-voltage/products/safety-products/fencing-systems/quick-guard>

#### Note

We reserve the right to make technical changes or modify the contents of this document without prior notice. With regard to purchase orders, the agreed particulars shall prevail. ABB does not accept any responsibility whatsoever for potential errors or possible lack of information in this document.

We reserve all rights in this document and in the subject matter and illustrations contained therein. Any reproduction, disclosure to third parties or utilization of its contents – in whole or in parts – is forbidden without prior written consent of ABB.





—  
**ABB AB**

**Jokab Safety**

Varlabergsvägen 11

SE-434 39 Kungsbacka

Tel. +46 (0) 21-32 50 00

[www.abb.com/jokabsafety](http://www.abb.com/jokabsafety)



## X-ON Electronics

Largest Supplier of Electrical and Electronic Components

*Click to view similar products for [Emergency Stop Switches / E-Stop Switches](#) category:*

*Click to view products by [ABB](#) manufacturer:*

Other Similar products are found below :

[84-6830.0020](#) [AVN302N-R](#) [3050.1302Y](#) [84-6841.2B20](#) [951FY000-WO](#) [ER6022-022N](#) [952+2000-00](#) [ES3S51653001](#) [601+0000-OP](#) [750111](#)  
[XCSB502](#) [2TLA030051R0100](#) [D2D 1009M](#) [D2D 1013H](#) [84-6820.0040](#) [FB1W-HW1B-M220B](#) [FB1W-HW1B-X401R](#) [84-5221.2B20](#) [AZ](#)  
[17/170-B15](#) [AZ 17/170-B11](#) [BNS 40S-12Z 10,0M](#) [SK-UV15Z M](#) [W0-63.10.00A](#) [SP22K201-1](#) [SP22K101-1](#) [SP22K105-1](#) [SP22K108-1](#)  
[ST22K101-1](#) [ST22K104-1](#) [ST22K105-1](#) [ST22K108-1](#) [ST22K201-1](#) [ST22K302-1](#) [ST22K305-1](#) [ZB2BY4919](#) [3004.5246](#) [3031.1306](#)  
[3050.1303N](#) [30B4.1206](#) [3100.0110N](#) [440A-A17101](#) [440E-A13078](#) [440E-A13081](#) [440G-A27011](#) [440G-T27127](#) [440K-A27010](#) [440K-](#)  
[E33014](#) [440K-T11090](#) [440K-T11467](#) [506406](#)